

**BOX BUTTE COUNTY SCHOOL DISTRICT #07-0010**  
**HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS**  
**BOARD OF EDUCATION MEETING AGENDA**  
**Monday, May 13, 2024**  
**South Campus**

The Board of Education of School District 07-0010 will meet on Monday, May 13, 2024 in the South Campus as duly advertised in the Alliance Times-Herald.

- I. Pledge of Allegiance
- II. Notices
- III. Call Meeting to Order
  - III.A. Roll Call
  - III.B. Excuse Absent Board Member(s)
- IV. Approval of Agenda
- V. Report from Board Committee(s)
- VI. Regular Meeting Agenda
  - VI.A. Recognition of Student Achievement (Bobcat Excellence)
  - VI.B. Public Participation (Maximum of 30 Minutes Allotted for this Portion of the Meeting)
  - VI.C. Correspondence
  - VI.D. Consent Agenda
    - Approve minutes for April 15, 2024 meeting
    - Approve Treasurer's Report
    - Approve School Activity Fund Report
    - Approve Control Budget
    - Report Required by State Statute 79-506
  - VI.E. Payment of Claims
  - VI.F. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding Approval of Resignation(s) of Certificated Staff
  - VI.G. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding Approval of Employment of Certificated Staff
  - VI.H. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding A Proposal by Mrs. Gilkerson and Mrs. Johnston for Social-Emotional Curriculum for K-12 School Counseling Program
  - VI.I. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding Proposed Service Agreement with ESU#13
  - VI.J. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding Proposals for Copy Machine Service
  - VI.K. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding the First Reading of the Following Policy: Policy 606.09 Use of Artificial Intelligence by Students and Staff,
  - VI.L. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding Authorizing an Online Enrollment Platform for Administration of Employee Benefits
  - VI.M. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding Approval of Proposals to Replace Carpet in the Band Room and the Current High School Library
  - VI.N. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding Approving a Proposed Contract with McREL for Training on Best First Instruction Strategies to be Paid for with Comprehensive School Improvement Grant Funds
  - VI.O. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding Approval of Proposals for Installation of a Security Vestibule and Completion of the Key Card Access to be Paid for with State Safety and Security Grant Funds and the Building Fund

VI.P. Discuss, Consider, and Take All Necessary Action Regarding Approval to Join  
National School District Social Media Lawsuit

- VII. Discussion/Possible Action Items
- VIII. Student Board Representative Report
- IX. Administration Reports
- X. Superintendent Report
- XI. Policy Review
- XII. Items For Next Board Meeting
- XIII. Adjournment



Welcome to the Hemingford Public Schools Board of Education Meeting.

The board welcomes citizens to attend board meetings to become acquainted with the programs and operations of the district. Members of the public are also encouraged to share their ideas and opinions with the Board during the agenda item labeled "Public Comment". Comments or questions from the audience at any other time during the meeting except for the agenda item "Public Comment" will be declared out of order.

School board meetings are a meeting held in public; however, the meetings are not public meetings.

## TALKING POINTS FOR BOARD MEETING

### 3 MINUTES PER INDIVIDUAL/30 MINUTES ON TOPIC

The board chair will recognize these individuals to make their comments at the appropriate time. Only those speakers recognized by the board chair shall be allowed to speak. Comments by others are out of order. If disruptive, the individual making the comments, or other individuals causing disruption may be asked to leave the board meeting.

The purpose of public participation is a forum for the public to provide information and be heard by the members of the board. By law, the board is not allowed to respond, discuss, or take action on items that are not included in the published agenda.

Any written or printed materials to be circulated for a meeting of the school board must be submitted to the superintendent by the **Thursday** preceding a Monday night meeting. (Per policy # 0204.12)

\*If you want to speak, you must fill out a Public Comment Request Card. When you have completed this, please submit the card to the superintendent. The cards will be numbered as they are received by the superintendent. You will be called on, by the board president, according to the number on your completed Public Comment Request Card. The board president will signal when the speaker has 30 seconds remaining.

\*By law, you must state your name, address, and we ask that you state the topic you are addressing, before you begin.

\*If you are planning to speak about personnel or student matters involving an individual, please understand that our policies require that such concerns initially be directed to the administration for consideration. Board members **may not** respond to any questions you ask or comments you make about individual staff members or students.

++++tear off++++tear off++++tear off++++

Number	
--------	--

Hemingford School District—Board of Education
Public Comment Request Card
Name:
District resident: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
Address:
City/State/Zip Code:
Agenda Item or Topic to address:
Signature:



## INTERIM AD DRAFT

This is the proof of your ad scheduled to run in **Hemingford Ledger** on the dates indicated below. If changes are needed, please contact us prior to deadline at [help@column.us](mailto:help@column.us)

Notice ID: BpqLxIbGLDmwhCWpLyQV | **Proof Updated: Apr. 16, 2024 at 06:20pm MDT**  
Notice Name: Notice of board meeting - Travis 05/13/24

**This is not an invoice. Below is an estimated price, and it is subject to change. You will receive an invoice with the final price upon invoice creation by the publisher.**

**FILER**

Travis Miller  
tmiller@gubn.org  
(308) 487-3328

**FILING FOR**

Hemingford Ledger

Columns Wide: 1

Ad Class: Legals

04/25/2024: General Legal

17.05

**Total**

**\$17.05**

**Regular Board Meeting at 7:00 pm on May 13th at South Campus**

Notice is hereby given that a regular meeting of the Board of Education of the School District of Hemingford, in the Counties of Box Butte, Dawes, and Sheridan in the State of Nebraska, A/K/A School District #10 of Box Butte County, Nebraska, will be held at 7:00 p.m. on Monday the 13th day of May 2024, at South Campus (816 Niobrara Avenue, Hemingford, Nebraska), which meeting shall be open to the public. An agenda for such meeting, kept continuously current, is available for public inspection at the office of the Superintendent, located at 913 Niobrara Avenue, Hemingford, Nebraska 68948.

Published in the Hemingford Ledger  
Hemingford, NE  
##### April 25, 2024 ZNEZ

# Hemingford Public Schools

## Annual Board of Education Calendar

Month	Budget	Curriculum	Personnel	Policy	Board Development	Other
<b>January 5:00 PM</b>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approve Negotiated Agreement with HEA (Upon Mutual Acceptance)</li> <li>• Appoint Superintendent as Authorized Representative for Federal, State, and Local Matters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adopt Board and Superintendent Goals</li> <li>• Review Board Member Code of Ethics</li> <li>• Review/Revise Policies</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Discussion and/or Appointment of Board Committees</li> <li>• NASB Legislative Issues Conference</li> <li>• Community Engagement Session</li> <li>• Board Retreat/Workshop</li> <li>• Strategic Plan Review/Board Self-Assessment</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oath of Office</li> <li>• Board Officer Elections</li> <li>• Designate Depository</li> <li>• Designate Legal Firm</li> <li>• Designate Treasurer</li> <li>• Designate Auditor for the District</li> <li>• Review Report Required by State Statute 79-506</li> </ul>
<b>February 5:00 PM</b>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review Report on Multicultural Education</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approve Negotiated Agreement with HEA (Upon Mutual Acceptance)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review/Revise Policies</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NASB Presidents' Retreat</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Monitor Proposed Legislation</li> </ul>
<b>March 7:00 PM</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review State Aid Certification (When Available)</li> <li>• Establish Technology Budget for Following Year</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Curriculum Committee Review of Curriculum Materials Proposed for Adoption (as needed)</li> <li>• Committee on American Civics Meeting</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Establish Salaries for Administrators</li> <li>• Approve Negotiated Agreement with HEA (Upon Mutual Acceptance)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adopt Resolution Pertaining to Non-Resident Students</li> <li>• Review/Revise Policies</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NRCSA Spring Conference</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Discuss School Calendar</li> <li>• Monitor Proposed Legislation</li> </ul>
<b>April 7:00 PM</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review State Aid Certification (When Available)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Consider Adoption of Curriculum and/or Textbooks for Subsequent Year</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review/Revise Policies</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adopt School Calendar</li> <li>• Review Report Required by State Statute 79-506</li> </ul>
<b>May 7:00 PM</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review State Aid Certification (When Available)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review Statewide Assessment Results (Writing)</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review/Revise Policies</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Attend Graduation Ceremony</li> </ul>	

# Hemingford Public Schools

## Annual Board of Education Calendar

Month	Budget	Curriculum	Personnel	Policy	Board Development	Other
<b>June</b> 7:00 PM		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Year End Assessment and Curriculum Review</li> <li>Review School Improvement Plan</li> <li>Committee on American Civics Meeting</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Superintendent Evaluation (end of year)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review Bullying Prevention Policy</li> <li>Approve Student, Athletic, and Staff Handbooks</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Board Self-Assessment and Goal Planning</li> <li>NASB School Law Seminar</li> </ul>	
<b>July</b> 7:00 PM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Budget Committee Work Session</li> <li>Review Budget Authority and Allowable Reserve Percentage Certification</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review Summer School Program Report</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Student Fees Policy</li> <li>Parent Involvement Policy</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NASB School Finance Workshop</li> <li>Review NASB Board Awards of Achievement</li> <li>NASB School Law Workshop</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adopt Board Goals</li> <li>Review Report Required by State Statute 79-506</li> </ul>
<b>August</b> 7:00 PM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review Proposed Budget</li> <li>Review Certifications of District's Assessed Valuation</li> </ul>				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NASB Area Membership Meeting</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Facilities Tour</li> </ul>
<b>September</b> 7:00 PM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Budget Hearing</li> <li>Adopt Budget</li> <li>Tax Request Hearing</li> <li>Approve Tax Request for Fund Levies</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review ACT Results</li> <li>Review School Improvement Plan</li> <li>Review Statewide Assessment Results (Reading, Math, Science)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Consider HEA Request for Recognition as Bargaining Agent (if delivered to Board)</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NASA/NASB Labor Relations Conference</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review Statewide Assessment Results (when available)</li> </ul>
<b>October</b> 7:00 PM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review Fall Enrollment Figures</li> <li>Prepare for Negotiations</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Consider HEA Request for Recognition as Bargaining Agent</li> </ul>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review Annual Emergency Safety Plan</li> <li>Review Report Required by State Statute 79-506</li> </ul>
<b>November</b> 5:00 PM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Audit Committee Review of Audit Report</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review District Annual Report</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Distribute/Complete Superintendent Evaluation</li> <li>Begin Negotiations</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NASB/NASA State Education Conference</li> </ul>	
<b>December</b> 5:00 PM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approve Fiscal Year Audit Report</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Review School Improvement Plan</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approve Negotiated Agreement with HEA (Upon Mutual Acceptance)</li> </ul>		)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Host Board/Staff Recognition Dinner</li> </ul>

# Hemingford Public Schools

## Annual Board of Education Calendar

Month	Budget	Curriculum	Personnel	Policy	Board Development	Other
	(November or December)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Superintendent Evaluation</li></ul>			

Revised February 2023

2024

American Civics/Curriculum : Cullan, Randolph, Votruba

Finance : Randolph, Ansley, Cullan

Negotiations : Ansley, Schumacher, Votruba

Transportation : Horstman, Cullan, Ansley

Building and Grounds : Schumacher, Randolph, Horstman

# HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS

## Board Committee Report

Date of Report:

Committee:

Items Reviewed Discussed:

Information for the Full Board:

Recommendations to the Full Board:



Welcome to the Hemingford Public Schools Board of Education Meeting.

The board welcomes citizens to attend board meetings to become acquainted with the programs and operations of the district. Members of the public are also encouraged to share their ideas and opinions with the Board during the agenda item labeled "Public Comment". Comments or questions from the audience at any other time during the meeting except for the agenda item "Public Comment" will be declared out of order.

School board meetings are a meeting held in public; however, the meetings are not public meetings.

## TALKING POINTS FOR BOARD MEETING

### 3 MINUTES PER INDIVIDUAL/30 MINUTES ON TOPIC

The board chair will recognize these individuals to make their comments at the appropriate time. Only those speakers recognized by the board chair shall be allowed to speak. Comments by others are out of order. If disruptive, the individual making the comments, or other individuals causing disruption may be asked to leave the board meeting.

The purpose of public participation is a forum for the public to provide information and be heard by the members of the board. By law, the board is not allowed to respond, discuss, or take action on items that are not included in the published agenda.

Any written or printed materials to be circulated for a meeting of the school board must be submitted to the superintendent by the **Thursday** preceding a Monday night meeting. (Per policy # 0204.12)

\*If you want to speak, you must fill out a Public Comment Request Card. When you have completed this, please submit the card to the superintendent. The cards will be numbered as they are received by the superintendent. You will be called on, by the board president, according to the number on your completed Public Comment Request Card. The board president will signal when the speaker has 30 seconds remaining.

\*By law, you must state your name, address, and we ask that you state the topic you are addressing, before you begin.

\*If you are planning to speak about personnel or student matters involving an individual, please understand that our policies require that such concerns initially be directed to the administration for consideration. Board members **may not** respond to any questions you ask or comments you make about individual staff members or students.

+++++tear off+++++tear off+++++tear off+++++

Number	
--------	--

Hemingford School District—Board of Education
Public Comment Request Card
Name:
District resident: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
Address:
City/State/Zip Code:
Agenda Item or Topic to address:
Signature:



April 29, 2024

Hemingford Public School District  
c/o President of Board of Education  
913 Niobrara  
PO Box 217  
Hemingford, NE 69348

Re: Tax Increment Financing Redevelopment Project Progress Report

To the Governing Body of Hemingford Public School District:

Enclosed is the Village of Hemingford's Tax Increment Financing Redevelopment Project Progress Report dated April 30, 2024. If you have any questions or concerns regarding the information in the report, please do not hesitate to contact me.

Sincerely,

*Barb Straub*  
*Village of Hemingford*  
*Administrator/Clerk Treasurer*  
*700 Box Butte Ave, PO Box 395*  
*Hemingford, NE. 69348*  
*308-487-3465 (p)*  
*308-487-3462 (f)*  
[bstraub@bbc.net](mailto:bstraub@bbc.net)

*"Hemingford is a small town with a huge heart. Our people are hardworking, patriotic, and family focused. Come experience a great education, a safe environment, and a thriving business district. Hemingford, purposeful past, growing present, and promising future."*



Village of Hemmingford  
 Tax Increment Financing ("TIF") Projects      Dated Effective 4/30/2024

General Information:

Total Number of Active TIF Projects:	1
Projects Paid in full during 2023	0
Projects Approved in 2023	0
Projects Approved in 2024 (through 4/30/2024)	0
Percentage of City Area Blighted	100.00%

Active Projects

Redeveloper	Project Type	Estimated Project Costs (TIF Eligible)*	Estimated Project Costs (Total)*	Base Assessed Valuation	Initial Projected Valuation	Total Assessed Value (2024)**	Financing Approved***	Estimated Outstanding Indebtedness	Estimated Paid in Full/End Date
Lux, LLC	Salon and Commercial Rental Space	\$ 61,641.00	\$ 188,876.00	\$ 21,625.00	\$ 115,720.00	\$ 347,833.00	\$ 55,281.35	\$ 41,000.00	12/31/2035

\*Numbers are approximated and rounded and may vary substantially.

\*\*Numbers have not been finalized for 2024; may be subject to change

\*\*\*Actual financing is based on and limited to TIF Revenues received and actual eligible costs incurred, plus interest

## Report Required by State Statute 79-506

Regarding Board Member Purchase of Health Insurance

Hemingford Public Schools

One member of the Board of Education currently participates in the District's health insurance program. Trish Schumacher is a participant.

Trish Schumacher pays the full cost of the insurance in accordance with State Statute 79-506. There is no cost to the district associated with her participation in this program.

BOX BUTTE COUNTY SCHOOL DISTRICT 07-0010  
HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS  
HEMINGFORD, NEBRASKA

April 15, 2024

Board of Education Regular Meeting Minutes

A regular meeting of the Board of Education of School District 07-0010 was called to order at 7:03 PM at South Campus by Justin Ansley. Notice of the meeting was given in advance through the Hemingford Ledger. Board members were notified in advance of the meeting.

Justin Ansley: Present, Brett Cullan: Present, Rick Horstman: Present, Blanche Randolph: Present, Trish Schumacher: Present, Micki Votruba: Present (arrived at 7:11 pm).

Motion by Blanche Randolph that the Agenda be approved as presented Seconded by Rick Horstman Roll Call: Ansley: Aye, Cullan: Aye, Horstman: Aye, Randolph: Aye, Schumacher: Aye, Votruba: Absent 5-0 Motion carried.

The following students were recognized for Bobcat Excellence: State Math Counts: Brian Roland, Class C All-State Band: Emily Johnston and Cody Penaluna, State FFA: Bailey Sellman, Dakota Horstman, Gattlen Bell, Jacob Bryner, Kyra Jespersen, Breana Specht, Gracie Wilkins, Savanna Hickman, Jaili Jackson, Kail Miles, Gavin Bell, Lauren Garner, Lilly Hasenauer, Gavin Bell, Jake Eggers, Kyra Jespersen, Brooke Warner, Tyan Hruby, Ainslee Woltman, Gattlen Bell, Emily Johnston, Anthony Haas, Carson Haas, Emily Johnston, Sophie Hruby, Lilly Hasenauer, Brenna Schumacher, Tyan Hruby, Ainslee Woltman, Brooke Hartman, Jayve Haas. CNA Career Certification: Dax Powell and Theron Miller

Micki Votruba arrived at 7:11 PM.

The Board received a presentation from Miss Gina Jespersen regarding her experience with Leadership Nebraska Class XV.

Motion by Blanche Randolph to approve the Consent Agenda Seconded by Brett Cullan Roll Call: Ansley: Aye, Cullan: Aye, Horstman: Aye, Randolph: Aye, Schumacher: Aye, Votruba: Aye 6-0 Motion carried.

Motion by Brett Cullan claims for April be approved as presented in the amount of General Fund: \$92,159.82, Building Fund: \$1,890.00 Seconded by Trish Schumacher Roll Call: Ansley: Aye, Cullan: Aye, Horstman: Aye, Randolph: Aye, Schumacher: Aye, Votruba: Aye 6-0 Motion carried.

Motion by Brett Cullan Approve resignation of Samantha Miller Seconded by Micki Votruba Roll Call: Ansley: Aye, Cullan: Aye, Horstman: Aye, Randolph: Aye, Schumacher: Aye, Votruba: Aye 6-0 Motion carried.

Motion by Micki Votruba Approve the employment of Dr. Christina Kloch as Secondary English Teacher, Contingent on Release from Contract with her current employer Seconded by Justin Ansley Roll Call: Ansley: Aye, Cullan: Aye, Horstman: Aye, Randolph: Aye, Schumacher: Aye, Votruba: Aye 6-0 Motion carried.

Motion by Trish Schumacher Approve the employment of Mrs. Erica Brunns as Special Education Teacher Seconded by Justin Ansley Roll Call: Ansley: Aye, Cullan: Aye, Horstman: Aye, Randolph: Aye, Schumacher: Aye, Votruba: Aye 6-0 Motion carried.

The Board received a presentation from Mrs. Mandy Plog regarding legislative changes impacting the option enrollment program requirements in Nebraska.

Carlye Kresl provided a student board representative monthly report and a summary report of her experience as a student board representative. Board President Justin Ansley presented a certificate to Carlye in recognition of her service as a student board representative.

Administrative reports were provided by Mr. Arneson, Mrs. Curtis, Mrs. Plog, Mr. Westover, Mrs. Hanks, and Dr. Miller.

Policy review for the month was conducted for the 300 series of policies. The board will review policies 400.00 through 403.07 for next month.

Meeting was adjourned at 8:41 PM.

The next regular meeting of the Hemingford Board of Education will be held on May 13th at 7:00 PM at South Campus.

Dr. Travis Miller  
Superintendent

Blanche Randolph  
Board Secretary

#### **GENERAL FUND INVOICES/CLAIMS**

21ST CENTURY EQUIPMENT 461.29, AMAZON 4,098.40, AMERICINN 218.00, ARBYS 21.57, B & C STEEL CORP. 522.19, B&H PHOTO & VIDEO 175.23, BLACK HILLS ENERGY 4,395.73, BLOEDORN'S LUMBER CO. 24.62, BLUUM OF TEXAS LLC 128.00, BOX BUTTE AG SERVICE, INC 30.98, CAPITAL BUSINESS SYSTEMS, INC 2,034.45, CHADRON PUBLIC SCHOOLS 393.29, COACH MASTERS 239.74, COLUMN SOFTWARE PBC 202.82, COMFORT INN 135.25, COUNTRY INN AND SUITES - KEARNEY 1,680.55, CRESCENT ELECTRIC SUPPLY CO. 481.52, CRISIS PREVENTION INSTITUTE, INC 1,849.00, CULLAN, JENNIFER 422.77, CULLIGAN WATER CONDITIONING 209.27, DARREN'S CARQUEST AUTO PARTS 198.84, DAS STATE ACCOUNTING - CENTRAL FINANCE 267.63, DOCUSHRED 40.00, ED PUZZLE 11.50, EDUCATIONAL SERVICE UNIT #10 155.00, EDUCATIONAL SERVICE UNIT #13 8,168.24, ESU #16 50.00, FROST, JAKE 40.20, FUEL TRIPS-ELAN 618.17, GROSS, ALLEN 387.00, H & H SANITATION 150.00, HAMPTON INN AND SUITES - OMAHA 287.61, HEMINGFORD CO-OP TELEPHONE CO 919.47, HEMINGFORD MUNICIPAL UTILITIE 7,370.13, HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS ACTIVITY FUND 155.32, HERNANDEZ, ALISHA 91.66, HOLIDAY INN KEARNEY 899.70, HUSS AUTO REPAIR 572.71, IDEAL LINEN AND UNIFORM 189.40, IDEAL/BLUFFS FACILITY SOLUTIONS 4,908.66, INNOVATIVE OFFICE SOLUTIONS, LLC 4,990.03, JOSTEN'S INC. 309.95, JW PEPPER & SON, INC 13.74, KEATING & ASSOCIATES, INC. 162.50, KSB School Law PC, LLO 650.00, LEGACY COOP 202.90, LIFE TRACK SERVICES 360.00, LIFEGUARD MD, INC. 1,575.89, LINCOLN JOURNAL STAR 21.99, LISA BRIGGS, OT, LLC 2,437.00, MAILCHIMP 13.00, MATH'S MATE USA, INC 257.15, MOBIUS COMMUNICATIONS CO 600.00, MORFORD'S DECORATING CENTER 2,825.65, NASB 20.00, NCECBVI 7,720.00, NE COUNCIL OF SCHOOL ADMINISTRATORS 75.00, NOODLES AND COMPANY 27.16, PROTEX CENTRAL INC. 1,981.00, QUILL CORPORATION 1,990.41, RABEN'S MARKET 513.71, RIGHT IMPRESSION, THE 60.50, ROBERTS ELECTRIC INC. 5,377.61, ROCKY MOUNTAIN AIR SOLUTIONS 45.58, ROES FARMS TRUCKING LLC 1,003.71, ROTH, MIKAELA 85.93, SCHOOL SPECIALTY LLC 46.72, SOAR PEDIATRIC THERAPY, LLC 4,474.82, STAPLES 54.00, START 2 SEW 181.19, TALACKO SAFETY SOLUTIONS 549.00, TODD'S BODY SHOP 500.00, U.S. POSTAL SERVICE 46.04, VALOR GENERAL STORE 52.85, VILLAGE OF HEMINGFORD 3,941.50, WALL STREET JOURNAL 41.72, WENDYS 25.02, WESTCO 5,606.64, WPCI 114.00 **TOTAL 92,159.82**

#### **BUILDING FUND INVOICES**

JEO CONSULTING GROUP, INC/JEO ARCHITECTURE INC. 1,890.00 **TOTAL 1,890.00**



Activity Fund Balance Report - Summary - Exclude Encumbrances  
09/2023 - 05/2024

Regular; Beginning Month 09/2023; Processing Month 05/2024; Accounts to Include Accounts with Activity; Fund Number 05

Fund: 05 ACTIVITY FUND

<u>Chart of Account Number</u>	<u>Chart of Account Description</u>	<u>Beginning Balance</u>	<u>Expenses</u>	<u>Revenues</u>	<u>Balance Change</u>	<u>Balance</u>
05 704	FUND BALANCE	438,037.00	0.00	0.00	(86,118.00)	351,919.00
05 704 1010	ATHLETICS / ACTIVITIES	(133,542.17)	45,126.41	33,606.60	(93,884.00)	(238,945.98)
05 704 1015	UNIFORMS	0.00	1,436.56	0.00	0.00	(1,436.56)
05 704 1020	ATHLETIC CLUB / CONCESSION STAND	(2,577.38)	18,569.25	25,974.07	3,675.00	8,502.44
05 704 1025	RANDOM DRUG TESTING	0.00	3,741.14	1,850.00	0.00	(1,891.14)
05 704 1030	CHEERLEADERS - FUNDRAISING	(1,616.39)	16,006.05	8,694.76	5,000.00	(3,927.68)
05 704 1035	FOOTBALL FUNDRAISING	(7,672.08)	19,695.38	947.00	32,516.00	6,095.54
05 704 1036	FOOTBALL	0.00	11,865.25	0.00	0.00	(11,865.25)
05 704 1040	VOLLEYBALL - FUNDRAISING	2,084.71	2,076.42	1,072.50	3,058.00	4,138.79
05 704 1041	VOLLEYBALL	0.00	1,430.00	0.00	0.00	(1,430.00)
05 704 1042	BASKETBALL FUNDRAISING	0.00	0.00	337.79	0.00	337.79
05 704 1044	WRESTLING	0.00	12,552.44	1,908.50	0.00	(10,643.94)
05 704 1045	BOYS WRESTLING FUNDRAISER	3,041.90	5,660.83	6,464.75	1,174.00	5,019.82
05 704 1046	GIRLS WRESTLING FUNDRAISER	0.00	0.00	1,875.55	0.00	1,875.55
05 704 1050	XC FUNDRAISER	1,529.79	0.00	726.92	2,354.00	4,610.71
05 704 1051	XC	0.00	3,453.56	0.00	0.00	(3,453.56)
05 704 1052	GOLF	0.00	739.95	0.00	0.00	(739.95)
05 704 1054	TRACK	0.00	6,149.98	0.00	0.00	(6,149.98)
05 704 1055	TRACK FUNDRAISING	260.46	775.07	942.94	241.00	669.33
05 704 1056	GIRLS ATH FUNDRAISING	4,265.92	9,027.00	11,745.00	0.00	6,983.92
05 704 1057	GIRLS ON THE RUN	0.00	0.00	360.19	0.00	360.19
05 704 1999	GRADUATED CLASSES	(0.34)	0.00	0.00	8,784.00	8,783.66
05 704 2022	CLASS OF 2022	281.00	0.00	0.00	(281.00)	0.00
05 704 2023	CLASS OF 2023	(1,937.19)	0.00	0.00	2,007.00	69.81
05 704 2024	CLASS OF 2024	520.29	1,648.40	830.00	1,600.00	1,301.89
05 704 2025	CLASS OF 2025	1,342.09	2,640.78	0.00	5,463.00	4,164.31
05 704 2026	CLASS OF 2026	790.00	0.00	1,192.47	405.00	2,387.47
05 704 2027	CLASS OF 2027	367.90	0.00	559.76	675.00	1,602.66
05 704 2028	CLASS OF 2028	80.00	0.00	90.00	100.00	270.00
05 704 2029	CLASS OF 2029	0.00	0.00	331.56	0.00	331.56
05 704 3010	WORLDSTRIDES	(12,474.82)	13,464.07	15,307.68	15,254.00	4,622.79
05 704 3012	ESPORTS	0.00	53.48	0.00	0.00	(53.48)
05 704 3013	eSPORTS FUNDRAISING	0.00	1,164.30	1,577.56	0.00	413.26
05 704 3015	SPEECH	0.00	4,176.58	1,500.00	0.00	(2,676.58)
05 704 3016	SPEECH FUNDRAISING	0.00	39.97	100.00	0.00	60.03
05 704 3020	ONE ACT	12,453.00	5,010.52	1,036.00	(9,953.00)	(1,474.52)

**Activity Fund Balance Report - Summary - Exclude Encumbrances**  
09/2023 - 05/2024

Regular; Beginning Month 09/2023; Processing Month 05/2024; Accounts to Include Accounts with Activity; Fund Number 05

**Fund: 05      ACTIVITY FUND**

<u>Chart of Account Number</u>	<u>Chart of Account Description</u>	<u>Beginning Balance</u>	<u>Expenses</u>	<u>Revenues</u>	<u>Balance Change</u>	<u>Balance</u>
05 704 3021	ONE ACT - FUNDRAISING	0.00	1,151.19	5,536.73	0.00	4,385.54
05 704 3030	FFA	(18,667.66)	21,804.32	36,693.59	40,677.00	36,898.61
05 704 3035	FFA - SHOP MATERIALS	920.88	703.74	2,100.00	5,921.00	8,238.14
05 704 3040	FCCLA	(1,049.51)	3,342.07	3,155.87	1,482.00	246.29
05 704 3050	NHS - HONOR SOCIETY	2,650.00	431.62	560.29	(1,650.00)	1,128.67
05 704 3070	MUSIC	645.13	1,262.61	802.86	4,967.00	5,152.38
05 704 3080	SCHOLARSHIPS	1,284.00	0.00	222.00	968.00	2,474.00
05 704 3090	STUCO - MIDDLE SCHOOL	(144.02)	446.64	369.00	4,352.00	4,130.34
05 704 3100	STUDENT COUNCIL - HS	(188.48)	341.75	100.00	3,528.00	3,097.77
05 704 3110	HEALTH PROFESSIONS CLUB	0.17	0.00	0.00	989.00	989.17
05 704 3120	YEARBOOK	(6,052.67)	8,579.61	3,290.00	18,038.00	6,695.72
05 704 3150	4TH GRADE - JESPERSEN	0.00	0.00	4,368.56	0.00	4,368.56
05 704 3200	SCIENCE	350.07	0.00	350.00	556.00	1,256.07
05 704 3535	SCIENCE OLYMPIAD	0.00	410.19	1,579.82	0.00	1,169.63
05 704 4010	COURTESY FUND	454.02	185.00	80.00	1,812.00	2,161.02
05 704 4020	ELEMENTARY TEACHERS	17.30	0.00	0.00	8,915.00	8,932.30
05 704 4021	ELEM PRINCIPAL FUND	1,017.28	0.00	524.00	0.00	1,541.28
05 704 4025	HIGH SCHOOL TEACHERS	(0.19)	0.00	0.00	8,078.00	8,077.81
05 704 4026	HS PRINCIPAL FUND	2,276.01	156.69	0.00	0.00	2,119.32
05 704 4040	MISC/STUDENT OPPORTUNITIES	82.22	3,012.79	42.00	2,958.00	69.43
05 704 4045	BOOKFAIR	(37.46)	1,643.65	3,886.37	5,210.00	7,415.26
05 704 4050	FINE ARTS & CULTURE CLUB	276.82	841.22	401.00	901.00	737.60
05 704 4060	HOPE SQUAD	2,735.12	1,277.22	1,788.74	228.00	3,474.64
05 704 4070	BOBCAT CARES	1,050.00	224.75	115.00	0.00	940.25
Fund Total: 05		292,852.72	232,318.45	184,997.43	0.00	245,531.70

**Expenditure Report by Function/Object - Summary**

05/10/2024 09:58 AM

Regular; Processing Month 05/2024; Fund Number 01, 03, 05, 06, 08, 10

User ID: KAH

Function Number	Revised Budget	Expended During Month	Expenditures to Date	% of Budget	Balance at EOM	A/ P Outstanding	P/ O Outstanding	Unencumbered Balance	
01	GENERAL FUND								
0500	0500	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
1100	REGULAR INSTRUCTIONAL PROGRAMS	3,404,358.00	290,567.89	2,549,212.85	75.11	855,145.15	0.00	7,924.24	847,220.91
1120	1120	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1130	1130	2,610.00	0.00	2,643.23	103.99	(33.23)	0.00	70.85	(104.08)
1140	1140	1,332.00	0.00	2,894.50	229.84	(1,562.50)	0.00	166.96	(1,729.46)
1150	VO AG PROGRAM	9,761.00	1,107.08	7,854.81	82.96	1,906.19	0.00	242.87	1,663.32
1160	PROVERTY PROGRAMS	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1170	1170	412.00	0.00	364.56	88.49	47.44	0.00	0.00	47.44
1180	1180	5,473.00	784.34	4,943.76	90.33	529.24	0.00	0.00	529.24
1190	EARLY CHILDHOOD ED PROGRAMS	157,498.00	12,715.69	116,395.49	73.90	41,102.51	0.00	0.00	41,102.51
1200	SPECIAL EDUCATION INSTRUCTIONAL PROGRAMS	751,863.00	52,635.75	551,737.32	74.16	200,125.68	0.00	5,833.81	194,291.87
1212	1212	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1213	1213	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1252	1252	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1253	1253	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1291	SPED AGES 3-5	776.00	0.00	512.90	66.10	263.10	0.00	0.00	263.10
1292	SPED AGES 0-2	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1300	SUMMER SCHOOL	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2120	GUIDANCE SERVICES	76,848.00	6,209.40	57,635.86	75.00	19,212.14	0.00	0.00	19,212.14
2130	HEALTH SERVICES	63,122.00	4,745.91	48,312.88	76.98	14,809.12	0.00	278.93	14,530.19
2140	PSYCHOLOGICAL SERVICES	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2141	PSYCHOLOGICAL SERVICES SPED SCHOOL AGE	30,856.00	2,989.80	23,918.40	77.52	6,937.60	0.00	0.00	6,937.60
2142	PSYCHOLOGICAL SERVICES SPED AGE 3-5	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2150	SPEECH & AUDIOLOGY SERVICES	976.00	0.00	648.00	66.39	328.00	0.00	0.00	328.00
2151	SPEECH & AUDIOLOGY SERV SPED SCHOOL AGE	49,554.00	4,605.41	38,215.00	77.26	11,339.00	0.00	69.93	11,269.07
2152	SPEECH & AUDIOLOGY SERV SPED AGE 3-5	30,340.00	0.00	20,577.20	67.82	9,762.80	0.00	0.00	9,762.80
2153	SPEECH & AUDIOLOGY SERV SPED AGE 0-2	15,172.00	0.00	10,288.67	67.81	4,883.33	0.00	0.00	4,883.33
2161	OT SERVICES SPED SCHOOL AGE	26,912.00	2,047.08	20,032.14	74.44	6,879.86	0.00	0.00	6,879.86
2162	OT SERVICES SPED AGE 3-5	1,458.00	73.11	1,050.33	72.04	407.67	0.00	0.00	407.67
2163	OT SERVICES SPED AGE 0-2	3,405.00	316.81	2,344.15	68.84	1,060.85	0.00	0.00	1,060.85
2171	PT SERVICES SPED SCHOOL AGE	15,052.00	0.00	12,501.44	83.06	2,550.56	0.00	0.00	2,550.56
2172	PT SERVICES SPED AGE 3-5	2,672.00	0.00	1,977.96	74.03	694.04	0.00	0.00	694.04
2173	PT SERVICES SPED AGE 0-2	3,404.00	0.00	2,446.47	71.87	957.53	0.00	0.00	957.53
2180	VISION SERVICES	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2181	VISION SERVICES SPED SCHOOL AGE	12,607.00	337.77	11,748.72	93.19	858.28	0.00	0.00	858.28
2182	VISION SERVICES SPED AGE 3-5	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2190	OTHER PUPIL SUPPORT SERVICES	0.00	373.30	10,117.40	0.00	(10,117.40)	0.00	0.00	(10,117.40)
2210	IMPROVEMENT OF INSTRUCTION	1,923.00	0.00	1,117.41	58.11	805.59	0.00	0.00	805.59
2211	SCHOOL IMPROVEMENT	7,507.00	0.00	4,363.25	58.41	3,143.75	0.00	21.80	3,121.95
2212	INST STAFF CURR DEV	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2213	INST STAFF TRAINING	7,095.00	900.00	6,150.00	88.44	945.00	0.00	125.00	820.00
2214	IMPLEMENTATION OF STANDARDS	2,323.00	0.00	1,348.34	58.04	974.66	0.00	0.00	974.66
2220	LIBRARY/MEDIA SERVICES	43,112.00	3,442.07	31,566.16	73.22	11,545.84	0.00	0.00	11,545.84
2224	EDUCATIONAL TELEVISION SERVICES	24,150.00	2,319.59	18,411.64	76.24	5,738.36	0.00	0.00	5,738.36
2230	INSTRUCTION-RELATED TECHNOLOGY	74,608.00	3,555.52	50,621.25	152.40	23,986.75	0.00	63,080.91	(39,094.16)
2240	ACADEMIC STUDENT ASSESSMENT	14,045.00	0.00	8,165.45	65.83	5,879.55	0.00	1,080.00	4,799.55
2310	BOARD OF EDUCATION	54,772.00	1,556.11	28,828.41	64.12	25,943.59	0.00	6,289.47	19,654.12
2320	EXECUTIVE ADMINISTRATION	181,599.00	15,316.49	135,600.13	74.71	45,998.87	0.00	75.00	45,923.87
2330	DISTRICT LEGAL SERVICES	24,374.00	420.00	15,240.66	62.53	9,133.34	0.00	0.00	9,133.34
2410	OFFICE OF PRINCIPAL	422,470.00	34,568.90	314,047.54	74.35	108,422.46	0.00	77.85	108,344.61
2440	2440	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2500	2500	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2510	GENERAL ADMIN-BUSINESS SERVICE	139,965.00	8,094.70	99,744.00	71.28	40,221.00	0.00	26.98	40,194.02

Expenditure Report by Function/Object - Summary

05/10/2024 09:58 AM

Regular; Processing Month 05/2024; Fund Number 01, 03, 05, 06, 08, 10

User ID: KAH

Function Number		Revised Budget	Expended During Month	Expenditures to Date	% of Budget	Balance at EOM	A/ P Outstanding	P/ O Outstanding	Unencumbered Balance
2530	PRINT, PUB, DUP SERVICES	0.00	1,014.35	10,037.21	0.00	(10,037.21)	0.00	0.00	(10,037.21)
2560	PUBLIC INFO SERVICE	1,988.00	0.00	1,155.22	58.11	832.78	0.00	0.00	832.78
2570	PERSONNEL SERVICES	729.00	0.00	423.00	58.02	306.00	0.00	0.00	306.00
2580	ADMIN TECH SERVICES	3,810.00	0.00	2,364.60	62.06	1,445.40	0.00	0.00	1,445.40
2610	SUPPORT SERVICES OPERATION OF BUILDING	366,501.00	29,943.83	268,839.78	73.35	97,661.22	0.00	0.00	97,661.22
2620	SUPPORT SERVICES-MAINT OF BUILDING	209,189.00	9,399.35	143,124.42	71.17	66,064.58	0.00	5,761.35	60,303.23
2630	2630	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2650	VEHICLE OPP, ACQUISITION AND MAINTENANCE	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2670	SAFETY	21,046.00	3,260.00	22,160.46	123.23	(1,114.46)	0.00	3,774.00	(4,888.46)
2710	VEHICLE OPP & PURCH REG ED	689,502.00	47,390.87	487,455.92	70.77	202,046.08	0.00	515.51	201,530.57
2711	VEHICLE OPP & PURCH LCC	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2712	VEHICLE OPP & PURCH SCHOOL AGE SPED	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2713	VEHICLE OPP & PURCH AGE 0-5 SPED	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2730	VEHICLE SERV & MAINT REG ED	82,792.00	7,468.09	56,414.60	68.14	26,377.40	0.00	0.00	26,377.40
2732	VEHICLE SERV & MAINT SCHOOL AGE SPED	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2760	2760	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2790	OTHER TRANS REG STUDENTS	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2792	OTHER TRANS SCHOOL AGE SPED	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
3300	COMMUNITY SERVICES	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
3500	STATE CATEGORICAL PROGRAMS	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
3512	DISTANCE EDUCATION INCENTIVE PAYMENTS	24,624.00	2,336.23	19,830.98	80.54	4,793.02	0.00	0.00	4,793.02
3535	HIGH ABILITY LEARNERS	5,736.00	1,281.32	7,744.44	136.12	(2,008.44)	0.00	63.58	(2,072.02)
4320	4320	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
4700	BUILDING IMPROVEMENTS	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6000	6000	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6200	TITLE I, PART A ESSA IMP BASIC BY LOCAL	111,817.00	9,431.85	83,633.58	74.80	28,183.42	0.00	0.00	28,183.42
6210	TITLE I PART A ACCT ESSA IMPROV BASIC	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6310	TITLE II, PART A ESSA SUPP EFF INSTUCT	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6401	6401	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6402	IDEA PART B(611) BASE ALLOC TRANS	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6403	IDEA PART B(611) BASE ALLOC-SCHOOL AGE	26,811.00	0.00	15,587.59	58.14	11,223.41	0.00	0.00	11,223.41
6404	IDEA PART B(611) BASE ALLOC BIRTH TO 4	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6406	IDEA PRESCHOOL(619) BASE ALLOC	4,305.00	489.93	3,578.98	83.14	726.02	0.00	0.00	726.02
6408	IDEA PTB 611 BASE	0.00	21,511.23	21,511.23	0.00	(21,511.23)	0.00	0.00	(21,511.23)
6410	IDEA ENROLLMENT/POVERTY	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6412	IDEA PART B PROPORTIONATE SHARE	0.00	195.98	195.98	0.00	(195.98)	0.00	0.00	(195.98)
6421	IDEA PART-B ARP-BASE&ENROLLMENT POVERTY BIRTH-21	25,986.00	0.00	15,108.00	58.14	10,878.00	0.00	0.00	10,878.00
6422	IDEA PRESCHOOL (619) ARP-BASE/ENROLLMENT POVERTY (619)	2,259.00	0.00	1,313.00	58.12	946.00	0.00	0.00	946.00
6455	6455	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6500	6500	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6590	6590	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6610	6610	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6630	6630	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6700	FED VOC & APP TECH ED (CARL PERKINS)	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6810	6810	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6960	6960	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6985	6985	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6990	OTHER FED CATEGORICAL RECEIPTS	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6992	REAP	46,599.00	0.00	27,092.00	58.14	19,507.00	0.00	0.00	19,507.00
6996	6996	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6997	ESSER II	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
6998	ESSER III	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
8000	TRANSFERS (OUTGOING)	51,600.00	0.00	30,000.00	58.14	21,600.00	0.00	0.00	21,600.00

**Expenditure Report by Function/Object -  
Summary**

05/10/2024 09:58 AM

Regular; Processing Month 05/2024; Fund Number 01, 03, 05, 06, 08, 10

User ID: KAH

Function Number	Revised Budget	Expended During Month	Expenditures to Date	% of Budget	Balance at EOM	A/ P Outstanding	P/ O Outstanding	Unencumbered Balance
8002 XFER FROM G/F TO DEPRECIATION FD	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
8010 TRANSFER FROM G/F TO COOP FD	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
9000 NON-PROGRAM EXPENDITURES	1,047,283.00	881.22	610,647.63	58.31	436,635.37	0.00	0.00	436,635.37
01 GENERAL FUND	8,386,981.00	584,286.97	6,041,796.90	73.18	2,345,184.10	0.00	95,479.04	2,249,705.06

**Expenditure Report by Function/Object -  
Summary**

05/10/2024 09:58 AM

Regular; Processing Month 05/2024; Fund Number 01, 03, 05, 06, 08, 10

User ID: KAH

Function Number	Revised Budget	Expended During Month	Expenditures to Date	% of Budget	Balance at EOM	A/ P Outstanding	P/ O Outstanding	Unencumbered Balance
03	EMPLOYEE BENEFIT FUND							
0101	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1100	76,499.00	0.00	19,661.34	25.70	56,837.66	0.00	0.00	56,837.66
2900	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
9000	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
9999	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
03	76,499.00	0.00	19,661.34	25.70	56,837.66	0.00	0.00	56,837.66

**Expenditure Report by Function/Object -  
Summary**

05/10/2024 09:58 AM

Regular; Processing Month 05/2024; Fund Number 01, 03, 05, 06, 08, 10

User ID: KAH

Function Number	Revised Budget	Expended During Month	Expenditures to Date	% of Budget	Balance at EOM	A/ P Outstanding	P/ O Outstanding	Unencumbered Balance
05								
0500	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
1100	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
2900	522,985.00	0.00	232,318.45	52.18	290,666.55	0.00	40,582.92	250,083.63
05	522,985.00	0.00	232,318.45	52.18	290,666.55	0.00	40,582.92	250,083.63

**Expenditure Report by Function/Object -  
Summary**

05/10/2024 09:58 AM

Regular; Processing Month 05/2024; Fund Number 01, 03, 05, 06, 08, 10

User ID: KAH

Function Number	Revised Budget	Expended During Month	Expenditures to Date	% of Budget	Balance at EOM	A/ P Outstanding	P/ O Outstanding	Unencumbered Balance	
06	NUTRITION FUND								
0500 0500	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
1100	REGULAR INSTRUCTIONAL PROGRAMS								
2300 2300	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
3000 3000	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
3100	FOOD SERVICE OPERATIONS								
4000 4000	405,000.00	10,837.94	225,509.24	55.89	179,490.76	0.00	839.62	178,651.14	
5000	DEBT SERVICES								
5000 5000	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	
06	NUTRITION FUND								
	405,000.00	10,837.94	225,509.24	55.89	179,490.76	0.00	839.62	178,651.14	

**Expenditure Report by Function/Object -  
Summary**

05/10/2024 09:58 AM

Regular; Processing Month 05/2024; Fund Number 01, 03, 05, 06, 08, 10

User ID: KAH

Function Number	Revised Budget	Expended During Month	Expenditures to Date	% of Budget	Balance at EOM	A/ P Outstanding	P/ O Outstanding	Unencumbered Balance
08 BUILDING FUND								
0500 0500	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
4300 ARCHITECTURE & ENGINEERING	0.00	0.00	3,150.00	0.00	(3,150.00)	0.00	0.00	(3,150.00)
4700 BUILDING IMPROVEMENTS	113,500.00	0.00	53,877.61	47.47	59,622.39	0.00	0.00	59,622.39
9000 NON-PROGRAM EXPENDITURES	2,686,007.00	0.00	1,157,957.40	43.11	1,528,049.60	0.00	0.00	1,528,049.60
9999 9999	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
08 BUILDING FUND	2,799,507.00	0.00	1,214,985.01	43.40	1,584,521.99	0.00	0.00	1,584,521.99

**Expenditure Report by Function/Object -  
Summary**

05/10/2024 09:58 AM

Regular; Processing Month 05/2024; Fund Number 01, 03, 05, 06, 08, 10

User ID: KAH

Function Number	Revised Budget	Expended During Month	Expenditures to Date	% of Budget	Balance at EOM	A/ P Outstanding	P/ O Outstanding	Unencumbered Balance
10 COOPERATIVE FUND								
1100 REGULAR INSTRUCTIONAL PROGRAMS	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
3512 DISTANCE EDUCATION INCENTIVE PAYMENTS	95,993.00	8,009.41	72,131.35	75.14	23,861.65	0.00	0.00	23,861.65
10 COOPERATIVE FUND	95,993.00	8,009.41	72,131.35	75.14	23,861.65	0.00	0.00	23,861.65

Expenditure Report by Function/Object - Summary

05/10/2024 09:58 AM

Regular; Processing Month 05/2024; Fund Number 01, 03, 05, 06, 08, 10

User ID: KAH

Function Number	Revised Budget	Expended During Month	Expenditures to Date	% of Budget	Balance at EOM	A/ P Outstanding	P/ O Outstanding	Unencumbered Balance
Grand Total:	12,286,965.00	603,134.32	7,806,402.29	64.65	4,480,562.71	0.00	136,901.58	4,343,661.13

HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS

May 13, 2024

**GENERAL FUND:**

Statement Balance 04-30-24	\$ 347,559.07
G/F MM Statement Balance 4-30-24	\$ 723,073.62
3 Month CD-0989 Mat. 05-29-24	\$ 307,218.91
3 Month CD-0776 Mat. 06-27-24	\$ 307,139.99
3 Month CD-0962 Mat. 07-26-24	\$ 307,179.45
- Outstanding Checks	<u>\$ 77,566.49</u>
<b>Balance 04-30-24</b>	<b>\$1,914,604.55</b>

+ May Tax Receipts:	\$2,216,232.28
+ State Aid:	\$ 122,792.00

**Subtotal: General Fund** **\$4,253,628.83**

May Bills: \$ 80,818.56

May Payroll: \$ 526,121.01

-Total May Expenses: \$ 606,939.57

**Balance General Fund:** **\$3,646,689.26**

**BUILDING FUND:**

Checking Balance 04-30-24	\$ 366,625.65
-Outstanding Check	<u>\$ 1,260.00</u>
Liquid Asset Fund (\$1,778.06 Dividend)	\$ 433,525.13
4 CD's : 6 Month(0970) - Mat. 10-26-24	\$ 321,104.58
3 Month(1004) - Mat. 05-29-24	\$ 512,031.52
3 Month(0784) - Mat. 06-27-24	\$ 511,899.97
3 Month(0954) - Mat. 07-26-24	\$ 511,965.74
May Tax Receipts:	<u>\$ 106,644.48</u>
<b>Building Fund Balance</b>	<b><u>\$2,762,537.07</u></b>

05/09/2024 01:43 PM

Posted - All; Batch Description 2024-04 BLDG FUND INV.

User ID: KAH

Vendor Name	Description	Amount
Checking Account ID 8	Fund Number 08 BUILDING FUND	
JEO CONSULTING GROUP, INC/JEO ARCHITECTURE INC.	PMT #2 ON ASSESSMENT REPORT	1,260.00
Check Number 1524 Total	JEO CONSULTING GROUP, INC/JEO ARCHITECTURE INC.	<hr/> 1,260.00
Fund Number 08		<hr/> 1,260.00
Checking Account ID 8		<hr/> 1,260.00

05/09/2024 01:43 PM

Posted - All; Batch Description 2024-04 LUNCH FUND INV.-0001

User ID: KAH

Vendor Name	Description	Amount
Checking Account ID 6	Fund Number 06 NUTRITION FUND	
CASH-WA DISTRIBUTING	FOOD	1,274.56
CASH-WA DISTRIBUTING	MILK	2,142.88
CASH-WA DISTRIBUTING	FOOD	1,125.92
Check Number 7146 Total	CASH-WA DISTRIBUTING	<u>4,543.36</u>
HILAND DAIRY	MILK	364.98
HILAND DAIRY	MILK	406.97
HILAND DAIRY	MILK	427.57
HILAND DAIRY	MILK	343.10
HILAND DAIRY	MILK	450.60
HILAND DAIRY	MILK	426.90
HILAND DAIRY	MILK	87.02
Check Number 7147 Total	HILAND DAIRY	<u>2,507.14</u>
NE FOOD DISTRIBUTION PROGRAM	FOOD-COMMODITIES	103.40
Check Number 7148 Total	NE FOOD DISTRIBUTION PROGRAM	<u>103.40</u>
NSNA	STATE CONFERENCE REGISTRATION	675.00
Check Number 7149 Total	NSNA	<u>675.00</u>
RABEN'S MARKET	FOOD	47.66
Check Number 7150 Total	RABEN'S MARKET	<u>47.66</u>
US FOODS	FOOD	2,612.62
US FOODS	FOOD	183.92
US FOODS	FOOD	3,160.60
Check Number 7151 Total	US FOODS	<u>5,957.14</u>
Fund Number 06		<u>13,833.70</u>
Checking Account ID 6		<u>13,833.70</u>

05/10/2024 09:50 AM

Posted - All; Batch Description 2024-04 CREDIT CARD G/F, 2024-05 INVOICES.

User ID: KAH

Vendor Name	Description	Amount
Checking Account ID 1	Fund Number 01 GENERAL FUND	
21ST CENTURY EQUIPMENT	MAINTENANCE SUPPLIES	267.32
21ST CENTURY EQUIPMENT	CREDIT MEMO	(25.90)
21ST CENTURY EQUIPMENT	MAINTENANCE PARTS	108.28
Check Number 6736 Total	21ST CENTURY EQUIPMENT	<u>349.70</u>
ABANTE	SPONSORED BY HCTC - SLEEVES	1,330.30
Check Number 6737 Total	ABANTE	<u>1,330.30</u>
ADAMSON AUTOMOTIVE	BUS MAINTENANCE/REPAIR	6,932.06
Check Number 6738 Total	ADAMSON AUTOMOTIVE	<u>6,932.06</u>
AMAZON	replacement of science equipment	297.40
AMAZON	AG ED SUPPLIES	45.99
AMAZON	Daubers & Ink for big draw, replacements	385.89
AMAZON	Keyboard/Mouse for Chromeboxes	45.47
AMAZON	MUSIC SUPPLY AND REPAIR	124.13
Check Number 6724 Total	AMAZON	<u>898.88</u>
ART OF EDUCATION UNIVERSITY, INC.	CONFERENCE REGISTRATION	99.00
Check Number 6724 Total	ART OF EDUCATION UNIVERSITY, INC.	<u>99.00</u>
B & C STEEL CORP.	CUT UP SCRAP METAL	112.50
Check Number 6739 Total	B & C STEEL CORP.	<u>112.50</u>
BLACK HILLS ENERGY	GAS - SCHOOL	3,869.88
BLACK HILLS ENERGY	GAS - SUPT HOUSE	105.60
Check Number 6740 Total	BLACK HILLS ENERGY	<u>3,975.48</u>
BLOEDORN'S LUMBER CO.	maintenance supply	79.70
BLOEDORN'S LUMBER CO.	MAINTENANCE	30.70
Check Number 6741 Total	BLOEDORN'S LUMBER CO.	<u>110.40</u>
BLUUM OF TEXAS LLC	Display for EL SPED and SPED Director.	99.00
BLUUM OF TEXAS LLC	Display for EL SPED and SPED Director.	70.00
BLUUM OF TEXAS LLC	Display for EL SPED and SPED Director.	7,862.00
Check Number 6742 Total	BLUUM OF TEXAS LLC	<u>8,031.00</u>
BOX BUTTE AG SERVICE, INC	MAIN AND MODULAR SUPPLY	1,287.78
Check Number 6743 Total	BOX BUTTE AG SERVICE, INC	<u>1,287.78</u>
BUD'S PEST CONTROL	PEST CONTROL	175.00
Check Number 6744 Total	BUD'S PEST CONTROL	<u>175.00</u>
CAPITAL BUSINESS SYSTEMS, INC	COPIER LEASE PAYMENT	1,014.35
Check Number 6745 Total	CAPITAL BUSINESS SYSTEMS, INC	<u>1,014.35</u>
CAROLINA BIOLOGICAL SUPPLY CO	classroom science supply	121.29
Check Number 6746 Total	CAROLINA BIOLOGICAL SUPPLY CO	<u>121.29</u>
CHADRON MEDICAL CLINIC PC	G KARNEY - CDL EXAM	260.00
Check Number 6747 Total	CHADRON MEDICAL CLINIC PC	<u>260.00</u>

05/10/2024 09:50 AM

Posted - All; Batch Description 2024-04 CREDIT CARD G/F, 2024-05 INVOICES.

User ID: KAH

Vendor Name	Description	Amount
COLUMN SOFTWARE PBC	LEGAL NOTICE	134.96
COLUMN SOFTWARE PBC	LEGAL NOTICE	17.05
Check Number 6748 Total	COLUMN SOFTWARE PBC	<u>152.01</u>
COPPERMILL STEAKHOUSE	POWERSCHOOL TRAINING - MC/SG	99.34
Check Number 6724 Total	COPPERMILL STEAKHOUSE	<u>99.34</u>
CREATIVE SITES	Playground Border	2,930.00
Check Number 6749 Total	CREATIVE SITES	<u>2,930.00</u>
CRICUT	USAGE FEE	3.78
Check Number 6724 Total	CRICUT	<u>3.78</u>
CROWNS AWARDS	Graduation Medals	300.39
Check Number 6724 Total	CROWNS AWARDS	<u>300.39</u>
CULLIGAN WATER CONDITIONING	REVERSE OSMOSIS DELIVERY	20.85
CULLIGAN WATER CONDITIONING	WATER/RENTAL	224.27
Check Number 6750 Total	CULLIGAN WATER CONDITIONING	<u>245.12</u>
DAIRY QUEEN	MATHCOUNTS	52.77
Check Number 6724 Total	DAIRY QUEEN	<u>52.77</u>
DARREN'S CARQUEST AUTO PARTS	MAINTENANCE SUPPLY	29.51
DARREN'S CARQUEST AUTO PARTS	SHOP SUPPLIES	132.53
DARREN'S CARQUEST AUTO PARTS	MAINTENANCE SUPPLIES	36.80
DARREN'S CARQUEST AUTO PARTS	MAINTNENANCE SUPPLY	15.96
Check Number 6751 Total	DARREN'S CARQUEST AUTO PARTS	<u>214.80</u>
DAS STATE ACCOUNTING - CENTRAL FINANCE	MAR PARTICIPATION FEE	267.63
DAS STATE ACCOUNTING - CENTRAL FINANCE	APR PARTICIPATION FEE	267.63
Check Number 6752 Total	DAS STATE ACCOUNTING - CENTRAL FINANCE	<u>535.26</u>
DEPARTMENT OF MOTOR VEHICLES	NE LICENSE CHECK	7.50
Check Number 6724 Total	DEPARTMENT OF MOTOR VEHICLES	<u>7.50</u>
DOCUSHRED	SHREDDING SERVICE	40.00
Check Number 6753 Total	DOCUSHRED	<u>40.00</u>
ED PUZZLE	SUBSCRIPTION FEE	11.50
Check Number 6724 Total	ED PUZZLE	<u>11.50</u>
EDUCATIONAL SERVICE UNIT #13	DL;INT;NEVA;PL;MIPS;PSYCH;LOW VSION	6,235.09
Check Number 6754 Total	EDUCATIONAL SERVICE UNIT #13	<u>6,235.09</u>
EMBASSY SUITES- LINCOLN	NASBO LODGING	556.00
Check Number 6755 Total	EMBASSY SUITES- LINCOLN	<u>556.00</u>
EVENTBRITE	EXC. IN EARLY CHILDHOOD CONF REG. REFUND	(45.00)
Check Number 6724 Total	EVENTBRITE	<u>(45.00)</u>
FIREHOUSE SUBS	ALL STATE BAND MEAL	33.44
Check Number 6724 Total	FIREHOUSE SUBS	<u>33.44</u>

05/10/2024 09:50 AM

Posted - All; Batch Description 2024-04 CREDIT CARD G/F, 2024-05 INVOICES.

User ID: KAH

Vendor Name	Description	Amount
FREDDYS	ALL STATE BAND MEAL	16.61
Check Number 6724 Total	FREDDYS	<u>16.61</u>
FUEL TRIPS- ELAN	MARCH FUEL TRIPS	403.92
Check Number 6724 Total	FUEL TRIPS- ELAN	<u>403.92</u>
H & H SANITATION	MONTHLY ROLL OFF BOX RENTAL	150.00
Check Number 6756 Total	H & H SANITATION	<u>150.00</u>
HEMINGFORD CO-OP TELEPHONE CO	PHONE/INTERNET	963.88
Check Number 6757 Total	HEMINGFORD CO-OP TELEPHONE CO	<u>963.88</u>
HEMINGFORD MUNICIPAL UTILITIE	UTILITITES	7,210.65
Check Number 6758 Total	HEMINGFORD MUNICIPAL UTILITIE	<u>7,210.65</u>
HERNANDEZ, ALISHA	APRIL MILEAGE	103.11
Check Number 6759 Total	HERNANDEZ, ALISHA	<u>103.11</u>
HUSS AUTO REPAIR	TRAVERSE SERVICED	101.85
HUSS AUTO REPAIR	TRAVERSE - BRAKE PADS; SERPENTINE BT	288.75
HUSS AUTO REPAIR	OLD SUBURBAN SERVICED	145.43
Check Number 6760 Total	HUSS AUTO REPAIR	<u>536.03</u>
HUSS, JANELLE	23-24 TUITION REIMB	750.00
Check Number 6761 Total	HUSS, JANELLE	<u>750.00</u>
IDEAL LINEN AND UNIFORM	CUSTODIAL SUPPLY	94.70
IDEAL LINEN AND UNIFORM	CUSTODIAL SUPPLIES	94.70
Check Number 6762 Total	IDEAL LINEN AND UNIFORM	<u>189.40</u>
IDEAL/BLUFFS FACILITY SOLUTIONS	CUSTODIAL SUPPLIES	381.24
IDEAL/BLUFFS FACILITY SOLUTIONS	CUSOTIDIAL SUPPLIES	1,993.65
IDEAL/BLUFFS FACILITY SOLUTIONS	CUSTODIAL SUPPLIES	8.25
IDEAL/BLUFFS FACILITY SOLUTIONS	CUSTODIAL SUPPLIES	818.16
Check Number 6763 Total	IDEAL/BLUFFS FACILITY SOLUTIONS	<u>3,201.30</u>
INNOVATIVE OFFICE SOLUTIONS, LLC	Toner	1,802.31
Check Number 6764 Total	INNOVATIVE OFFICE SOLUTIONS, LLC	<u>1,802.31</u>
JIMMY JOHNS	SCIENCE OLYMPIAD MEAL	267.18
Check Number 6724 Total	JIMMY JOHNS	<u>267.18</u>
KEATING & ASSOCIATES, INC.	125 MONTHLY PARTICIPATION FEE	162.50
Check Number 6765 Total	KEATING & ASSOCIATES, INC.	<u>162.50</u>
KITTLEMAN, TRAVIS	FEBR MILEAGE	143.21
KITTLEMAN, TRAVIS	MARCH MILEAGE	152.76
Check Number 6766 Total	KITTLEMAN, TRAVIS	<u>295.97</u>
KRESL, SAMANTHA	MARCH MILEAGE	122.20
KRESL, SAMANTHA	APRIL MILEAGE	141.30
Check Number 6767 Total	KRESL, SAMANTHA	<u>263.50</u>

Vendor Name	Description	Amount
KSB School Law PC, LLO	LEGAL SERVICES	420.00
Check Number 6768 Total	KSB School Law PC, LLO	<u>420.00</u>
LEARNING ALLY	Learning Ally yearly subscription	1,169.00
Check Number 6769 Total	LEARNING ALLY	<u>1,169.00</u>
LEGACY COOP	cable ties	19.89
LEGACY COOP	MAINTENANCE SUPPLY	10.98
LEGACY COOP	40 GAL YELLOW TANK	125.00
LEGACY COOP	MAINTENANCE SUPPLY	49.80
LEGACY COOP	MAINTENANCE SUPPLY	35.95
LEGACY COOP	CLASS SUPPLIES	22.98
LEGACY COOP	hose supplies	39.13
LEGACY COOP	CLASS SUPPLY	21.97
Check Number 6770 Total	LEGACY COOP	<u>325.70</u>
LINCOLN JOURNAL STAR	SUBSCRIPTION	30.99
Check Number 6724 Total	LINCOLN JOURNAL STAR	<u>30.99</u>
LISA BRIGGS, OT, LLC	OT SERVICE/MILEAGE	2,437.00
Check Number 6771 Total	LISA BRIGGS, OT, LLC	<u>2,437.00</u>
MAILCHIMP	NEWSLETTER SUBSCRIPTION	13.00
Check Number 6724 Total	MAILCHIMP	<u>13.00</u>
MAINSTAY SUITES	STATE SCIENCE OLYMPIAD LODGING	1,122.95
Check Number 6772 Total	MAINSTAY SUITES	<u>1,122.95</u>
MCDONALDS	MATHCOUNTS MEAL	47.43
Check Number 6724 Total	MCDONALDS	<u>47.43</u>
NCECBVI	PAYMENT 9 OF 10	4,900.00
Check Number 6773 Total	NCECBVI	<u>4,900.00</u>
NE AGRICULTURAL EDUCATIORS ASSOC (NAEA)	2024-25 NAEA PROFESSIONAL FEE	275.00
Check Number 6774 Total	NE AGRICULTURAL EDUCATIORS ASSOC (NAEA)	<u>275.00</u>
NE COUNCIL OF SCHOOL ADMINISTRATORS	24-25 MEMBERSHIP RENEWAL	734.00
NE COUNCIL OF SCHOOL ADMINISTRATORS	2024-25 MEMBERSHIP RENEWAL	694.00
NE COUNCIL OF SCHOOL ADMINISTRATORS	NASBO CONF REGISTRATION	360.00
NE COUNCIL OF SCHOOL ADMINISTRATORS	NASES SPRING CONF REGISTRATION	165.00
NE COUNCIL OF SCHOOL ADMINISTRATORS	2024 LEGAL IMPLICATIONS ZOOM	150.00
Check Number 6775 Total	NE COUNCIL OF SCHOOL ADMINISTRATORS	<u>2,103.00</u>
NE SAFETY CENTER	LEVELS TRAINING	525.00
Check Number 6776 Total	NE SAFETY CENTER	<u>525.00</u>
ONE SOURCE BACKGROUND CHECK CO	BACKGROUND CHECK-	19.00
Check Number 6777 Total	ONE SOURCE BACKGROUND CHECK CO	<u>19.00</u>
PIZZA HUT	SCI OLYMPIAD MEAL	139.97
Check Number 6724 Total	PIZZA HUT	<u>139.97</u>

05/10/2024 09:50 AM

Posted - All; Batch Description 2024-04 CREDIT CARD G/F, 2024-05 INVOICES.

User ID: KAH

Vendor Name	Description	Amount
PLT4M	Student licenses for lifting app	1,000.00
Check Number 6778 Total PLT4M		<u>1,000.00</u>
POWERSCHOOL GROUP LLC	24-25 UNIVERSAL ROSTERING CONNECTOR	422.91
Check Number 6779 Total POWERSCHOOL GROUP LLC		<u>422.91</u>
PROTEX CENTRAL INC.	LABOR: ACCESS CONTROL SERVICE	330.00
Check Number 6780 Total PROTEX CENTRAL INC.		<u>330.00</u>
QDOBA	POWER SCHOOL TRAINING	30.98
Check Number 6724 Total QDOBA		<u>30.98</u>
QUICKCARE MEDICAL SERVICES	BUS PHYSICAL	375.00
Check Number 6781 Total QUICKCARE MEDICAL SERVICES		<u>375.00</u>
RABEN'S MARKET	SCIENCE CLASS SUPPLIES	2.78
RABEN'S MARKET	VO AG SUPPLIES	21.81
RABEN'S MARKET	GROCERIES FOR FCS CLASSES	784.34
RABEN'S MARKET	class supply for experiment	22.68
Check Number 6782 Total RABEN'S MARKET		<u>831.61</u>
RAISING CANES	SCIENCE OLYMPIAD - MEAL	249.11
RAISING CANES	ALL STATE BAND MEAL	32.86
RAISING CANES	MATHCOUNTS MEAL	21.98
Check Number 6724 Total RAISING CANES		<u>303.95</u>
REIF ENTERPRISE	TURN ON SPRINKLER - SUPT HOUSE	65.00
Check Number 6783 Total REIF ENTERPRISE		<u>65.00</u>
ROCKY MOUNTAIN AIR SOLUTIONS	AG ED SUPPLY	547.25
ROCKY MOUNTAIN AIR SOLUTIONS	AG ED GAS	47.62
Check Number 6784 Total ROCKY MOUNTAIN AIR SOLUTIONS		<u>594.87</u>
ROTH, MIKAELA	MARCH MILEAGE REIMBURSEMENT	91.66
ROTH, MIKAELA	APRIL MILEAGE	114.57
Check Number 6785 Total ROTH, MIKAELA		<u>206.23</u>
RUBY TUESDAY	ALL STATE BAND - MEAL	56.64
Check Number 6724 Total RUBY TUESDAY		<u>56.64</u>
RUNZA	POWERSCHOOL TRAINING	21.08
Check Number 6724 Total RUNZA		<u>21.08</u>
SAFEWAY	COMMUNITY MEETING SUPPLIES	20.97
Check Number 6724 Total SAFEWAY		<u>20.97</u>
SCHOOL SPECIALTY LLC	classroom supplies for 24-25	129.36
SCHOOL SPECIALTY LLC	Next School Year Supplies	538.28
Check Number 6786 Total SCHOOL SPECIALTY LLC		<u>667.64</u>
TEACHER DIRECT	magazine holders	65.76
Check Number 6787 Total TEACHER DIRECT		<u>65.76</u>

Vendor Name	Description	Amount
TREND ENTERPRISES, INC.	classroom school supplies	38.46
Check Number 6788 Total	TREND ENTERPRISES, INC.	38.46
U.S. POSTAL SERVICE	CERTIFIED POSTAGE PAID	9.17
Check Number 6724 Total	U.S. POSTAL SERVICE	9.17
VALOR GENERAL STORE	DEEP CYCLE MARINE BATTERY (2)	339.98
VALOR GENERAL STORE	SEED PACKETS	15.96
VALOR GENERAL STORE	ONE COAT POLY	41.99
VALOR GENERAL STORE	BAR & CHAIN OIL	5.89
Check Number 6789 Total	VALOR GENERAL STORE	403.82
WALL STREET JOURNAL	SUBSCRIPTION	41.72
WALL STREET JOURNAL	MONTHLY SUBSCRIPTION	41.72
Check Number 6724 Total	WALL STREET JOURNAL	83.44
WALMART	Lunch sides for SO during competition	25.32
Check Number 6724 Total	WALMART	25.32
WESTCO	FUEL	6,499.37
Check Number 6790 Total	WESTCO	6,499.37
WESTERN NE NEWSPAPERS	ELEM SEC/ NURSE EMPLOYMENT ADS	1,241.60
Check Number 6791 Total	WESTERN NE NEWSPAPERS	1,241.60
WEVIDEO	WeVideo Annual Subscription	723.00
Check Number 6724 Total	WEVIDEO	723.00
WILSON LANGUAGE TRAINING CORP.	phonics tiles	237.60
Check Number 6792 Total	WILSON LANGUAGE TRAINING CORP.	237.60
WNCC	ASBESTOS TYPE II CLASS	500.00
Check Number 6793 Total	WNCC	500.00
YESACCESSIBLE	VISION IMPAIRED SOFTWARE	150.00
Check Number 6724 Total	YESACCESSIBLE	150.00
Fund Number 01		80,818.56
Checking Account ID 1		80,818.56

# Hemingford Public Schools School Counseling Program

---



K-12 School Counselors  
Mrs. Samantha Gilkerson  
&  
Mrs. Bridget Johnston

# School Counseling Program

## Social Emotional Learning (SEL)

- Increases self-awareness
- Increases self-control
- Academic achievement
- Positive behaviors both in and out of classrooms.
  - Interpersonal skills that help in school, work & life success.
  - Responsible decision-making skills.



# School Counseling Program

## Social Emotional Learning (SEL)

---

### Statistics

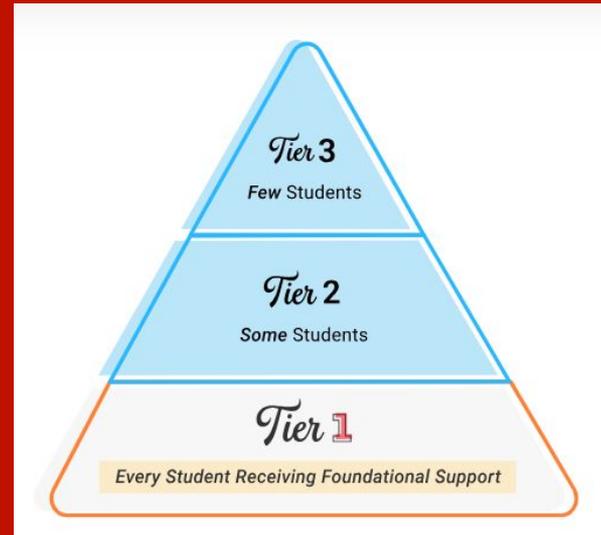
- 83% of students made academic gains when participating in an SEL program with an academic component.
- 29% students feel like their school provides a supportive & encouraging environment.
- 23% increase in social and emotional skills.
- 11% gained on standardized tests by participating in an SEL program.
- 11% average increase in GPA for participants in an SEL Program.
- 9% improvement in prosocial behavior.
- 9% improvement in attitudes about self, others, and school.
- 9% reduction in behavioral problems.
- 10% reduction in emotional distress.



# School Counseling Program

## Strategic Plan: Student & Staff Well-Being

- Guiding Principle #3 - Student and Staff Well-Being
  - Strategy 3.1
  - Strategy 3.2
  - Strategy 3.3



# School Counseling Program

---

## Curriculum Overview PK-5

- Grade-level-specific low-burden, high-impact lessons and activities.
- Built by educators, for educators
- Research-based
- Engaging videos, playground activities, family resources and so much more.
- Web-based, user-friendly, and flexible
- All student and family-facing materials available in English & Spanish.



# School Counseling Program

---

## Curriculum Overview 6-8

- Research-backed and vertically-aligned 6th through 8th grade.
- Entire curriculum accessible online.
- Evidence-based approach to implementation.
- Includes school-wide challenges that can positively impact a school's culture and climate.



# School Counseling Program

Character Strong Pricing

---

Hand out (pricing form) being  
issued to review.



# Hemingford Public Schools School Counseling Program

---

Questions & Comments??



**CharacterStrong**  
 1402 Lake Tapps PKWY SE STE F104  
 #128  
 Auburn, WA 98092  
 billing@characterstrong.com  
 characterstrong.com



# Estimate

**ADDRESS**

Samantha Gilkerson  
 Hemingford Public Schools  
 913 Niobrara  
 PO Box 217  
 Hemingford, NE 69348 US

**SHIP TO**

Samantha Gilkerson  
 Hemingford Public Schools  
 913 Niobrara  
 PO Box 217  
 Hemingford, NE 69348 US

**ESTIMATE #** 21424

**DATE** 04/17/2024

**EXPIRATION DATE** 10/17/2024

PRODUCT/SERVICE	QTY	RATE	AMOUNT
<b>Elementary Tier 1 PurposeFull People</b> PurposeFull People Pre-K through 5th Curriculum - A Social, Emotional, and Character Development Curriculum	1	2,999.00	2,999.00
<b>Elementary Discount</b> 10% Off	1	-299.90	-299.90
<b>MS Tier 1 Solutions SSEL</b> 35 SEL and Character development lessons per grade level, 6th through 8th.	1	3,999.00	3,999.00
<b>MS SEL Discount</b> 20% Off	1	-799.80	-799.80
<b>Sales Tax</b> Sales Tax calculated by AvaTax on Wed 17 Apr 14:54:44 UTC 2024	1	0.00	0.00

Annual renewal of \$1,999 for the PreK-8 Curriculum

**TOTAL**

**\$5,898.30**

Name: Samantha Gilkerson  
 Email: sgilkerson@gubn.org  
 Schools: 1  
 Renewal: Upon Purchase

Contracts, purchase orders, and payments can be mailed to:

CharacterStrong, LLC  
 1402 Lake Tapps PKWY SE  
 Ste F104 #128  
 Auburn, WA 98092

or emailed to:

billing@characterstrong.com

EIN: 81-4174372

UBI: 604-043-554

CharacterStrong's Cancellation Policies can be found at:  
<https://characterstrong.com/resources/cancellation-policies/>

Accepted By

Accepted Date

Contracts, purchase orders, and payments can be mailed to:

CharacterStrong, LLC  
1402 Lake Tapps PKWY SE  
Ste F104 #128  
Auburn, WA 98092

or emailed to:

[billing@characterstrong.com](mailto:billing@characterstrong.com)

EIN: 81-4174372

UBI: 604-043-554

CharacterStrong's Cancellation Policies can be found at:  
<https://characterstrong.com/resources/cancellation-policies/>

## ESU 13 SERVICES AGREEMENT 2024-2025

This Agreement is made **March 1, 2024** between Hemingford Public Schools, in the County of **Box Butte**, State of Nebraska, hereinafter referred to as the **District**, and Educational Service Unit No. 13, hereinafter referred to as **ESU 13**.

The **District** and **ESU 13** agree that payment and services delivered under the terms of this Agreement for Special Education Programs will be made in accordance with **NDE Title 92, NAC, Chapter 51 and 52**.

It is agreed that the **District** will pay to **ESU 13** a sum for services for such resident student(s), provided the service has been approved by NDE and meets statutory requirements. The following conditions shall apply:

1. The **District** will be charged for services rendered to students who are evaluated and/or placed in programs operated by **ESU 13**.
2. The **District** will be charged for services at rates not to exceed NDE approved rates for **ESU 13**.
3. The **District** agrees to pay **ESU 13** within thirty (30) days of receipt of each invoice. The **District** also agrees that **ESU 13** may assess an interest charge on amounts due in excess of thirty (30) days.
4. The **District** will be billed monthly for charges taken from the **COST SCHEDULE**. Charges will be divided into **ten (10)** equal installments with a final bill to be submitted no later than June. Charges will be computed as explained on the **COST SCHEDULE**.
5. All rates on the **COST SCHEDULE** include the following program costs: salaries, benefits, purchased services, staff mileage, supplies, materials, instructional equipment, and the following instructional responsibilities: IEP/IFSP/MDT/SAT meetings, screenings, testing, scoring, evaluations, planning, paperwork, consulting, and collaboration with teachers.
6. The number of students in programs may vary, however, this Agreement must remain in force in order to fulfill contractual obligations between **ESU 13** and certificated and/or non-certificated staff. If **significant changes** in services occur, **ESU 13** will amend the **District's** contract. Additionally, if an intermittent closing occurs, and **ESU 13** is not able to provide the services pursuant to this Agreement, **District** will remain obligated under this Agreement to pay **ESU 13**.
7. Programs must be self supporting and receipts cannot exceed the expenditures for any one program. If an overage occurs and it is not needed to support a deficit from prior years, a refund will be issued to the **District**.
8. In the event that **ESU 13** is unable to secure adequately qualified personnel or there are insufficient numbers of Districts requesting services as required by Rule 51 and 52, **ESU 13** is released from the obligations of this Agreement.

**Please return this Agreement to ESU 13 no later than April 1, 2024.**

ESU 13 Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_, 2024

District Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_, 2024

**EDUCATIONAL SERVICE UNIT 13 - COST SCHEDULE 2024-2025**

**Agency Code 950013**

**School District: Hemingford #10**

ESU 13 SPED PROGRAMS	Description of cost	Cost	NDE Service Code	Factor	Billing Month-Sept.	Billing Month-Oct.	Billing Month-Nov.	Billing Month-Dec.	Billing Month-Jan.	Billing Month-Feb.	Billing Month-March	Billing Month-April	Billing Month-May	Billing Month-June	TOTAL
Speech/Language	District's FTE	\$112,387.00	4001		\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00
<b>Psychological Assessment</b>	per hour	\$99.00	1002	183	\$1,811.70	\$1,811.70	\$1,811.70	\$1,811.70	\$1,811.70	\$1,811.70	\$1,811.70	\$1,811.70	\$1,811.70	\$1,811.70	\$18,117.00
SPED Counseling	per hour	\$99.00	1002		\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00
Pupil Transportation - no lift	# of miles RT X school days	\$1.05	6001		\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00
Pupil Transportation with lift	# of miles RT X school days	\$2.10	6001		\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00
<b>Special Education Inservice</b>	per teacher	\$21.00	7001	39	\$81.90	\$81.90	\$81.90	\$81.90	\$81.90	\$81.90	\$81.90	\$81.90	\$81.90	\$81.90	\$819.00
<b>Supervision of ESU Programs</b>	see note (2)	8%	0001		\$245.74	\$245.74	\$245.74	\$245.74	\$245.74	\$245.74	\$245.74	\$245.74	\$245.74	\$245.74	\$1,514.88
Meridian Program A	District's FTE	\$22,500.00	4081		\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00
Meridian Program B	District's FTE	\$53,000.00	4081		\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00
LifeLink-Nebraska Program	District's FTE	\$22,500.00	4012		\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00
Consultation/Coordination of District-owned Special Education Programs	see note (3)	\$13,000.00	0001		\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$0.00
<b>ESU 13 NON-SPED PROGRAMS</b>															
<b>Non-Sped Counseling</b>	per hour	\$99.00	ESSA 2120	144	\$1,425.60	\$1,425.60	\$1,425.60	\$1,425.60	\$1,425.60	\$1,425.60	\$1,425.60	\$1,425.60	\$1,425.60	\$1,425.60	\$14,256.00
Intern	per hour														
<b>TOTAL ALL PROGRAMS</b>					<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$3,564.94</b>	<b>\$34,706.88</b>

Note (1) Services for PT - \$90/hr, OT - \$92/hr, Vision Consultant - \$85/hr, Psychological Services for general education students - \$99/hr, SRS, Early Childhood Special Education Teacher - \$74/hr, and Meridian and LifeLink Speech/Language services - \$81/hr will be billed additionally as they occur.

Note (2) Supervision of ESU Programs: Rule 51,011.02C1 – "Supervision of special education programs is allowable as a level I expenditure for up to an amount not exceed 8% of the school district's or approved cooperative's allowable school age program costs, minus the cost of program supervision

Note (3): Consultation/Coordination of District-owned Special Education Programs (district request only): Rule 51.010.01D14: "Administrative support by staff members holding an Administrative or Supervisory Certificate and at least one special education endorsement or any Special Education Administrative or Supervisory Certificate."

Board Copy  
Received 5-1-24



ATION

MARKETING

MEETING

MAKE CHANGES

CUSTOMER  
FEEDBACK

SELL THE  
PRODUCT

IS IT  
SELLING?

YEAR

GROWTH



Eakes  
office solutions

# Photocopy Machine Service RFP

---

## Prepared For:



## Proposal Date:

April 29, 2024

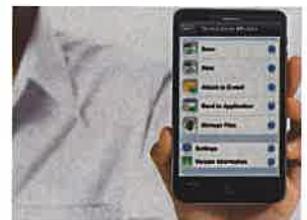
Prepared By: Sean Jenkins



The contents of this proposal are confidential trade secret information and intended for the use of Only Hemingford Public Schools. The contents herein may not be reproduced without the specific written permission of Eakes Office Solutions. This is a proposal only and informative in nature. Actual contract terms and conditions, as well as final pricing, may change, and will be submitted upon your request. Pricing in this proposal expires 90 days after 4/29/2024

## ABOUT EAKES OFFICE SOLUTIONS

Eakes Office Solutions has been an industry leader in the commercial office products and services business for over 79 years and is one of the largest independent dealers in the United States. The company specializes in copiers, printers, office supplies, janitorial products, office furniture and design, and represents brand names such as Sharp, Ricoh, HP, Steelcase, Hon, and many other major lines. Today, Eakes employs over 300 people across multiple locations.



## MANAGED PRINT SOLUTIONS

Managed Print Solutions redefines document management, transcending mere copying to revolutionize how information flows within your organization. Explore cost-efficient bundling strategies that elevate profits, enhance efficiency, and integrate innovative technology seamlessly. Our suite of multi-function devices acts as a central hub, streamlining workflows and maximizing productivity, ensuring that your organization operates at the forefront of technological innovation.

## CUSTOMER C.A.R.E.

### Consult

Understanding your current printing practices gives us a launching point to explore solutions. We uncover priorities that might not have been apparent initially.

### Analyze

We assemble a specialized team proficient in printing technology and software. Aligning with your organization's goals.

### Recommend

Let us reconnect for further discussion. We will review the customized print management solution with you and fine-tune it to ensure it aligns with your needs.

### Execute

Now, it is time to put plans into action. Our team at Eakes – comprised of specialists, technology consultants, and service engineers will execute the implementation of your print management solution within your organization.



INDUSTRY LEADER



**Hyakuman Kai Award**  
Eakes is one of 23 Sharp "Hyakuman Kai Elite Dealers" which represent the largest dealers in the nation.



**Elite Dealer Award**  
Eakes has been named one of the country's Elite Dealers by Enx Magazine, receiving the award multiple times.



**Ricoh Circle of Excellence**  
Ricoh Dealer Services Circle of Excellence program was designed to recognize only the top group of dealerships that provide outstanding support.

MANUFACTURER PARTNERS

Sharp's legacy of innovation spans from the iconic Ever-Sharp pencil to pioneering Liquid Crystal Displays and cutting-edge office technologies. Their award-winning MFPs redefine ease of setup and operation, leveraging precision engineering for heightened workflow efficiency and exceptional image quality.



With over 80 years of global technology leadership, Ricoh excels in capturing, managing, and transforming information. Their diverse product portfolio, spanning desktop to production, fosters innovation and growth. Ricoh goes beyond redefining workplaces, offering solutions that drive productivity and efficiency, making information work to your advantage.



HP, a technology frontrunner, acknowledges Eakes' outstanding customer service by awarding them the prestigious Gold Managed Print Advanced Specialist Partner status. As the sole HP independent dealer in Nebraska with this recognition, Eakes demonstrates exceptional expertise across HP Managed Print solutions, meeting rigorous standards.



**ACCESSIBLE LOCATIONS**



With locations across Nebraska that provide service to Nebraska, Iowa, Kansas, Colorado, Wyoming and South Dakota, Eakes continues the tradition of personal customer service that our customers value the most.

**EAKES MANAGEMENT**

**Company Management**

Mark Miller	President and CEO
Paul McKinney	CFO/COO
David Leahy	Managed Print Division Manager
Cameron Peister	Director of Sales
Vicki Tautenhan	Director of Sales Strategy
Scott Lilleskov	Major Accounts Manager

**Location Management**

Justin Dembowski	Managing Partner
Kevin Hafer	Managing Partner
Dylan Popple	Managing Partner
Jesse Roberts	Managing Partner
Matthew Scheef	Managing Partner
Holly Hopkins	Managing Partner
Ryan Ruhl	Sales Manager
Michael Anderson	Sales Manager

**Service Management**

Mike Nierman	Corporate Service Manager
Adam Kieckhafer	Technical Service Manager - West
Rick Hays	Technical Service Manager - East



ACCOUNT MANAGEMENT

Eakes Managed Print Specialist is responsible for managing the local relationship with the client and ensuring that you receive the highest level of service and support.



Managed Print Specialist  
Sean Jenkins  
East 14<sup>th</sup> St  
Scottsbluff, NE 69361  
sjenkins@eakes.com  
308.530.5240

Market  
Scottsbluff and  
surrounding area



Thank you for considering Eakes Office Solutions for your Managed Print Solution. We are thrilled at the chance to enhance your technology while optimizing efficiency and savings for your organization.

For over 79 years, Eakes has been a trusted partner to companies like yours. Our commitment is to provide top-notch technology, seamless toner replenishment, and reliable service, backed by the full resources of Eakes Office Solutions.

We are excited about the potential to be your trusted partner. Thank you for this opportunity.



Michael Anderson-Sales Manager

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Michael Anderson", written over a horizontal line. The signature is stylized and includes a long, sweeping underline that extends to the right.



## PROPOSED SOLUTION (OPTION 1 NEW)

<u>Office</u>	<u>Model</u>	<u>Speed</u>
Kristy's Office Includes: 2 Trays with 2,100 Tandem Large Capacity Tray, Inner Finisher/Stapler, 3 Hole Punch	(1) Sharp BP-70C45	45 ppm Color MFP
HS Office Includes: 2 Trays with 2,100 Tandem Large Capacity Tray, External Stapler/Finisher, 3 Hole Punch	(1) Sharp BP-70M45	45 ppm B/W MFP
Elementary Upstairs Includes: 2 Trays with 2,100 Tandem Large Capacity Tray, External Finisher/Stapler, 3 Hole Punch	(1) Sharp BP-70M45	45 ppm B/W MFP
Elementary Office Includes: 2 Trays with 2,100 Tandem Large Capacity Tray, Saddle Stapler/Finisher, 3 Hole Punch	(1) Sharp BP-70C45	45 ppm Color MFP
	(4) Sharp MX-C304WH	30ppm Desktop Color MFP

### All Large Sharp Configurations Include:

300 Duplexing single pass feeder, 2x550 Sheet Paper Trays adjustable up to 11 x 17, 2,100 large tandem paper drawer up to 8.5 x 11, Mac, Postscript and PCL Drivers, Easy to Use (award winning) touchscreen, **Leading multi-layered security with Data Overwrite and Hard Drive Encryption, Energy Star 3.0 Certified, Built in Retractable Keyboard, FREE popular cloud services scanning to Google Drive, Dropbox, One Drive and others.**

## PROPOSED SOLUTION (OPTION 2 ECO-RECONDITIONED)

<u>Office</u>	<u>Model</u>	<u>Speed</u>
Kristy's Office Includes: 2 Trays with 2,100 Tandem Large Capacity Tray, Inner Finisher/Stapler, 3 Hole Punch	(1) Sharp MX-5071	50 ppm Color MFP
HS Office Includes: 2 Trays with 2,100 Tandem Large Capacity Tray, External Stapler/Finisher, 3 Hole Punch	(1) Sharp MX-M5071	50 ppm B/W MFP
Elementary Upstairs Includes: 2 Trays with 2,100 Tandem Large Capacity Tray, External Finisher/Stapler, 3 Hole Punch	(1) Sharp MX-M5071	50 ppm B/W MFP
Elementary Office Includes: 2 Trays with 2,100 Tandem Large Capacity Tray, Saddle Stapler/Finisher, 3 Hole Punch	(1) Sharp MX-5071	50 ppm Color MFP
	(4) Sharp MX-C304WH	30ppm Desktop Color MFP



## PROPOSED PRICING

### **OPTION 1 NEW**

48 MONTH LEASE

\$899.97 per mo.

60 MONTH LEASE

\$747.73 per mo.

Local bank lease through FIVE POINTS BANK includes \$1 buyout

Includes Papercut for 4 devices

Includes ship back of current copiers to owner

#### **Service and Supply Agreement Includes:**

- B/W pages billed at \$0.0045 per page
- Color pages billed at \$0.030 per page
- Includes All parts, labor, toner, and service calls (excludes paper and staples)
- Delivery, digital installation, training, and support
- 4-hour on-site response time
- Performance Guarantee through the lease
- Rates are locked in the Term of Agreement – NO increases.

### **OPTION 2 eco-Reconditioned**

48 MONTH LEASE

\$438.10 per mo.

60 MONTH LEASE

\$365.83 per mo.

Local bank lease through FIVE POINTS BANK includes \$1 buyout

Includes Papercut for 4 devices

Includes ship back of current copiers to owner

#### **Service and Supply Agreement Includes:**

- B/W pages billed at \$0.0045 per page
- Color pages billed at \$0.0450 per page
- Includes All parts, labor, toner, and service calls (excludes paper and staples)
- Delivery, digital installation, training, and support
- 4-hour on-site response time
- Performance Guarantee through the lease
- Rates are locked in the Term of Agreement – NO increases.

#### **Papercut for both options included in Lease (includes):**

- Papercut for 4 devices
- Support for 4 devices for 4 years or 5 years respectively
- Card Readers for 4 devices
- Installation and training

***Note: Lease options include returning & shipping back copiers to leasing company up to \$1500***

***No Ship Back costs with Eakes Office Solutions***



## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

### **98% Up-Time**

Our commitment to quality and service results in an average up-time of 98% for the equipment we provide. We guarantee a quarterly average up-time of 98%, and we will exchange any machine that fails to achieve this.

### **Manufacturer's Specifications**

We provide precise records that track a complete customer history of equipment performance, print usage and maintenance requirements to ensure peak operation of your system. Should the unit be unrepairable onsite, we will provide a temporary replacement at no charge until repairs are completed. *Includes No Cost Loaner if copier(s) are down for more than 48 hours.*

### **4-Hour Response Time**

Our dealership provides rapid call back with a 4-hour or less service response time.

### **Manufacturer-Trained Personnel**

All improvements made available by the manufacturer will be installed at no additional charge. Equipment operators will be provided with free, unlimited training for the lifetime of the digital system while maintained under one of our Agreements.

- Primary Service Technician dedicated to Hemingford Public Schools
- Eakes includes 2 technicians in the geographic area
- Eakes has 45 Service Technicians across the State (+5 Technology Sales Consultants)
- Remote Service Desk Support Available including Network Assistance
- Eakes Service Technician Bonus Program to meet our Customer Goals and Objectives. They are rated on:
  - Response Time
  - First Call Effectiveness
  - Time Between Failures

### **"Performance Guarantee"**

Eakes Office Solutions guarantees that your new Copier will perform to your expectations and satisfaction during the entire term of the Print Management Program.

Should your Copier fail to perform to "Your Expectations", at any time during the entire term of the Print Management Program, we will replace it with a similar machine! Free of Charge!

### **On-Site Training**

Lifetime free onsite training for district staff.

### **Supplies and Toner**

Back up supplies provided on site and Auto Toner Replenishment set up for Customer Benefit



## EAKES SERVICE

### Expertise

When it comes to industry experience, we excel! Our team comprises 43 Service Engineers strategically situated across our market, boasting an average tenure of 16 years in the field – that's a collective expertise of over 665 years.

### Advanced Service Dispatch

Upon reaching out to us, a Service Engineer is promptly notified and mobilized within minutes.

### Remote Service

Leveraging cutting-edge technology, many service calls are swiftly resolved as our Service Engineers remotely access devices. That's efficiency at its finest.

### Online Service Portal

Eakes' user-friendly online service portal, e-info, streamlines your experience. From ordering toner to service requests and meter submissions, it's all seamlessly integrated into one intuitive interface.

### Team Leadership

Guiding our Service team is a triumvirate boasting nearly 85 years of collective technical experience at Eakes.



## TECHNOLOGY SERVICES CONSULTANTS

Our Technology Services Consultants offer tailored training and support. From fundamental printing needs to intricate networked systems and software solutions, our user-specific training ensures proficiency.

Your key contact collaborates with Eakes Technology Services Consultants to devise a customized technology training plan. Training sessions occur directly in front of the machines, fostering hands-on interaction for competence assurance.

Our specialized trainers cover a spectrum of expertise, including installation, integration, printing, account control software, document management, and fax servers.



## SOFTWARE SERVICES

Modern multifunction printing devices now serve as technology hubs, equipped with touch screens and embedded software capabilities. Leveraging this advancement, we integrate popular print and document management software, centralizing technology for your organization.

Our process:

**Discovery:** Understanding your document processes helps tailor an economical and efficient software solution.

**Demonstration:** We showcase how the software aligns with your workflows and environment.

**Installation:** Our Technology Consultants fine-tune the installation, creating a detailed implementation plan.

**Training:** We craft a comprehensive technology training plan, offering a 'train-the-trainer,' group, or multiple sessions.

From discovery to installation and training, our services ensure a customized package that meets your organization's needs.

## SOFTWARE PARTNERS



PaperCut MF is a low-cost software solution that is primarily used to manage print and copy access, implement quotas, charge per page and account by user, department or client via silent tracking or policy.



GoldFax, built on Microsoft .NET™ technology, integrates Sharp OSA-enabled MFPs into enterprise-class Fax Server solutions at a small business price. Increase productivity: automated fax routing and PC faxing. Integrates with your software applications, e-mail and phone system.



docMgt was designed to provide you with an easy way to address your document management challenges. It's intuitive, affordable and cost effective. With docMgt, you can manage content from any source whether its scanning paper documents, importing emails, generating e-forms or importing document created in other applications or systems.



Zultys delivers an easy-to-use, secure, and reliable platform designed to streamline all forms of communications and increase productivity for any size business. With Zultys, users can control all forms of communications in a single user interface. This architecture allows users to seamlessly handle all types of customer communications in one easy-to-use platform.



# PRODUCT Performance Guarantee



## *Unconditional Guarantee of Customer Satisfaction Eakes Print Management Program*

*Eakes Office Solutions guarantees that your new Copier will perform to your expectations and satisfaction during the entire term of the Print Management Program.*

*Should your Copier fail to perform to "Your Expectations", at any time during the entire term of the Print Management Program, we will replace it with a similar machine! Free of Charge!*

\_\_\_\_\_  
CUSTOMER

*Michael Anderson*  
\_\_\_\_\_  
STORE MANAGER

\_\_\_\_\_  
EQUIPMENT MAKE AND MODEL

*5-1-2024*  
\_\_\_\_\_  
DATE



Scott Lilleskov | Managing Partner  
402-898-8017 | [slilleskov@eakes.com](mailto:slilleskov@eakes.com)

# MANAGED PRINTREFERENCES

## Bridgeport Public Schools

George Schlothauer  
(308) 262-1470  
[gschlothauer@bpsbulldogs.com](mailto:gschlothauer@bpsbulldogs.com)



## Kimball Health Services

Charles Walker  
(308) 235-1951  
[cwalker@kimballhealth.org](mailto:cwalker@kimballhealth.org)



## Sidney Public Schools

Matt McKay  
(308) 254-5855  
[Matt.mckay@raidermail.org](mailto:Matt.mckay@raidermail.org)



## Gering Public Schools

Stacy Rodriguez  
(308) 436-3125  
[srodriguez@geringschools.net](mailto:srodriguez@geringschools.net)



## Garden Co. Public Schools

Jayson Peetzke  
(308) 772-3242  
[jpeetzke@gceagles.org](mailto:jpeetzke@gceagles.org)



Managed Print References



**Eakes**  
office solutions

# SHARP®

## ADVANCED SERIES COLOR DOCUMENT SYSTEMS

simply smarter



BP-70C31  
BP-70C36  
BP-70C45

## The New Color Advanced Series from Sharp.

Taking organizations to the future of business communication by helping them work simply smarter.

Designed to fit today's diverse workstyles, the new Advanced Series color document systems enable workers to collaborate and share information seamlessly and securely throughout their office environment. Enhanced cloud services such as Microsoft Teams makes it easy to streamline communication and boost productivity with hybrid workers.



### Easy-to-use Touchscreen

The easy-to-use Sharp touchscreen display is built on an award-winning design and delivers an accurate, responsive user experience, imperative for today's sophisticated workflows.

### Technology Focused on Efficiency

The Advanced Series leverages the latest technology to help users get their work done with ease and efficiency. Innovative features like multi-feed scan detection and enhanced auto skew correction ensure jobs come out right the first time, every time.

### Versatile Application Integration

Maximize productivity and collaboration with easy access to expanded cloud services, quickly connect with mobile devices to print and scan files, even utilize touchless operation with the Sharp Synappx Go app.

### Leading Security

In today's hybrid working environments it's vital to protect endpoint devices from security threats, that is why the Advanced Series uses the latest security technology to help ensure your data remains safe.

### Flexible Sleek Design

Elegant cabinet design with easy-roll casters, soft-close paper drawers and contemporary color scheme make the Advanced Series a perfect fit for any office environment.



## Smart features that enhance productivity and efficiency.

Streamlined workflows that are safe, secure and fit today's diverse work styles.

Work more efficiently

Collaborate better with colleagues

Secure your document workflows



10.1" (diagonally measured) customizable touchscreen display.



BP-70C45 shown with Inner Folding Right Side Exit Tray and 2-drawer Paper Deck.



Built-in retractable keyboard for convenient data entry.

- **300-sheet duplexing single-pass feeder** offers double feed detection and scans up to 280 images per minute.
- **Flexible paper handling supports media up to 300 gsm**, allowing users to print on a wide variety of paper stock or media.
- **New Inner Folding Unit option** offers a **variety of fold patterns**, including tri-fold, z-fold and others.
- **Smart controller design** ensures MFP firmware is up to date by periodically checking for updates.
- **Built-in walk-up motion sensor** automatically detects approaching users immediately wakes the machine, making it ready for use within seconds.
- **ENERGY STAR® 3.0 certified** and offers among the lowest standby power consumption in the category.
- **Built-in retractable keyboard** simplifies email address and subject line entries
- **Enhanced touchscreen** delivers an accurate, responsive user experience and provides easy access to features.
- Collaborate with hybrid workers using **popular cloud services**, such as Microsoft Teams, Google Drive™, Dropbox and others.
- **Strong, multi-layered security** such as system integrity check at startup, firmware attack prevention and optional Bitdefender antivirus to help protect your data.
- Supports native **Universal Print from Microsoft**, enabling businesses to easily adapt to this popular cloud service.
- Wireless LAN supports 5 GHz Wi-Fi for stable, **high-speed network communication**
- **Sharp OSA® Technology** provides a secure and intuitive user experience for integrated workflows.

## Designed for today's individual workstyles.

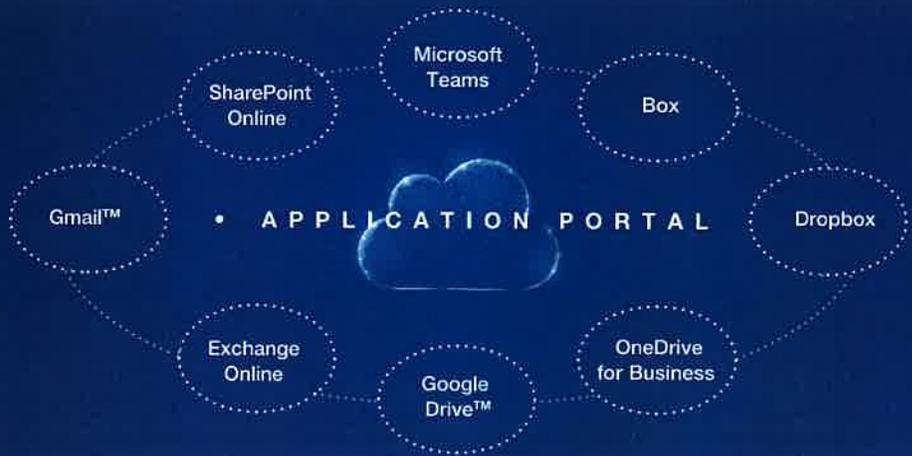
From media handling to workflow and collaboration, the new Advanced Series delivers the features businesses need to get the job done.

Sharp makes it easy for businesses to execute jobs quickly, leaving more time for the actual business at hand. Scan large documents at up to 280 ipm using the 300-sheet duplexing single pass feeder that offers optional double feed detection. Image processing technology and Artificial Intelligence (AI) can automatically adjust resolution, compression as well as detect original size and adjust for skewed documents when scanning. The award-winning, tablet style touchscreen delivers an accurate, responsive experience, while menu-driven Easy Modes offer fast, simple operation enabling users to get their copying and scanning tasks done in less time.



## Print and Share Documents Easily

Seamlessly collaborate with colleagues even when they are working remotely. With Cloud Connect, businesses gain access to popular cloud services including Microsoft Teams, Google Drive, and others. The Sharp Application Portal, makes it easy for administrators to add new apps and update existing apps right from the MFP touchscreen.



### Integrate with Email Applications

In addition to native capability, the **Email Connect** feature enables seamless scan-to-email integration with Microsoft Exchange/365 and Gmail™ user accounts, making it easy to identify the sender of scanned files.

### Intelligent Image Processing

Scan documents to popular file formats including Microsoft Word, PowerPoint and Excel, as well as Searchable PDF, Encrypted PDF and others. Direct Print the same file types from thumb drives, cloud applications and mobile devices.\* **Adobe Embedded Print Engine** direct prints PDF files with greater speed and rendering accuracy.

### Flexible Printing Solutions

PCL 6 and Adobe PostScript 3 printing helps users speed through their work. The 256 GB solid state drive processes jobs quickly. **Serverless Print Release** enables users to print a job and release it from up to eight supported models. Native Universal Print from Microsoft eliminates the need for on-premises infrastructure, and enables IT to manage printers directly through a centralized portal.



\*This function is enabled via Qualcomm DirectOffice technology.

# Smart · Connected · Secure

## Integrating technology and functionality.

The New Color Advanced Series document systems provide unsurpassed performance that simply adapts to your business needs.

### Duplexing Single Pass Feeder (DSPF)

300-sheet document feeder scans both sides of a document in a single pass and scans up to 280 images per minute.

### Smart Scan

Image processing technology and AI can automatically adjust resolution, compression, as well as detect original size and adjust for skew.

### Smart Touchscreen

Enhanced touchscreen is easy to use and delivers the responsiveness and accuracy users expect.

### Walk-up Motion Sensor

Detects walk-up users and wakes the machine from sleep mode, making it ready for use within seconds.

### Built-in Retractable Keyboard

Full-size QWERTY keyboard enables easy data entry.

### Touchless Operation

Scan, Copy and Print Release with award-winning Synappx Go app.

### Exceptional Image Quality

1,200 x 1,200 dpi resolution delivers razor-sharp text and graphics.

### Advanced Multi-layer Security

Leading security features plus optional Bitdefender antivirus provide enhanced protection against network intrusions.

### Microsoft Friendly

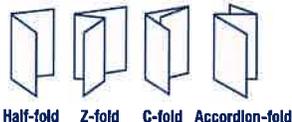
Native integration with Universal Print and Microsoft Teams simplifies workflow and enhances collaboration.

### Easy Access to Cloud Services

Print and scan documents to popular cloud applications.

### Advanced Finishing

Sharp gives you a variety of high-performance finishers to choose from to help complete the job on time. New inner folding unit option offers four popular folding patterns.



### Sharp Color Consistency System

Advanced auto-calibration helps ensure color output is always at peak performance.



### Flexible Paper Handling

Feed up to 300 gsm media through the paper drawers and supports up to 12" x 18" output size.

### Large Capacity Cassette

Available large capacity cassette offers an additional 3,000-sheet capacity for a maximum on-line paper capacity of 6,300 sheets.



## Collaborate on-the-go with quick access to mobile devices.

The Advanced Series makes it easy to share data with tablets and smartphones even in busy office environments.



### Print with Popular Mobile Technologies

The Advanced Series supports printing using popular mobile technologies such as Apple AirPrint, and Android printing with the Sharp Print Service plug-in.

### Advanced Wireless Networking

Print directly to the MFP from mobile devices without interfering with the corporate network! 5 GHz technology and WPA3™ Encryption deliver fast, reliable data that is well protected from malicious intruders.

### Touchless Operation with Synappx Go

With the Synappx Go app, it's easy to email or copy documents remotely. Simply tap the touchscreen with your smartphone. Get extended remote features such as print release, scan/print from cloud services, and display collaboration by upgrading to a subscription version.

### Scan and Print with Sharpdesk Mobile

With Sharpdesk Mobile, a free downloadable app for most mobile devices, users can quickly scan and print files from tablets and smartphones.<sup>1</sup>



## Centralized device management helps ensure optimal uptime.

Seamlessly connect technology and drive collaboration with easy access solutions.

### Seamless Device Management

On premises, Sharp Remote Device Manager (SRDM) simplifies device monitoring and management. Event-driven alerts help maximize uptime. SRDM also offers centrally managed security settings, pre-configured driver distribution, energy save settings and more. SRDM is available as a free download.<sup>1</sup>

### Unified Cloud-based Monitoring and Management

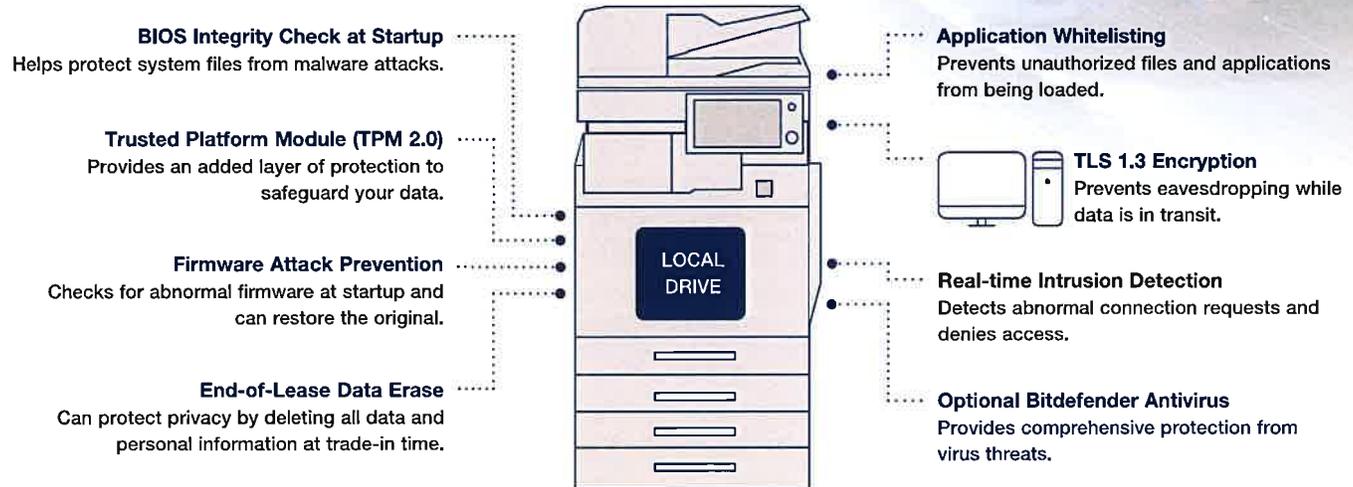
Synappx Manage cloud service enables IT administrators and service providers to remotely manage Sharp MFPs and displays from a single portal.<sup>2</sup> Proactive monitoring and remediation helps minimize administrator burden, as well as provide insight for optimized investments.

<sup>1</sup> Go to [www.sharppusa.com](http://www.sharppusa.com) for a list of supported equipment and operating systems.

<sup>2</sup> Synappx Manage available fall 2023.

## Multi-layer security features to help businesses stay a step ahead of hackers.

The new Advanced Series utilizes leading security technology to help organizations protect their data and meet regulatory requirements.



- **Active Directory (AD) Integration** Enables the MFP to join the network domain as a computer, making it a trusted device.
- **Supports AD Group Policy** Allows administrators to centrally manage select security settings and enforce their own policy.
- **256-bit AES Encryption** Ensures data that resides on the local drive is protected.
- **Protects Access to the Device** IP/MAC address filtering, 802.1x authentication and port control protect access to the device.
- **Protects Data in Transit** IPsec and SMB 3.1.1 protocols, as well as TLS 1.3 use data encryption to protect data.
- **WPA3™ Wi-Fi Encryption** Supports the latest data encryption standard for wireless networking security.
- **Authority Groups** Enables administrators to define various groups for different users, which can limit or restrict access to specific features.
- **Optional Data Security Kit** Offers expanded security functions and restricted access features for highly sensitive environments.



## Environmental Commitment

Sharp is committed to environmental sustainability and corporate responsibility.

### A Responsible Approach to Design

Sharp MFPs adhere to the Sharp Corporation Green Products Guidelines, which requires designing products that consume less power, use recycled materials and reduce materials used in packaging.

### Toner Recycling Program

Sharp offers zero-waste-to-landfill recycling for Sharp consumables at no cost to our customers and encourages them to recycle their Sharp toner cartridges by providing them with a pre-paid recycling kit for return to our facility.

### Environmental Commitment

The Sharp Advanced Series models are ENERGY STAR® 3.0 qualified and RoHS compliant. These products also have one of the lowest TEC values in their category as well as one of the lowest stand-by power consumption ratings. Sharp MFPs are EPEAT® registered.

For more information about Sharp environmental leadership including information about energy efficient products, electronics, or toner cartridge recycling, please visit [www.sharppusa.com/environment](http://www.sharppusa.com/environment).

## The New Color Advanced Series. Simply Smarter.

Designed to fit today's hybrid workstyles, offering intelligent features and connectivity that enable office workers to collaborate with colleagues seamlessly and securely even when they are working remotely. To learn more, visit [www.sharppusa.com](http://www.sharppusa.com).



# SHARP®

SHARP ELECTRONICS CORPORATION  
100 Paragon Drive, Montvale, NJ 07645  
1-800-BE-SHARP • [www.sharppusa.com](http://www.sharppusa.com)

Design and specifications subject to change without notice.



SYNAPPX



Qualcomm® DirectOffice™



©2023 Sharp Electronics Corporation. All rights reserved. Sharp, Sharp OSA, Sharpdesk, My Sharp, and all related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation and/or its affiliated companies. Microsoft, Active Directory, Excel, Microsoft 365, Microsoft Teams, OneDrive, PowerPoint, SharePoint, Windows, and Windows Server are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies. Android, Gmail, and Google Drive are trademarks or registered trademarks of Google LLC. Adobe, the Adobe logo and PostScript are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe in the US and/or other countries. Qualcomm DirectOffice is a product of Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. and/or its subsidiaries. Qualcomm is a trademark of Qualcomm Incorporated, registered in the United States and other countries. DirectOffice is a trademark of CSR Imaging US, LP, registered in the United States and other countries. AirPrint is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. Bitdefender is a trademark or registered trademark of Bitdefender SRL. Wi-Fi and WPA3 are trademarks or registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered trademarks owned by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

# SHARP®

## ADVANCED SERIES MONOCHROME DOCUMENT SYSTEMS

simply smarter



BP-70M31

BP-70M36

BP-70M45

## The New Monochrome Advanced Series from Sharp.

Taking organizations to the future of business communication by helping them work simply smarter.

Designed to fit today's diverse workstyles, the new Advanced Series monochrome document systems enable workers to collaborate and share information seamlessly and securely throughout their office environment. Enhanced cloud services such as Microsoft Teams makes it easy to streamline communication and boost productivity with hybrid workers.



### Easy-to-use Touchscreen

The easy-to-use Sharp touchscreen display is built on an award-winning design and delivers an accurate, responsive user experience, imperative for today's sophisticated workflows.

### Technology Focused on Efficiency

The Advanced Series leverages the latest technology to help users get their work done with ease and efficiency. Innovative features like multi-feed scan detection and enhanced auto skew correction ensure jobs come out right the first time, every time.

### Versatile Application Integration

Maximize productivity and collaboration with easy access to expanded cloud services, quickly connect with mobile devices to print and scan files, even utilize touchless operation with the Sharp Synappx Go app.

### Leading Security

In today's hybrid working environments its vital to protect endpoint devices from security threats, that is why the Advanced Series uses the latest security technology to help ensure your data remains safe.

### Flexible Sleek Design

Elegant cabinet design with easy-roll casters, soft-close paper drawers and contemporary color scheme make the Advanced Series a perfect fit for any office environment.



## Smart features that enhance productivity and efficiency.

Streamlined workflows that are safe, secure and fit today's diverse work styles.

Work more efficiently

Collaborate better  
with colleagues

Secure your document  
workflows



10.1" (diagonally measured) customizable touchscreen display.



BP-70M45 shown with Inner Folding Unit, Right Side Exit Tray and 2-drawer Paper Deck.



Built-in retractable keyboard for convenient data entry.

- **300-sheet duplexing single-pass feeder** offers double feed detection and scans up to 280 images per minute.
- Flexible paper handling supports **media up to 300 gsm**, allowing users to print on a wide variety of paper stock or media.
- New Inner Folding Unit option offers a **variety of fold patterns**, including tri-fold, z-fold and others.
- **Smart controller design** ensures MFP firmware is up to date by periodically checking for updates.
- Built-in **walk-up motion sensor** automatically detects approaching users immediately wakes the machine, making it ready for use within seconds.
- **ENERGY STAR® 3.0 certified** and offers among the lowest standby power consumption in the category.
- Built-in **retractable keyboard** simplifies email address and subject line entries.
- **Enhanced touchscreen** delivers an accurate, responsive user experience and provides easy access to features.
- Collaborate with hybrid workers using **popular cloud services**, such as Microsoft Teams, Google Drive™, Dropbox and others.
- Strong, **multi-layered security** such as system integrity check at startup, firmware attack prevention and optional Bitdefender antivirus to help protect your data.
- Supports native **Universal Print from Microsoft**, enabling businesses to easily adapt to this popular cloud service.
- Wireless LAN supports 5 GHz Wi-Fi for stable, **high-speed network communication**.
- **Sharp OSA® Technology** provides a secure and intuitive user experience for integrated workflows.

## Designed for today's individual workstyles.

From media handling to workflow and collaboration, the new Advanced Series delivers the features businesses need to get the job done.

Sharp makes it easy for businesses to execute jobs quickly, leaving more time for the actual business at hand. Scan large documents at up to 280 ipm using the 300-sheet duplexing single pass feeder that offers optional double feed detection. Image processing technology and Artificial Intelligence (AI) can automatically adjust resolution, compression as well as detect original size and adjust for skewed documents when scanning. The award-winning, tablet style touchscreen delivers an accurate, responsive experience, while menu-driven Easy Modes offer fast, simple operation enabling users to get their copying and scanning tasks done in less time.

## Print and Share Documents Easily

Seamlessly collaborate with colleagues even when they are working remotely. With Cloud Connect, businesses gain access to popular cloud services including Microsoft Teams, Google Drive, and others. The Sharp Application Portal makes it easy for administrators to add new apps and update existing apps right from the MFP touchscreen.



### Integrate with Email Applications

In addition to native capability, the **Email Connect** feature enables seamless scan-to-email integration with Microsoft Exchange/365 and Gmail™ user accounts, making it easy to identify the sender of scanned files.

### Intelligent Image Processing

Scan documents to popular file formats including Microsoft Word, PowerPoint and Excel, as well as Searchable PDF, Encrypted PDF and others. Direct Print the same file types from thumb drives, cloud applications and mobile devices.\* **Adobe Embedded Print Engine** direct prints PDF files with greater speed and rendering accuracy.

### Flexible Printing Solutions

PCL 6 and Adobe PostScript 3 printing helps users speed through their work. The 256 GB solid state drive processes jobs quickly. **Serverless Print Release** enables users to print a job and release it from up to eight supported models. Native Universal Print from Microsoft eliminates the need for on-premises infrastructure, and enables IT to manage printers directly through a centralized portal.



\*This function is enabled via Qualcomm DirectOffice technology.

# Smart · Connected · Secure

## Integrating technology and functionality.

The New Monochrome Advanced Series document systems provide unsurpassed performance that simply adapts to your business needs.

### Duplexing Single Pass Feeder (DSPF)

300-sheet document feeder scans both sides of a document in a single pass and scans up to 280 images per minute.

### Smart Scan

Image processing technology and AI can automatically adjust resolution, compression, as well as detect original size and adjust for skew.

### Smart Touchscreen

Enhanced touchscreen is easy to use and delivers the responsiveness and accuracy users expect.

### Walk-up Motion Sensor

Detects walk-up users and wakes the machine from sleep mode, making it ready for use within seconds.

### Built-in Retractable Keyboard

Full-size QWERTY keyboard enables easy data entry.

### Touchless Operation

Scan, Copy and Print Release with award-winning Synappx Go app.

### Exceptional Image Quality

1,200 x 1,200 dpi resolution delivers razor-sharp text and graphics.

### Advanced Multi-layer Security

Leading security features plus optional Bitdefender antivirus provide enhanced protection against network intrusions.

### Microsoft Friendly

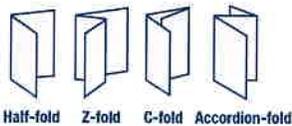
Native integration with Universal Print and Microsoft Teams simplifies workflow and enhances collaboration.

### Easy Access to Cloud Services

Print and scan documents to popular cloud applications.

### Advanced Finishing

Sharp gives you a variety of high-performance finishers to choose from to help complete the job on time. New inner folding unit option offers four popular folding patterns.



### Flexible Paper Handling

Feed up to 300 gsm media through the paper drawers and supports up to 12" x 18" output size.

### Large Capacity Cassette

Available large capacity cassette offers an additional 3,000-sheet capacity for a maximum on-line paper capacity of 6,300 sheets.



## Collaborate on-the-go with quick access to mobile devices.

The Advanced Series makes it easy to share data with tablets and smartphones even in busy office environments.



### Print with Popular Mobile Technologies

The Advanced Series supports printing using popular mobile technologies such as Apple AirPrint, and Android printing with the Sharp Print Service plug-in.

### Advanced Wireless Networking

Print directly to the MFP from mobile devices without interfering with the corporate network! 5 GHz technology and WPA3 encryption deliver fast, reliable data that is well protected from malicious intruders.

### Touchless Operation with Synappx Go

With the Synappx Go app, it's easy to email or copy documents remotely. Simply tap the touchscreen with your smartphone. Get extended remote features such as print release, scan/print from cloud services, and display collaboration by upgrading to a subscription version.

### Scan and Print with Sharpdesk Mobile

With Sharpdesk Mobile, a free downloadable app for most mobile devices, users can quickly scan and print files from tablets and smartphones.<sup>1</sup>



## Centralized device management helps ensure optimal uptime.

Seamlessly connect technology and drive collaboration with easy access solutions.

### Seamless Device Management

On premises, Sharp Remote Device Manager (SRDM) simplifies device monitoring and management. Event-driven alerts help maximize uptime. SRDM also offers centrally managed security settings, pre-configured driver distribution, energy save settings and more. SRDM is available as a free download.<sup>1</sup>

### Unified Cloud-based Monitoring and Management

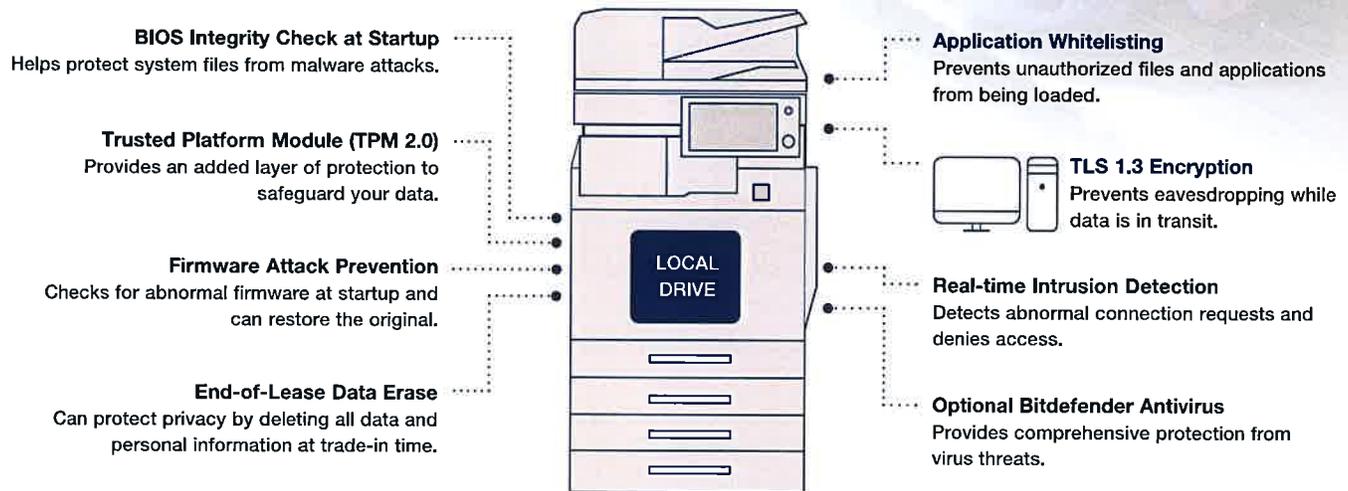
Synappx Manage cloud service enables IT administrators and service providers to remotely manage Sharp MFPs and displays from a single portal.<sup>2</sup> Proactive monitoring and remediation helps minimize administrator burden, as well as provide insight for optimized investments.

<sup>1</sup> Go to [www.sharppusa.com](http://www.sharppusa.com) for a list of supported equipment and operating systems.

<sup>2</sup> Synappx Manage available early 2023.

## Multi-layer security features to help businesses stay a step ahead of hackers.

The new Advanced Series utilizes leading security technology to help organizations protect their data and meet regulatory requirements.



- **Active Directory (AD) Integration** Enables the MFP to join the network domain as a computer, making it a trusted device.
- **Supports AD Group Policy** Allows administrators to centrally manage select security settings and enforce their own policy.
- **256-bit AES Encryption** Ensures data that resides on the local drive is protected.
- **Protects Access to the Device** IP/MAC address filtering, 802.1x authentication and port control protect access to the device.
- **Protects Data in Transit** IPsec and SMB 3.1.1 protocols, as well as TLS 1.3 use data encryption to protect data.
- **WPA3 Wi-Fi Encryption** Supports the latest data encryption standard for wireless networking security.
- **Authority Groups** Enables administrators to define various groups for different users, which can limit or restrict access to specific features.
- **Optional Data Security Kit** Offers expanded security functions and restricted access features for highly sensitive environments.



## Environmental Commitment

Sharp is committed to environmental sustainability and corporate responsibility.

### A Responsible Approach to Design

Sharp MFPs adhere to the Sharp Corporation Green Products Guidelines, which requires designing products that consume less power, use recycled materials and reduce materials used in packaging.

### Toner Recycling Program

Sharp offers zero-waste-to-landfill recycling for Sharp consumables at no cost to our customers and encourages them to recycle their Sharp toner cartridges by providing them with a pre-paid recycling kit for return to our facility.

### Environmental Commitment

The Sharp Advanced Series models are ENERGY STAR® 3.0 qualified and RoHS compliant. These products also have one of the lowest TEC values in their category as well as one of the lowest stand-by power consumption ratings. Sharp MFPs are EPEAT® registered.

For more information about Sharp environmental leadership including information about energy efficient products, electronics, or toner cartridge recycling, please visit [www.sharpusa.com/environment](http://www.sharpusa.com/environment).

## The New Monochrome Advanced Series. Simply Smarter.

Designed to fit today's hybrid workstyles, offering intelligent features and connectivity that enable office workers to collaborate with colleagues seamlessly and securely even when they are working remotely. To learn more, visit [www.sharpusa.com](http://www.sharpusa.com).



# SHARP

SHARP ELECTRONICS CORPORATION  
100 Paragon Drive, Montvale, NJ 07645  
1-800-BE-SHARP • [www.sharpusa.com](http://www.sharpusa.com)

Design and specifications subject to change without notice.



SYNAPPX



Qualcomm® DirectOffice™



©2022 Sharp Electronics Corporation. All rights reserved. Sharp, Sharp OSA, Sharpdesk, My Sharp, and all related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation and/or its affiliated companies. Microsoft, Active Directory, Excel, Microsoft 365, Microsoft Teams, OneDrive, PowerPoint, SharePoint, Windows, and Windows Server are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies. Android, Gmail, and Google Drive are trademarks or registered trademarks of Google LLC. Adobe and PostScript are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe in the US and/or other countries. Qualcomm DirectOffice is a product of Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. and/or its subsidiaries. Qualcomm is a trademark of Qualcomm Incorporated, registered in the United States and other countries. DirectOffice is a trademark of CSR Imaging US, LP, registered in the United States and other countries. AirPrint is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. Bitdefender is a trademark or registered trademark of Bitdefender SRL. Wi-Fi and WPA3 are trademarks or registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered trademarks owned by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

# SHARP®

## DESKTOP COLOR DOCUMENT SYSTEMS



MX-C303WH MX-C304WH

Sharp Desktop Color Document Systems offer leading-edge integration and powerful productivity, all in a compact design.

## A HIGHER BENCHMARK OF INNOVATION

reliable

The Sharp MX-C303WH and MX-C304WH Desktop Color Document Systems deliver crisp, high-quality output with exceptional ease of use. These multifunction printers (MFPs) provide customers with an intuitive user experience and the confidence of knowing their jobs will come out right the first time, every time. Designed with high-performance features typically found on larger machines, the compact MX-C303WH and MX-C304WH deliver the productivity you need with the performance and reliability you want.

### Key Features

- **Ease of Use** – Award-winning 7" (diagonally measured) touchscreen display offers a user-friendly graphical interface with simplified Easy Modes, integrated user guides and quick access to network services. With the Sharp MFP Voice feature available for these models, you can interact with the machine with the power of natural language.
- **Productivity** – Offers out-of-the-box copy, print, scan and fax capabilities, plus standard Cloud Connect features combined with wireless networking enables users to easily manage their workflow from PCs, smart phones and tablets.
- **Workplace Friendly** – Integrates seamlessly with today's complex network environments and supports popular cloud services and mobile technologies. And with the Sharp Application Portal administrators can add or update apps right from the MFP.

The compact MX-C303WH and MX-C304WH Desktop Color Document Systems offer a strong set of standard workflow features that are often optional on competitive models, making your decision to purchase Sharp even easier. These new models are also equipped with leading-edge security features that help businesses protect their data and personal information from the first day of operation to the time of trade-in.



# DESIGNED TO DELIVER HIGH PRODUCTIVITY



## EASY TO USE

## SEAMLESS CLOUD INTEGRATION

## LEADING-EDGE SECURITY



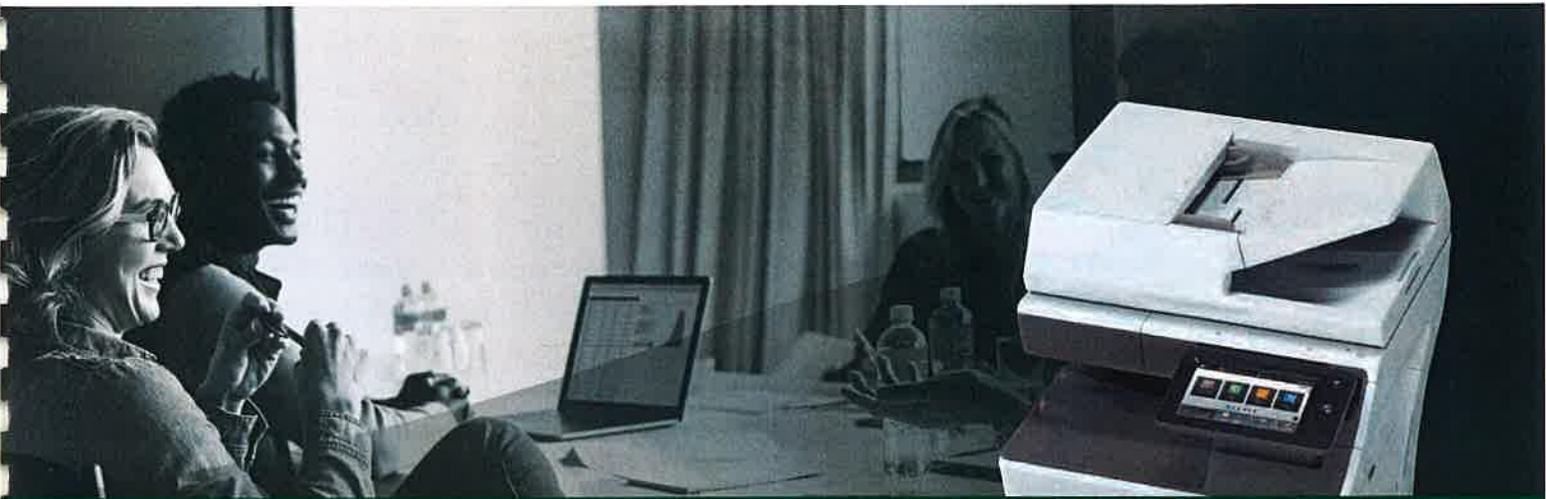
"PaceSetter Award in  
Ease of Use 2018-2019"

A compact design with advanced workflow features to simplify document management in virtually any size office.

- Standard **Print, Copy, Scan, Fax** and **Wireless** capability right out of the box.
- **100-sheet duplexing document feeder** on the MX-C304WH scans both sides of a document in a single pass, enhancing productivity while also maintaining the integrity of your originals.
- Both models can feed **letter size, legal size, statement size** and **business card size** original documents.
- Offers up to **six paper sources** with available 2,700-sheet maximum paper capacity.
- **Optical Character Recognition (OCR)** function can convert scanned documents to text-searchable PDF format, Microsoft® Office file formats, and more (standard on MX-C304WH, optional on MX-C303WH).
- Compact PDF feature dramatically reduces the file size of most color scanned documents, resulting in **decreased network traffic** and more efficient use of disk and cloud storage (standard on MX-C304WH, optional on MX-C303WH).



- Award winning 7" (diagonally measured) **customizable touchscreen display** with a clean design enables easy access to features and functions when setting up jobs.
- Network ready **PCL® 6** and **Adobe® Postscript® 3™** printing systems deliver crisp, clear documents at up to 30 pages per minute.
- **Direct print** Microsoft Word, PowerPoint® and Excel® files from thumb drives, cloud applications, network folders and more. This function is enabled via Qualcomm® DirectOffice™ technology (standard on MX-C304WH, optional on MX-C303WH).
- **Access popular cloud services**, including Microsoft® OneDrive® for Business, SharePoint® Online, Box.com, Google Drive™, Dropbox and more with the Sharp Cloud Connect feature (standard on MX-C304WH, optional on MX-C303WH).
- **Supports popular mobile technologies**, enabling users to easily print files from smart phones, tablets and notebook computers.
- Multi-layered, **leading-edge security features** provide enhanced protection and help businesses stay one step ahead of hackers and malicious network intruders. An End-of-Lease feature can erase all data and personal information at time of trade-in.



## ADVANCED FUNCTIONALITY – COMPACT DESIGN



Easy Mode Copy Screen.



Standard Copy Screen offers more advanced features.



Both models offer up to six paper sources for a maximum 2,700-sheet capacity (shown with optional trays).

From paper handling to networking, the MX-C303WH and MX-C304WH Desktop Color Document Systems will exceed your expectations.

### Simple and Intuitive Operation with Impressive Performance

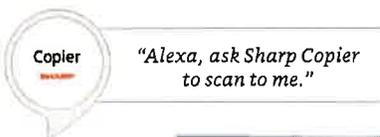
When it's time to get the job done, the MX-C303WH/C304WH are outstanding performers. Quickly scan documents at speeds up to **110 images per minute** (MX-C304WH)/ 40 images per minute (MX-C303WH). From basic copy functions to complex scan jobs, these Desktop Color Document Systems will perform with ease and efficiency. Use one of the **Easy Modes** (Copy, Scan or Fax) for fast, simple operation, with basic functions displayed in **large, clearly-labeled tiles** and keys. For more advanced features, simply touch the "Details" key.

### A "Well Connected" Device

Connecting a multifunction printer (MFP) to your wireless network and accessing it from mobile devices has never been so easy with the MX-C303WH/C304WH standard wireless networking features. Print or scan to popular cloud services such as Microsoft OneDrive for Business, SharePoint Online, Box.com, Dropbox and Google Drive with **Sharp Cloud Connect**. **Single Sign-on (SSO)** support makes scan-to-folder and scan-to-email operations simpler than ever. Even printing from your desktop is made easier with the **Sharp Serverless Print Release** function. Easily send a job to one device, and print it on another where it's more convenient.

### Experience Hands-free, Voice-first Interaction with Amazon Alexa

Sharp has always been known for enhancing MFP productivity in the workplace by offering innovative, easy-to-use features. Sharp has done it again with the **MFP Voice feature** available for color document systems. With the Sharp MFP Voice feature, you can interact with the machine just by using the power of natural language. With simple voice commands, you can ask the Sharp MFP to make copies or scan a document.



MX-C304WH shown with available Sharp MFP Voice feature with Alexa.

# VERSATILE DESKTOP DOCUMENT SYSTEMS

The MX-C303WH/C304WH Desktop Color Document Systems deliver the high-performance functionality you need in a space-saving, compact design that you want.

## workflow centric



**Duplexing Single Pass Feeder (DSPF)**  
Standard 100-sheet dual head document feeder on MX-C304WH scans both sides of document in a single pass at up to 110 images per minute.

**Flexible Document Handling**  
Both models can feed letter size, legal size, statement size and business card size original documents.

**Easy-to-Use Smart Touchscreen**  
Award winning, tablet-style menu provides quick access to features and functions.

**High Quality Printing**  
True 600 x 600 dpi resolution produces razor-sharp documents. Adobe PostScript 3 drivers offer extensive job control.

**Reversing Single Pass Feeder (RSPF)**  
Standard 50-sheet Reversing Single Pass Feeder on MX-C303WH scans documents at up to 40 images per minute.

**50-Sheet Manual Bypass Tray**  
Convenient manual bypass tray feeds envelopes, OHP film, glossy paper and labels, as well as paper up to 80 lb. Cover stock.

**Advanced Network Scanning**  
The Sharp ImageSEND™ feature provides one-touch distribution to email, fax, network folders, cloud applications and more.

**Hands-free Operation**  
The available MFP Voice feature enables users to control the device using simple verbal commands with Alexa.

**Optical Character Recognition (OCR)**  
Built-in OCR function converts scanned documents to text-searchable PDF format, Microsoft Office file formats, and more (optional on MX-C303WH).

**Easily Access Popular Cloud Applications**  
With the available Cloud Connect feature, users gain access to Microsoft OneDrive, Google Drive, Dropbox and more. The Sharp Application Portal will make it easy for administrators to add or update apps right from the MFP.

**Serverless Print Release**  
Standard Serverless Print Release feature enables users to securely print a job, and then release it from up to six Sharp document systems (including host) that are on the same network.<sup>1</sup>

**Print from Mobile Devices**  
Supports popular networking technologies, enabling users to easily print files from smart phones, tablets, and even Chromebooks.

**Multi-layered Security Features**  
Leading-edge security features provide enhanced protection of data and personal information and helps protect against network intrusions.

**Flexible Paper Handling**  
Optional paper drawers feed up to 8½" x 14" paper and support media up to 220 gsm (80 lb. Cover). Supports up to 2,700 sheets in paper drawers and bypass tray with options.

**Wired and Wireless Networking**  
Standard Gigabit Ethernet and Wi-Fi® network capabilities offer greater flexibility.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Supports most Sharp document systems. For a list of supported models contact your authorized Sharp dealer.

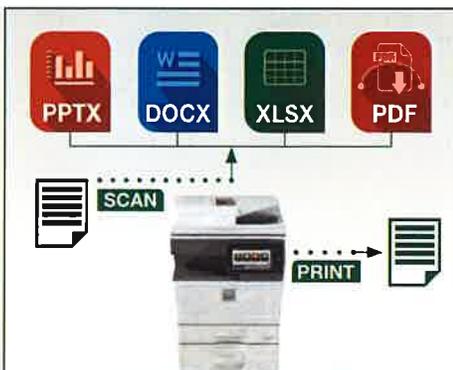
<sup>2</sup> In Infrastructure Mode, the wireless interface is used in place of a wired connection. In Point-to-Point mode, the wireless interface can be used to connect directly to the MFP from another wireless device, such as a smartphone or tablet.



## ENHANCED COLLABORATION FOR STREAMLINED WORKFLOWS



Distribute, access and print documents more easily.



Scan and convert documents to popular file formats seamlessly with the Sharp built-in OCR function.\*



With Serverless Print Release you can securely print a job and release it from up to six Sharp MFPs (including host).

### Powerful document workflow solutions help you work more efficiently.

#### **Distribute, Access and Print Your Documents with Ease**

Sharp makes it easy to go beyond traditional network scanning with standard **Email Connect** and **Cloud Connect** features. With Email Connect, scan to email is seamlessly integrated with Microsoft Exchange/Office 365® and Gmail™ user accounts, making it easy to identify the sender of scanned files. With Cloud Connect, users can easily scan-to and print-from **Microsoft OneDrive for Business, SharePoint Online, Google Drive, Box and Dropbox** (standard on MX-C304WH, optional on MX-C303WH). And with the Sharp Application Portal, administrators will be able to easily add new apps and update existing apps right from the MFP touchscreen panel.



#### **Scan and Print Files Easily from Mobile Devices**

The MX-C303WH/C304WH desktop color document systems also make it easy to scan and print files from tablets and smart phones using **Sharpdesk® Mobile**, a free downloadable app available for most common mobile devices.<sup>1</sup> The MX-C303WH/C304WH also support popular mobile technologies such as **AirPrint®, Android™ printing framework and more**. With standard wireless networking, users can also print directly to the MFP from mobile devices without interfering with the network!

#### **Simplify Managing Different File Types with Intelligent Image Processing**

Easily scan and convert documents to popular file formats including Microsoft Word, PowerPoint, and Excel, as well as a variety of PDF formats such as Searchable PDF, Encrypted PDF, Compact PDF and others. You can also direct print these same file types from thumb drives, cloud applications and mobile devices. This function is enabled via Qualcomm DirectOffice technology. These models also support the **Adobe Embedded Print Engine**, which direct prints PDF files with greater accuracy and performance.

#### **Flexible Printing Solutions Help Speed Up Your Office Productivity**

Standard Adobe **PostScript 3** and **PCL 6** printing systems help you speed through all of your output needs with accuracy. **Serverless Print Release** technology, enables users to securely print a job and release it from up to six Sharp MFP models on your network.<sup>2</sup>

#### **Simplify Complex Business Workflows**

**Sharp OSA technology** can help your business leverage the power of your network applications, back-end systems and cloud services.<sup>2</sup> Easily automate complex processes and help eliminate redundant tasks. Create your own custom integrations or take advantage of the growing portfolio of Sharp OSA applications available from Sharp Partner Program members.



<sup>1</sup> Go to [www.sharppusa.com](http://www.sharppusa.com) for a list of supported devices and operating systems.

<sup>2</sup> Some features require optional equipment and/or software/services.

# TAKING CARE OF BUSINESS SAFELY AND SECURELY

## Manage your device, help safeguard your data, help protect your business.

To help protect employees' privacy and intellectual property, Sharp Desktop Color Document Systems are armed with leading-edge, **multi-layered security features**, including **Firmware Attack Prevention and Self Recovery**, which can help identify a malicious intrusion and restore the machine firmware to its original state. The **Whitelisting** feature detects access attempts to the machine file system and denies access if the source data is not on the white list. **Authority Groups** help manage and restrict copying, printing and scanning features to safeguard data and control costs. Administrators can also apply **Active Directory® Group Policy** to the device, which offers centralized configuration and control. **Confidential Printing** helps ensure sensitive documents are kept safe by requiring users to enter a PIN code to print them. These models also support Active Directory user authentication and secure **Single Sign-On**. **Integrated ID card authentication** is also available.\* When you are ready to trade the machine in, a convenient **End-of-Lease** feature can erase all data and personal information, as well as print a confirmation report.



These scalable security offerings aim to protect your intellectual property, preserve confidential information and help your business meet regulatory requirements including the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) and the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA). For additional information visit: [www.sharpusa.com/security](http://www.sharpusa.com/security).

*\*Some features require optional equipment and/or software.*



With **Sharp Remote Device Manager (SRDM)**, administrators can take control of system features and simplify installation and management. SRDM makes it easy to view service logs, click counts, history reports and more. Event-driven service alerts help monitor the device and maximize uptime. The centrally managed **security dashboard** monitors security settings and can automatically reset the security policy if changed locally at the machine. Also, **Centralized Admin Password Management** and **Centralized Power Management** make it easy to deploy changes when needed. The **Remote Front Panel** feature enables administrators to control the machine's LCD panel from a PC to troubleshoot issues and train operators. Sharp also offers both built-in and additional auditing **hardware and software to control**, access and track usage of each device on the network.\* And with **My Sharp™**, you get a dedicated training website customized to your model to help you understand all of the features.



## ENVIRONMENTAL COMMITMENT



### **An Environmentally Responsible Approach to Product Design**

Sharp is committed to environmental sustainability and corporate responsibility including planning, design, manufacturing, distribution and product end-of-life management. The MX-C303WH and MX-C304WH adhere to the Sharp Green Products Guidelines in pursuit of these commitments. These guidelines include designing products that consume less power, using recycled materials, reducing the amount of material used in products and packaging, and labeling the type of materials used. Sharp also aims to design products that are upgradable, easy to repair, and easy to take apart for recycling.

The MX-C303WH and MX-C304WH document systems are RoHS compliant to restrict the use of hazardous substances. These products also have low TEC values.



### **Toner Recycling Program**

As part of our commitment to help preserve the environment, Sharp offers zero-waste-to-landfill recycling for Sharp consumables at no cost to our customers. This program includes cartridges, bottles, toner collection containers and drum units. Sharp encourages customers to recycle their used Sharp toner cartridges in bulk by providing them with a pre-paid recycling kit for their return to our facility.

### **Environmental Leadership**

Sharp is a multi-year winner of the SmartWay® Excellence Award which recognizes companies for conserving energy and lowering greenhouse gas emissions in logistics and transportation.

For more information about environmental leadership from Sharp including information about energy efficient products, electronics or toner cartridge recycling, please visit [www.sharpusa.com/environment](http://www.sharpusa.com/environment).

# MX-C303WH/C304WH SPECIFICATIONS

## Main Specifications

<b>MX-C303WH/C304WH</b>	Base models include multitasking controller, 50-sheet RSPF (MX-C303WH)/100-sheet DSPF (MX-C304WH), PCL 6 and Adobe PostScript® 3™ printing systems, network scanning, auto duplexing, 1 x 250-sheet paper drawer, 50-sheet bypass tray. Full capacity toners and developers included.
<b>Type</b>	Desktop color multi-function digital document system
<b>Display</b>	7" (diagonally measured) color dot matrix high-resolution touch panel tilting display. 1,024 x 600 dots (W-SVGA)
<b>Functions</b>	Copy, print, network print, network scan, document filing and fax
<b>Copy System</b>	Dry electrostatic transfer/Dual component developer/Magnetic brush development/OPC drums/roller fusing/white LED exposure
<b>Originals</b>	Sheets and bound documents
<b>Max. Original Size</b>	8½" x 14"
<b>Output Size</b>	Min. 5½" x 8½", Max. 8½" x 14"
<b>Copy Size</b>	Min. 5½" x 8½"
<b>Copy Speed</b>	30/30 ppm B&W/Color
<b>Multiple Copy</b>	Max. 9,999 copies
<b>First Copy Time (in seconds)<sup>2</sup></b>	Platen Glass: 6.3 Mono/ 7.4 Color (MX-C303WH), 5.5 Mono/ 6.7 Color (MX-C304WH) Document Feeder: 8.5 Mono/ 10.8 Color (MX-C303WH), 7.7 Mono/ 9.4 Color (MX-C304WH)
<b>Warm Up Time</b>	47 seconds
<b>Magnification</b>	25% to 400% in 1% increments (with document feeder 25%-200%)
<b>Original Feed</b>	50-sheet RSPF (MX-C303WH) and 100-sheet DSPF (MX-C304WH)
<b>Scan Speed</b>	MX-C303WH: up to 40 ipm MX-C304WH: up to 110 ipm
<b>Paper Capacity</b>	Maximum 300 sheets
<b>Paper Feed System</b>	Standard: (1) 250-sheet paper drawer (letter/statement/executive size) system and 50-sheet bypass tray (letter/statement/legal/executive/envelope size). Optional: 600-sheet paper drawer (letter/statement/legal/executive size.)
<b>Paper Weights and Types</b>	Standard paper drawer: 16-28 lb bond. Optional drawers: 16 lb. bond- 80 lb. cover. Other paper types include plain, recycled, pre-punched, letterhead, pre-printed and color. Bypass tray: 13-16lb. bond (thin paper), 16-28 lb. bond (plain paper), 28lb. bond-80 lb. cover (heavy paper), 20-24 lb. bond Monarch/Com-10 envelope. Also label paper, gloss paper, recycled, pre-punched, letterhead, pre-printed, color paper and OHP film.
<b>Duplexing</b>	Standard automatic duplex copy and printing
<b>CPU</b>	600 MHz
<b>Interface</b>	RJ-45 Ethernet (10Base-T, 100Base-TX, 1000Base-T), Wireless (IEEE802.11 n/g/b), USB 2.0 (2 host ports, front/rear), USB 2.0 (1 device)
<b>Memory</b>	5 GB copy/print shared
<b>Hard Disk Drive</b>	500 GB
<b>Copy</b>	Up to 600 x 600 dpi
<b>Resolution</b>	
<b>Color Modes</b>	Auto Color Selection (ACS), Full Color Mode, Monochrome (B/W)
<b>Exposure Control</b>	Modes: Automatic, Text, Text/Photo, Text/Printed-Photo, Printed-Photo, Photo, Map, Pale-Color Document. Settings: Auto or 9 step manual
<b>Halftone</b>	256 gradations/2 levels (monochrome)
<b>Copy Features</b>	Scan-Once Print-Many, electronic sorting, Auto Paper Selection, (APS), Auto Magnification Selection (AMS), Auto Tray Switching (ATS), black-white reversal, blank page skip, card shot, center, erase, centering, cover pages, edge erase, Image edit, Image, preview, insert pages, job build, job programs, margin shift, mirror image, mixed size original, original count, pamphlet, style, proof copy, repeat layout, stamp, stamp custom image, suppress background, toner save mode, transparency Inserts, watermark and 2-in-1 / 4-in-1 / 8-in-1 multi shot
<b>Account Control</b>	Up to 1,000 users. Supports user authentication via user-number, local login name/password, LDAP or Active Directory® for all models
<b>Output Tray Capacity</b>	150 Sheets (face down)
<b>Cloud Supported Services</b>	Google Drive, Gmail, OneDrive, SharePoint Online, Exchange Online, Box, Dropbox

## Main Specifications (continued)

<b>Network Protocols</b>	TCP/IP (IPv4, IPv6, IPsec), HTTP/HTTPS, IPP/IPP-SSL, FTP/FTPS, SNMPv3, SMTP/SMTP-SSL, POP3/POP3-SSL, LDAP/LDAP-SSL, 802.1x for Windows and Unix.
<b>Network and Data Security</b>	Includes IP/MAC address filtering, protocol filtering, port control, TLS Encryption, Kerberos, Active Directory Integration, AES 256 bit data encryption, data overwrite (up to 10 times), US Department of Defense data wipe standard DoD 5220.22-M and End-of-Lease feature
<b>Firmware Management</b>	Firmware can be updated by USB drive, FTP, Web page or SRDM
<b>Device Setup</b>	Web-based management with user/admin level login
<b>Service/Functions</b>	Remote Front Panel, access to service logs and click counts
<b>Accessibility Features</b>	Free stop tilting front panel, adjustment of key touch sound and speed, concave key, document feeder free stop, job programs, remote front panel, universal grip for optional paper trays, and disable screen timeout
<b>Environmental Standards</b>	Blue Angel, European RoHS and REACH
<b>Power</b>	120 V, 60Hz, 12A
<b>Power Consumption</b>	1.44 kW
<b>Weight</b>	MX-C303WH: Approx. 77 lbs MX-C304WH: Approx. 84 lbs
<b>Dimensions</b>	MX-C303WH: 19 11/16" (w) x 22 3/8" (d) x 22 21/64" (h) MX-C304WH: 19 11/16" (w) x 22 3/8" (d) x 22 1/4" (h)

## Network Printing System

<b>PDL</b>	Standard PCL 5c, 6, Adobe PostScript 3
<b>Resolution</b>	600 x 600 dpi
<b>Print Speed</b>	30/30 ppm (8½" x 11")
<b>Print Drivers</b>	Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2008 x64, Windows Server 2012 x64, Windows 7, Windows 7 x64, Windows 8.1, Windows 8.1 x64, Windows 10, Windows 10 x64, Windows Server 2012 x64, Windows Server 2016 x64, MAC OS X® (including 10.6 to 10.14)

## Mobile Printing

AirPrint, Android printing framework (Sharp Print Service Plugin), Sharpdesk Mobile<sup>3</sup>

## Print Features

Auto configuration, serverless print release, bar code font printing, carbon copy print, chapter inserts, confidential print, custom image registration, different cover page/last page/other page, document control, document filing, duplex printing, electronic sorting, form overlay, hidden pattern print, Image rotation, image stamp, image type, job retention, layout print, margin shift, network tandem print, N-up printing, page interleave, pamphlet style, proof print, print and send, stapling, toner save mode, transparency Inserts, tray status, user authentication, watermarks and zoom print.<sup>1</sup>

## Direct Printing

File Formats: TIFF, JPEG, PCL, PRN, TXT, PDF, Encrypted PDF, Compact PDF, PostScript, DOCX, XLSX, PPTX (optional for MX-C303WH). Methods: FTP, SMB, Web page, Email and USB memory. PDF file formats support the Adobe Embedded Print Engine USB, Web page, Email and SMB.

## Resident Fonts

80 outline fonts (PCL), 139 fonts (PS)

## Interface

RJ-45 Ethernet 10/100/1000 Base-T, USB 2.0, Wireless

## Operating Systems and Environments

Server2008, Server2008x64, Windows7, Windows7x64, Server2012, Windows8.1, Windows8.1x64, Windows10, Windows10x64, Server2016, Mac OS X (10.6-10.14)

## Printing Protocols

LPR, IPP, IPPS, PAP, Raw TCP (port 9100), FTP, POP3, HTTP, LPD and LPR for Unix

## Network Scanning System

**Scan Modes** Standard: color, monochrome, grayscale  
**Max. Original Size** 8½" x 14"  
**Optical Resolution** 600 dpi  
**Output Modes** 600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200 dpi, 150 dpi, 100 dpi  
**Image** Monochrome Scanning: Uncompressed, G3 (MH), G4 (MR/MMR)  
**Color/Grayscale:** JPEG (high, middle, low) Compact PDF, Black Letter Emphasis, Internet Fax mode: MH/MMR

## Image Formats

Monochrome: TIFF, PDF, PDF/A, Encrypted PDF, XPS, Searchable PDF, DOCX, XLSX, PPTX, TXT, UTF-8, and RTF (optional for MX-C303WH). Color/Grayscale: TIFF, JPEG, PDF, PDF/A, Compact PDF, Encrypted PDF, XPS, Searchable PDF, DOCX, XLSX, PPTX, TXT, UTF-8, and RTF (optional for MX-C303WH) Internet Fax: TIFF-FX, TIFF-F, TIFF-S, TIFF-C

## Network Scanning System (continued)

<b>Scan Destinations</b>	Email, Desktop, FTP, Folder (SMB), USB, Super G3 fax, Internet fax (option)
<b>One-Touch Destinations</b>	Up to 2,000 (combined scan destinations)
<b>Group Destinations</b>	Up to 500
<b>Programs</b>	48 (combined)
<b>Max. Jobs</b>	Up to 100
<b>Enhanced Email Integration</b>	Gmail connector, Exchange connector
<b>Software<sup>1</sup></b>	Sharpdesk desktop personal document management software, Network Scanner tool, Sharpdesk Mobile (download)

## Super G3 Facsimile Function

<b>Communication Line</b>	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)
<b>Transmission Mode</b>	Super G3, G3
<b>Modem Speed<sup>2</sup></b>	Maximum 33.6 KBPS with auto fallback
<b>Compression</b>	JBIG, MMR, MR, MH
<b>Scanning Method</b>	Sheet fed or manual feed from platen glass
<b>Transmit Resolution</b>	400 x 400 dpi (ultra-fine), 200 x 400 dpi (super-fine), 200 x 200 dpi (fine), 200 x 100 (standard)
<b>Halftones</b>	256 levels
<b>Transmit Speed<sup>2</sup></b>	2 seconds per page in Super G3/JBIG mode
<b>Auto Dialing</b>	Up to 1,000 destinations (combined)
<b>Group Dialing</b>	Up to 500 groups
<b>Inbound Fax Routing</b>	To email address, FTP or SMB using Transmit Terminal Identification (TTI), also Document Administration function can send blind copy of transmissions and receptions to an administrator email address, FTP or SMB location.
<b>Max. Original Length</b>	Up to 19.5"
<b>Programs</b>	48 (combined)
<b>Memory</b>	1 GB (shared)
<b>Features</b>	Transaction Reports, Activity Reports, PC Fax, F-Code communication, Memory Transmission, Quick On-Line Transmission, Inbound Fax Routing, Anti-Junk Fax Reception, Secure Fax Release, Out-of-Paper Memory Reception, Auto Redial, Auto Exposure, Chain Dialing, Polling Reception, Duplex Reception and ITU-T.37 Internet Fax Option.

## Optional Equipment

MX-DS22N	High Stand
MX-DS23N	Low Stand
MX-XB19	Anti Tip Kit
MX-CS14N	600-sheet Paper Feed Unit
MX-FWX1L	Internet Fax Kit
MX-PF10	Bar Code Font Kit
DVENDFSV	Generic Vendor Interface Kit
MX-FR61U	Data Security Kit
MX-EB20L	OCR Expansion Kit (MX-C303WH)
MX-PU10L	Direct Print Expansion Kit (MX-C303WH)
MX-EB19L	Compact PDF Kit (MX-C303WH)
MX-AMX1L	Application Integration Module (MX-C303WH)
MX-AMX2L	Application Communication Module (MX-C303WH)
MX-AMX3L	External Account Module (MX-C303WH)

## Supplies

MX-C30NTB	Black Toner Cartridge
MX-C30NTC	Cyan Toner Cartridge
MX-C30NTM	Magenta Toner Cartridge
MX-C30NTY	Yellow Toner Cartridge
MX-C32NVB	Black Developer
MX-C32NVC	Cyan Developer
MX-C32NVM	Magenta Developer
MX-C32NVY	Yellow Developer
MX-C30DR	Drum

<sup>1</sup> Some features require optional equipment. See your local dealer.  
<sup>2</sup> May vary depending on product configuration, machine settings and operating and/or environmental conditions.  
<sup>3</sup> Go to [www.sharpusa.com](http://www.sharpusa.com) for a list of supported devices and operating systems.



Qualcomm® DirectOffice™



SHARP ELECTRONICS CORPORATION  
100 Paragon Drive, Montvale, NJ 07645  
1-800-BE-SHARP • [www.sharpusa.com](http://www.sharpusa.com)

Design and specifications subject to change without notice. Sharp, Sharp OSA, Sharpdesk, My Sharp, and all related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation and/or its affiliated companies. Microsoft, Office 365, Active Directory, Windows, Windows Server, Excel, PowerPoint, OneDrive, and SharePoint are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Android, Chrome, Gmail, Google Drive and Chromebook are trademarks or registered trademarks of Google LLC. Adobe, the Adobe logo, PostScript, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe in the United States and/or other countries. Qualcomm DirectOffice is a product of Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. and/or its subsidiaries. Qualcomm is a trademark of Qualcomm Incorporated, registered in the United States and other countries. DirectOffice is a trademark of CSR Imaging US, LP, registered in the United States and other countries, used with permission. Amazon, Alexa, and all related logos and motion marks are trademarks Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

# SHARP®

## ADVANCED SERIES MONOCHROME DOCUMENT SYSTEMS



MX-M5071 MX-M6071



"2019 Copier MFP Line of the Year"  
"New to the Line"

The New Sharp Monochrome Advanced Series document systems deliver cutting-edge integration and powerful productivity.

## DESIGNED FOR THE TECHNOLOGY-DRIVEN WORKPLACE

advanced

The Sharp MX-M5071 and MX-M6071 Advanced Series monochrome document systems are built using the latest technology available to deliver the performance, features and reliability needed in today's busy workplace environments. These new MFPs are also easy to use and offer enhanced productivity, all to provide customers with a seamless, intuitive experience, and the confidence in knowing their jobs will come out right the first time, every time. The new Monochrome Advanced Series also offers leading-edge security features to help businesses protect their data and personal information.

### Key Features

- **Ease of Use** – Award-winning touchscreen display offers a user-friendly graphical interface with simplified Easy Modes, integrated user guides and quick access to network services. With Sharp's new **MFP Voice** feature available for these models, you can interact with the machine with the power of natural language.
- **Productive Features** – Standard full multifunction capability out-of-box, including copying, network printing and color network scanning. New Adobe Embedded Print Engine technology direct prints PDF files from a variety of sources with greater performance and rendering accuracy.
- **Workplace Friendly** – Integrates seamlessly with today's complex network environments, and supports popular cloud services and mobile technologies. Sharp's new **Application Portal** enables administrators to easily add new apps or update existing apps right from the MFP.

The new MX-M5071 and MX-M6071 Monochrome Advanced Series offers businesses powerful multitasking features, enabling them to quickly execute the ever-changing workflow tasks of today's busy office environments.



POWERED BY  
Adobe Embedded Print Engine

# POWERFUL PERFORMANCE, STRONG PRODUCTIVITY



## EASY TO USE

## PRODUCTIVE FEATURES

## WORKPLACE FRIENDLY



"PaceSetter Award in  
Ease of Use 2018-2019"

## An advanced design plus multifunctional capability allow you to meet tomorrow's business needs today.

- Standard 150-sheet **duplexing single-pass document feeder** scans documents at speeds up to 220 images per minute (ipm).
- **Flexible paper handling** supports media up to 110 lb. cover (300 gsm) and feeds up to 12" x 18" through the paper trays, allowing users to print on a wide variety of media.
- Sharp's available **MFP Voice** feature enables users to control the device with simple verbal commands. Experience hands-free, voice-first interaction with **Amazon Alexa**.
- Network-ready **PCL® 6** and **Adobe® PostScript® 3™** printing systems ensure your documents print with the clarity and formatting you expect.
- Easily **convert documents** to popular Microsoft® file formats, as well as a variety of PDF formats, with standard OCR (optical character recognition) capabilities.



- Award-winning 10.1" (diagonal) **customizable touchscreen display** with a clean design enables easy access to features and functions when setting up jobs.
- **Built-in walk-up motion sensor** automatically detects approaching users and immediately wakes the machine, making it ready for use within seconds.
- Standard **wireless networking** feature can connect directly to your network or to mobile devices for convenient scanning and printing with the **Sharpdesk® Mobile App**.
- Access popular cloud services, such as Microsoft OneDrive™ for Business, SharePoint® Online, Google Drive™, Dropbox and more with Sharp's **Cloud Connect** feature.
- **Multi-layered, leading-edge security features** provide enhanced protection while an End-of-Lease feature can erase all data and personal information at time of trade-in.



*Built-in retractable keyboard simplifies email address and subject line entries as well as repetitive scanning tasks and user authentication.*

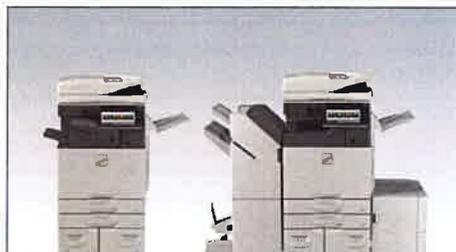
\* This function is available via Qualcomm® DirectOffice™ technology.



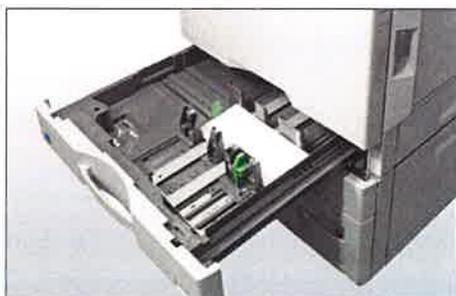
## ENHANCED FUNCTIONALITY – INTUITIVE DESIGN



Easy Copy Screen offers the most commonly used settings.



MX-M6071 shown in both a compact configuration with inner finisher and full configuration with saddle stitch finisher and large capacity cassette.



Feeds up to 50 envelopes from the standard paper tray.

From paper handling to networking, the MX-M5071 and MX-M6071 Monochrome Advanced Series will exceed your expectations.

### Simple and Intuitive Operation

From the most basic of copy functions, to the most complex scan jobs, the Monochrome Advanced Series will perform them with ease and efficiency. Use one of the **Easy Modes** for fast, simple operation, with basic functions displayed in **large, clearly-labeled tiles** and keys. Easy Modes are available for the standard copy and scan functions, as well as for the optional fax expansion kit. And for more advanced features, just touch the "Details" button—it's that easy.

### The Productivity You Need with the Performance You Want

When it's time to get the job done, the Advanced Series monochrome document systems are outstanding performers. Quickly scan documents at speeds up to **220 ipm**. Then use the **manual stapling feature** on select finishers to restaple your originals. **Multiple finishing options** give you the output you require, be it stacked, stapled, or saddle-stitched. There's even an available built-in **stapleless finishing** feature, which can bind up to five sheets of paper by adding a crimp to the corner of the set, saving regular staples for larger sets. These models also feed up to 50 envelopes from the standard paper tray.\*

### Experience Hands-free, Voice-first Interaction at the MFP with Alexa

Sharp has always been known for enhancing MFP productivity in the workplace by offering innovative, easy-to-use features. Sharp has done it again with the new **MFP Voice feature** available for the new Monochrome Advanced Series document systems. With Sharp's MFP Voice feature, you can interact with the machine just by using the power of natural language. With simple voice commands, you can ask the Sharp document system to make copies or scan a document.

Copier

"Alexa, ask Sharp Copier to scan to me."



MX-M6071 shown with available Sharp MFP Voice feature with Alexa.

\*See specifications for a list of supported envelopes.

# HIGH IMPACT VERSATILITY AND SCALABILITY

The MX-M5071 and MX-M6071 Advanced Series monochrome document systems provide high-performance functionality that easily adapts to your business needs.

## innovative features

### Duplexing Single Pass Feeder (DSPF)

Standard 150-sheet dual head document feeder scans both sides of a document in a single pass, and a built-in indicator light flashes to remind you to take your originals.

### Convenient Wireless Networking

Scanning and printing from mobile devices is made quick and easy with the available Sharpdesk Mobile App.

### Easy-to-Use Smart Touchscreen

Award-winning, tablet-style menu provides quick access to features and functions.

### High Quality Printing

1,200 x 1,200 dpi resolution produces razor-sharp documents. Adobe PostScript 3 drivers offer extensive job control.

### Built-in Retractable Keyboard

Full-size QWERTY keyboard enables easy data entry.

### Hands-free Operation

The available MFP Voice feature enables users to control the device using simple verbal commands with Alexa.

### In-line Stapling

Produce professional-looking corner-staple or edge-staple documents up to 65 pages.

### Walk-up Motion Sensor

Detects walk-up users and wakes the machine from sleep mode, making it ready for use within seconds.

### Manual Stapler

Manual stapling feature makes it easy to re-staple originals after scanning.

### 100-sheet Bypass Tray

Manual bypass tray feeds envelopes, OHP film, glossy paper, as well as paper up to 300 gsm.

### Saddle Stitch Finishers

Make high quality booklets up to 80 pages.

### Multi-layered Security Features

Leading-edge security features provide enhanced protection of data and personal information and helps protect against network intrusions.

### Easily Access Popular Cloud Applications

With the available Cloud Connect feature, users gain access to Microsoft OneDrive, Google Drive, Dropbox and more. Sharp's new Application Portal makes it easy for administrators to add or update apps right from the MFP.

### Advanced Finishing

Sharp gives you a choice of five high-performance finishers to give your documents a professional look. Choose from a compact inner finisher to a high capacity, floor-standing saddle stitch finisher.

### Flexible Paper Handling

Paper drawers feed up to 12" x 18" and support media up to 300 gsm. Also feeds up to 50 envelopes through the standard paper tray.\* A variety of paper tray options are available, including a large capacity cassette and split tandem paper drawers.

### Large Capacity Cassette

Large capacity cassette option adds an additional 3,000 sheets of paper for a total on-line capacity of up to 6,300 sheets.



\*See specifications for a list of supported envelopes.



## ENHANCED COLLABORATION FOR STREAMLINED WORKFLOWS



Access popular cloud applications, distribute files and print documents more easily.



Scan and convert documents to popular file types seamlessly with Sharp's built-in OCR function.



Standard Serverless Print Release enables users to securely print a job and release it from up to six supported models on the same network.

## Powerful document workflow solutions help you work more efficiently.

### **Distribute, Access and Print Your Documents with Ease**

Sharp makes it easy to go beyond traditional network scanning with standard **Email Connect** and **Cloud Connect** features. With **Email Connect**, scan to email is seamlessly integrated with Microsoft Exchange/Office 365® and Gmail™ user accounts, making it easy to identify the sender of scanned files. With **Cloud Connect**, users can easily scan-to and print-from **Microsoft OneDrive for Business, SharePoint Online, Google Drive, Box and Dropbox**. And with Sharp's new Application Portal, administrators can **easily add new apps** and update existing apps right from the MFP touchscreen panel.



### **Scan and Print Files Easily from Mobile Devices**

The Advanced Series monochrome document systems also make it easy to scan and print files from tablets and smart phones using **Sharpdesk Mobile**, a free downloadable app available for most mobile devices.\* These new models also support popular mobile technologies such as **Apple® Airprint®, Android™ print framework and Google Cloud Print™**. With standard **wireless networking**, users can also print directly to the MFP from mobile devices without interfering with the corporate network!

### **Simplify Managing Different File Types with Intelligent Image Processing**

With standard OCR capabilities, users can easily scan and convert documents to popular file formats including Microsoft Word, PowerPoint and Excel, as well as Searchable PDF, Encrypted PDF and others. You can even directly print these same file types from thumb drives, cloud applications and mobile devices. This function is enabled via Qualcomm DirectOffice technology. These new models also support the new **Adobe Embedded Print Engine**, which direct prints PDF files from a variety of sources with greater performance and rendering accuracy.

### **Flexible Printing Solutions Help Maximize Productivity**

Standard PCL 6 and Adobe PostScript 3 printing systems to help you speed through all of your output needs. Sharp's **Serverless Print Release** feature enables users to securely print a job and release it from up to six supported models on your network.\* And with **Google Cloud Print**, you can send print jobs from Chromebook™ notebook computers, PCs and more from virtually anywhere.

### **Simplify Complex Business Workflows with Sharp OSA® Technology**

**Sharp OSA technology** can help your business leverage the power of your network applications, back-end systems and cloud services. Easily automate complex processes and help eliminate redundant tasks. Talk to your authorized Sharp dealer to see how they can help you implement a streamlined workflow solution.



\* Go to [www.sharppusa.com](http://www.sharppusa.com) for a list of supported equipment and operating systems.

# TAKING CARE OF BUSINESS SAFELY AND SECURELY

## Manage your device, help safeguard your data, help protect your business.

To help protect employees' privacy and intellectual property, the new Monochrome Advanced Series is armed with leading-edge, **multi-layered security features**, including **Firmware Attack Prevention and Self Recovery**, which can help identify a malicious intrusion and restore the machine firmware to its original state. The new **Application Whitelisting** feature detects access attempts to the machine file system and denies access if the source data is not on the whitelist. **Authority Groups** help manage and restrict copying, printing and scanning features to safeguard data and control costs. Administrators can also apply **Active Directory® Group Policy** to the device, which offers centralized configuration and control. **Confidential Printing** helps ensure sensitive documents are kept safe by requiring users to enter a PIN code to print them. These models also support Active Directory user authentication and secure **Single Sign-On**. **Integrated ID card authentication** is also available.\* When you are ready to trade the machine in, a convenient **End-of-Lease** feature can erase all data and personal information, as well as print a confirmation report.



These scalable security offerings aim to help protect your confidential and personal information, as well as help your business meet regulatory requirements. For additional information visit: [www.sharppusa.com/security](http://www.sharppusa.com/security).

*\* Some features require optional equipment and/or software.*



With **Sharp Remote Device Manager (SRDM)**, administrators can take control of system features and simplify installation and management. SRDM makes it easy to view service logs, click counts, history reports and more. Event-driven service alerts help monitor the device and maximize uptime. The centrally managed **security dashboard** monitors security settings and can automatically reset the security policy if changed locally at the machine. Also, **Centralized Admin Password Management** and **Centralized Power Management** make it easy to deploy changes when needed. The **Remote Front Panel** feature enables administrators to control the machine's LCD panel from a PC to troubleshoot issues and train operators. Sharp also offers both **built-in** and additional **auditing hardware and software to control, access and track usage** of each device on the network.\* And with **My Sharp™**, you get a dedicated training website customized to your Advanced Series model to help you understand all of the features.



## ENVIRONMENTAL COMMITMENT



### **An Environmentally Responsible Approach to Product Design**

Sharp is committed to environmental sustainability and corporate responsibility including planning, design, manufacturing, distribution and product end-of-life management. The Monochrome Advanced Series adhere to Sharp's Green Products Guidelines in pursuit of these commitments. These guidelines include designing products that consume less power, using recycled materials, reducing the amount of material used in products and packaging, and labeling the type of materials used. Sharp also aims to design products that are upgradable, easy to repair and easy to take apart for recycling.

The MX-M5071 and MX-M6071 document systems are ENERGY STAR® qualified and RoHS compliant to restrict the use of hazardous substances. These products also have low TEC values. Sharp MFPs are EPEAT® registered.



### **Toner Recycling Program**

As part of our commitment to help preserve the environment, Sharp offers zero-waste-to-landfill recycling for Sharp consumables at no cost to our customers. This program includes cartridges, bottles, toner collection containers and drum units. Sharp encourages customers to recycle their used Sharp toner cartridges in bulk by providing them with a pre-paid recycling kit for their return to our facility.

### **Environmental Leadership**

As a testament to our commitment to the environment, Sharp is a multi-year winner of the ENERGY STAR annual Excellence in Energy Proficiency Product Design. Sharp is also a multi-year winner of the SmartWay® Excellence Award which recognizes companies for conserving energy and lowering greenhouse gas emissions in logistics and transportation.

For more information about Sharp's environmental leadership including information about energy efficient products, electronics or toner cartridge recycling, please visit [www.sharppusa.com/environment](http://www.sharppusa.com/environment).

# MX-M5071/M6071 SPECIFICATIONS

## Main Specifications

<b>MX-M5071/M6071</b>	Base models include multitasking controller, 150-sheet DSPP, PCL 6 and Adobe PostScript® 3™ printing systems, network scanning, auto duplexing, 1 x 550-sheet paper drawer, 100-sheet bypass tray.									
<b>Type</b>	Monochrome multi-function digital document system									
<b>Display</b>	10.1" (diagonally measured) color dot matrix high-resolution touch panel tilting display. 1,024 x 600 dots (W-SV/GA)									
<b>Functions</b>	Copy, print, network print, network scan, document filing and fax <sup>1</sup>									
<b>Copy System</b>	Dry electrostatic transfer/Dual component developer/Magnetic brush development/OPC drums/Belt fusing/white LED exposure Sheets and bound documents									
<b>Originals</b>										
<b>Max. Original Size</b>	11" x 17"									
<b>Output Size</b>	Min. 5½" x 8½", Max. 12" x 18"									
<b>Copy Speed</b>	50/60 ppm (8½" x 11")									
<b>Multiple Copy</b>	Max. 9,999 copies									
<b>First Copy Time (In Seconds)<sup>2</sup></b>	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>MX-M5071</td> <td>MX-M6071</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Platen Glass</td> <td>3.7</td> <td>3.5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DSPP</td> <td>6.6</td> <td>6.3</td> </tr> </table>		MX-M5071	MX-M6071	Platen Glass	3.7	3.5	DSPP	6.6	6.3
	MX-M5071	MX-M6071								
Platen Glass	3.7	3.5								
DSPP	6.6	6.3								
<b>Warm Up Time</b>	MX-M5071: 29 seconds (from main power switch on), 16 seconds (from [Power] button on) MX-M6071: 31 seconds (from main power switch on), 18 seconds (from [Power] button on)									
<b>Magnification</b>	25% to 400% in 1% increments (with DSPP 25%-200%)									
<b>Original Feed</b>	150-sheet DSPP with original size detection									
<b>Scan Speed</b>	Copy: Up to 220 lpm (Mono)/110 lpm (Color) Scan: Up to 220 lpm (Mono/Color)									
<b>Original Sizes</b>	5½" x 8½", 8½" x 11", 8½" x 11" R, 8½" x 14", 11" x 17"									
<b>Paper Capacity</b>	Standard: 650 Sheets, Maximum: 6,300 Sheets									
<b>Paper Feed System</b>	Standard: (1) paper drawer 550 sheets (letter/legal/ledger/stmt. size) or up to 50 envelopes (max. height: 25 mm), 100-sheet (or 20 envelope) bypass tray. Optional: Single, double, or triple paper drawer(s) (550, 1,100, or 1,650 sheets), split tandem paper drawers 2,100 sheets (letter) + (1) 550-sheet paper drawer (letter/legal/ledger/statement size).									
<b>Paper Weights and Types</b>	Paper drawers: 18 lb. bond to 110 lb. cover. Drawer 1: 20-24 lb. bond or Monarch/Com-9 envelopes. Split Tandem Drawers: 18 lb. bond to 28 lb. bond or plain, pre-printed, recycled, pre-punched, letterhead and color paper. Bypass tray: 16-28 lb. bond (plain paper), 13-16 lb. bond (thin paper), 28 lb. bond-110 lb. cover (heavy paper), tab paper (letter) and Monarch/Com-10 envelopes. Also label, gloss, preprinted, recycled, pre-punched, letterhead and color paper or OHP film.									
<b>Duplexing</b>	Standard automatic duplex copying and printing									
<b>CPU</b>	Up to 1.4 GHz multi-processor design									
<b>Interface</b>	RJ-45 Ethernet (10/100/1000 Base-T), USB 2.0: 2 host ports (front and rear), wireless 802.11 b/g/n									
<b>Memory</b>	Standard 5 GB copy/print (shared)									
<b>Hard Disk Drive</b>	500 GB									
<b>Copy Resolution</b>	Scan: Up to 600 x 600 dpi Output: Up to 1200 x 1200 dpi									
<b>Copy Modes</b>	Monochrome/Grayscale									
<b>Exposure Control</b>	Modes: Automatic, Text, Text/Photo, Text/Printed-Photo, Printed-Photo, Photo, Map, Pale-Color Document Settings: Auto or 9 step manual									
<b>HalfTone</b>	256 gradations/2 levels (monochrome)									
<b>Copy Features</b>	Scan-Once Print-Many, electronic sorting, offset-stacking, Auto Color Selection (ACS), Auto Paper Selection (APS), Auto Magnification Selection (AMS), Auto Tray Switching (ATS), black-white reversal, blank page skip, book copy, book divide, card shot, center erase, centering, cover pages, dual page copy, edge erase, image edit, image preview, insert pages, job build, job programs, margin shift, mirror image, mixed size original, multi-page enlargement, original count, pamphlet style, proof copy, repeat layout, reserve copy, related copy, stamp, stamp custom image, suppress background, tab copy, tab-paper Insertion, tandem copy, toner save mode, transparency Inserts, watermark, 2-in-1 / 4-in-1 / 8-in-1 multi shot									
<b>Account Control</b>	Up to 1,000 users. Supports user-number authentication via local, LDAP and Active Directory for copy, print, scan and document management									

## Main Specifications (continued)

<b>Output Tray</b>	Center Exit Tray (Main): 250 sheets (face down)
<b>Capacity</b>	Job Separator (Upper Tray): 100 sheets (face down) Right Side Exit Tray: 100 sheets (face down)
<b>Cloud Supported Services</b>	Google Cloud Print, Google Drive, Box, OneDrive for Business, SharePoint Online, Dropbox, Office 365, Gmail
<b>Network Protocols</b>	TCP/IP (IPv4, IPv6, IPsec), HTTP/HTTPS, IPP/PP-SSL, FTP/FTPS, S/MIME, SMTP/SMTP-SSL, POP3/POP3-SSL, LDAP/LDAP-SSL, 802.1x for Windows and Unix.
<b>Network and Data Security</b>	Includes IP/MAC address filtering, protocol filtering, port control, user authentication (local/LDAP/Active Directory), TLS Encryption, Kerberos support
<b>Firmware Management</b>	Flash ROM with local (USB), network update capability and firmware update 1 to N with SRDM (Sharp Remote Device Manager)
<b>Device Setup</b>	Web-based management with user/admin level login
<b>Service/Functions</b>	Remote Front Panel, remote access to service logs and click counts
<b>Accessibility Features</b>	Free stop tilting front panel, adjustment of key touch sound and speed, concave key, document feeder free stop, job programs, remote front panel, universal grip for paper trays, and disable screen timeout
<b>Environmental Standards</b>	International Energy Star Program Ver. 3.0, European RoHS, Blue Angel (RAL-UZ205)
<b>Power Source</b>	110-127 V AC, 60 Hz, 15 A receptacle
<b>Power Consumption</b>	1.5 kW or less
<b>Weight</b>	Approx. 159 lbs.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Approx. 24" (w) x 26" (d) 33" (h)
<b>Network Printing System</b>	
<b>PDL</b>	Standard PCL 6, Adobe PostScript 3
<b>Resolution</b>	1200 x 1200 dpi
<b>Print Speed</b>	50/60 pages per minute (8½" x 11")
<b>Print Drivers</b>	Windows® 7, Windows 8.1, Windows 10, Windows Server® 2008, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2019, Windows PPD, Mac OS X® (including 10.9 to 10.14), all Mac PPD, UNIX®, Linux®
<b>Mobile Printing<sup>1</sup></b>	Android printing framework (Sharp Print Service Plugin), Sharpdesk Mobile, Google Cloud Print, Apple AirPrint
<b>Print Features</b>	Auto configuration, serverless print release, chapter inserts, confidential print, continuous printing, custom image registration, document control, document filing, duplex printing, electronic sorting, form overlay, hidden pattern print, image rotation, job bypass print, job retention, layout print, margin shift, multiple pamphlet, network tandem print, N-up printing, offset stacking, page interleave, pamphlet style, poster print, proof print, print and send, tab paper print, tab printing, transparency inserts, tray status, user authentication single sign-on, watermarks, zoom print
<b>Direct Printing</b>	File Types: TIFF, JPEG, PCL, PRN, TXT, and PNG. Optional: PDF, Compact PDF, Encrypted PDF, PS, DOCX, XLSX and PPTX. Methods: FTP, SMB, Web page, Email and USB memory. PDF file formats support the Adobe Embedded Print Engine
<b>Resident Fonts</b>	80 outline fonts (PCL), 139 fonts (PS)
<b>Interface</b>	RJ-45 Ethernet 10/100/1000 Base-T, USB 2.0, Wireless
<b>Operating Systems and Environments</b>	Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 10, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2019, Chrome®, Mac OS X 10.9 to 10.14, Unix, Linux, Citrix®, and SAP device types <sup>1</sup>
<b>Printing Protocols</b>	LPR, IPP, IPPS, PAP, Raw TCP (port 9100), FTP, POP3 and HTTP
<b>Network Scanning System</b>	
<b>Scan Modes</b>	Standard: Color, monochrome, grayscale
<b>Max. Original Size</b>	11" x 17"
<b>Optical Resolution</b>	600 dpi
<b>Output Modes</b>	600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200 dpi, 150 dpi, 100 dpi
<b>Image</b>	Monochrome Scanning: Uncompressed, G3 (MH), G4 (MRV/MMR)
<b>Compression</b>	Color/Grayscale: JPEG (high, middle, low) Internet Fax mode: MH/MMR (option) <sup>1</sup>
<b>Scan Destinations</b>	Email, Desktop, FTP, Folder (SMB), USB, Internet fax (option), Super G3 fax (option)

## Network Scanning System (continued)

<b>Image Formats</b>	Monochrome: TIFF, PDF, PDF/A, Encrypted PDF, XPS, Searchable PDF, DOCX, XLSX, PPTX, TXT, and RTF. Color/Grayscale: TIFF, JPEG, PDF, PDF/A, Compact PDF, Encrypted PDF, XPS, Searchable PDF, DOCX, XLSX, PPTX, TXT, and RTF. Internet Fax: TIFF-FX, TIFF-F, TIFF-S <sup>1</sup>
<b>One-touch Destinations</b>	Up to 2,000 (combined scan destinations)
<b>Group Destinations</b>	Up to 500
<b>Programs</b>	48 (combined)
<b>Max. Jobs</b>	Up to 100
<b>Enhanced Email Integration</b>	Standard Gmail connector, standard Exchange connector
<b>Scanning Protocols</b>	HTTP/HTTPS, FTP/FTPS, SMTP/SMTP-SSL/ESMTP, SMB, POP3, LDAP, S/MIME
<b>Software<sup>1</sup></b>	Sharpdesk personal document management software, Network Scanner tool, Sharpdesk Mobile (download)

## Optional Equipment

<b>MX-60ABD</b>	Deluxe Copier Cabinet Base (with front door)
<b>MX-DE25N</b>	Stand/1 x 550-sheet Paper Drawer
<b>MX-DE26N</b>	Stand/2 x 550-sheet Paper Drawers
<b>MX-DE27N</b>	Stand/3 x 550-sheet Paper Drawers
<b>MX-DE28N</b>	Stand/1 x 550 + 2,100-sheet Split Tandem Paper Drawers
<b>MX-DE29N</b>	Low Stand/1 x 550-sheet Paper Drawer
<b>MX-LC17N</b>	3,000-sheet Large Capacity Cassette (letter, requires MX-DE25N/26N/27N/28N)
<b>MX-LT10</b>	Long Paper Feeding Tray
<b>MX-FN27N</b>	50-sheet Staple Inner Finisher
<b>MX-FN28</b>	1K Stacking 50-sheet Staple Finisher
<b>MX-FN29</b>	1K Stacking 50-sheet Staple/Saddle Stitch Finisher
<b>MX-FN30</b>	3K Stacking 65-sheet Staple Finisher
<b>MX-FN31</b>	3K Stacking 65-sheet Staple/Saddle Stitch Finisher
<b>MX-RB25N</b>	Paper Pass Unit (required for MX-FN28/29/30/31)
<b>MX-PN14B</b>	3-Hole Punch Unit (requires MX-FN27N)
<b>MX-PN15B</b>	3-Hole Punch Unit (requires MX-FN28/29)
<b>MX-PN16B</b>	3-Hole Punch Unit (requires MX-FN30/31)
<b>MX-SCX1</b>	Staple Cartridge for MX-FN27N/28
<b>AR-SC2</b>	Saddle-stitch Staple Cartridge for MX-FN29
<b>MX-SC11</b>	Staple Cartridge for MX-FN30/31
<b>MX-SC12</b>	Saddle-stitch Staple Cartridge for MX-FN31
<b>MX-TR19N</b>	Right Side Exit Tray
<b>MX-TR20</b>	Job Separator Tray
<b>MX-TU16</b>	Center Exit Tray
<b>MX-UT10</b>	Utility Table
<b>MX-FX15</b>	Fax Expansion Kit
<b>MX-FWX1L</b>	Internet Fax Kit
<b>MX-PF10</b>	Bar Code Font Kit
<b>AR-SU1</b>	Stamp Unit (requires AR-SV1 Stamp Cartridge)
<b>AR-SV1</b>	Stamp Cartridge
<b>MX-AMX1L</b>	Application Integration Module
<b>MX-FR64U</b>	Data Security Kit
<b>DVENDFSV</b>	Generic Vendor Interface Kit
<b>Supplies</b>	
<b>MX-S61NT</b>	Toner Cartridge
<b>MX-S61NV</b>	Developer
<b>MX-S60DR</b>	Drum
<b>MX-609HB</b>	Toner Collection Container

<sup>1</sup> Some features require optional equipment. See your local dealer.

<sup>2</sup> May vary depending on product configuration, machine settings and operating and/or environmental conditions.

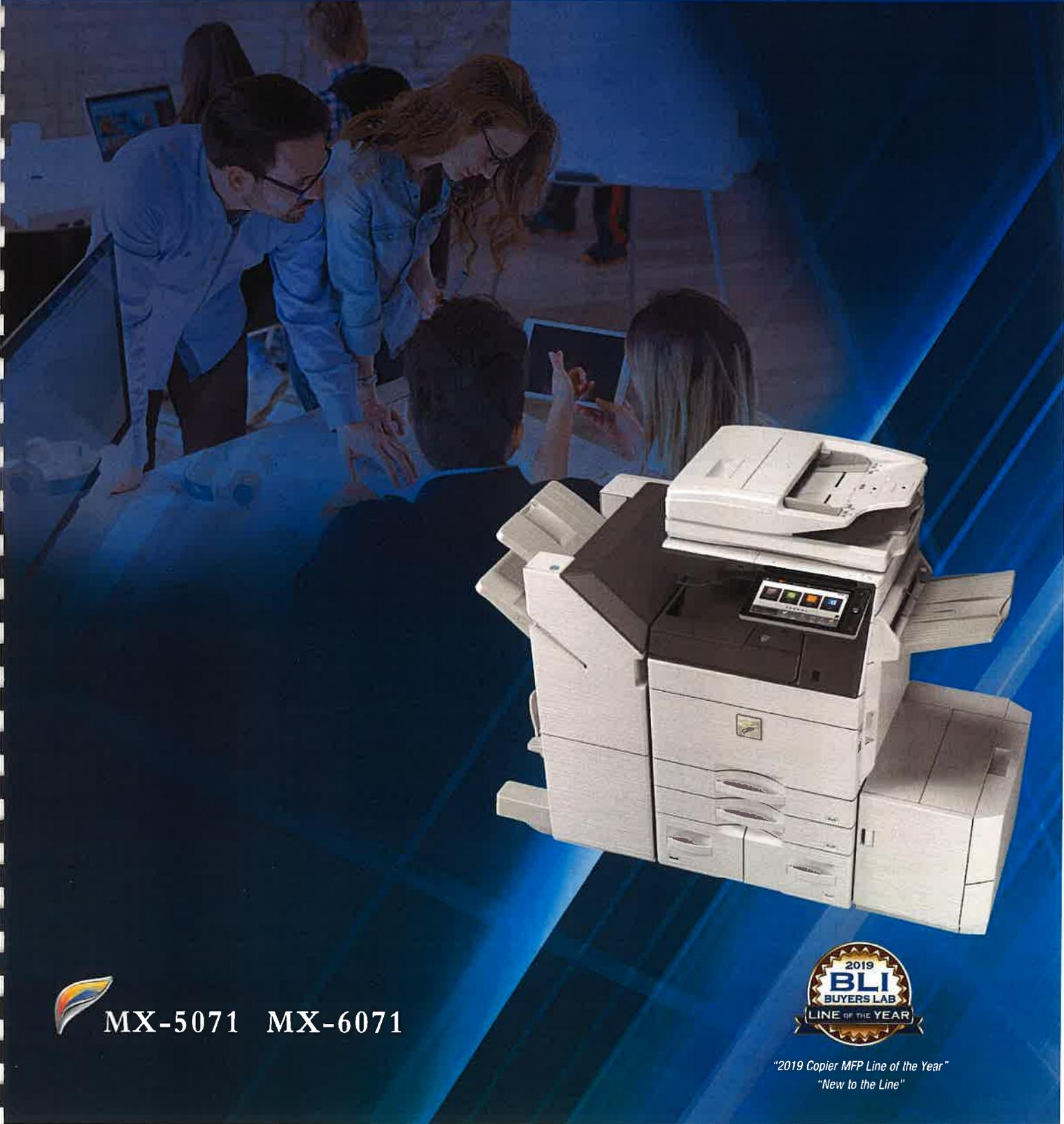


SHARP ELECTRONICS CORPORATION  
100 Paragon Drive, Montvale, NJ 07645  
1-800-BE-SHARP • www.sharpsusa.com

Design and specifications subject to change without notice. Sharp, Sharp OSA, Sharpdesk, My Sharp, and all related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation and/or its affiliated companies. Microsoft, Office 365, Active Directory, Windows, Windows Server, Excel, PowerPoint, OneDrive, and SharePoint are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Android, Chrome, Gmail, Google Drive, Google Cloud Print, and Chromebook are trademarks or registered trademarks of Google LLC. Adobe, the Adobe logo, PostScript, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe in the United States and/or other countries. Qualcomm DirectOffice is a product of Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. and/or its subsidiaries. Qualcomm is a trademark of Qualcomm Incorporated, registered in the United States and other countries. DirectOffice is a trademark of CSR Imaging US, LP, registered in the United States and other countries, used with permission. Amazon, Alexa, and all related logos and motion marks are trademarks of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

# SHARP®

## ADVANCED SERIES COLOR DOCUMENT SYSTEMS



MX-5071 MX-6071



"2019 Copier MFP Line of the Year"  
"New to the Line"

The New Sharp Color Advanced Series document systems deliver cutting-edge integration and powerful productivity.

## DESIGNED FOR THE TECHNOLOGY-DRIVEN WORKPLACE

advanced

The Sharp MX-5071 and MX-6071 Advanced Series color document systems are built using the latest technology available to deliver the performance, features and reliability needed in today's busy workplace environments. These new MFPs are also easy to use and offer enhanced productivity, all to provide customers with a seamless, intuitive experience, and the confidence in knowing their jobs will come out right the first time, every time. The new Color Advanced Series also offers leading-edge security features to help businesses protect their data and personal information.

### Key Features

- **Ease of Use** – Award-winning touchscreen display offers a user-friendly graphical interface with simplified Easy Modes, integrated user guides and quick access to network services. With Sharp's new **MFP Voice** feature available for these models, you can interact with the machine with the power of natural language.
- **Productive Features** – Standard full multifunction capability out-of-box, including copying, network printing and color network scanning, combines with Sharp's Color Consistency System for long-lasting high-quality output page after page.
- **Workplace Friendly** – Integrates seamlessly with today's complex network environments, and supports popular cloud services and mobile technologies. And with Sharp's new **Application Portal** (coming Spring 2019) administrators can add new apps or update existing apps right from the MFP.

The new MX-5071 and MX-6071 Color Advanced Series offers businesses powerful multitasking features, enabling them to quickly execute the ever-changing workflow tasks of today's busy office environments.



# POWERFUL PERFORMANCE, STRONG PRODUCTIVITY



EASY TO USE

PRODUCTIVE FEATURES

WORKPLACE FRIENDLY



"PaceSetter Award in  
Ease of Use 2018-2019"

An advanced design plus multifunctional capability allow you to meet tomorrow's business needs today.

- Standard 150-sheet **duplexing single-pass document feeder** scans documents at speeds up to 220 images per minute (ipm).
- **Flexible paper handling** supports media up to 110 lb. cover (300 gsm) and feeds up to 12" x 18" through the paper trays, allowing users to print on a wide variety of media, including envelopes through the standard paper tray and bypass tray.
- Sharp's new **MFP Voice** feature enables users to control the device with simple verbal commands. Experience a hands-free, voice-first interaction with **Amazon Alexa**, available for these Advanced Series models.
- Network-ready **PCL® 6** and **Adobe® PostScript® 3™** printing systems ensure your documents print with the clarity and formatting you expect.
- Easily **convert documents** to popular Microsoft file formats as well as a variety of PDF formats. You can also direct print these same file types from thumb drives, cloud applications and more. This function is enabled via **Qualcomm® DirectOffice™** technology.



- Award-winning 10.1" (diagonally-measured) **customizable touchscreen display** with a clean design enables easy access to features and functions when setting up jobs.
- **Built-in walk-up motion sensor** automatically detects approaching users and immediately wakes the machine, making it ready for use within seconds.
- Standard **wireless networking** feature can connect directly to your network or to mobile devices for convenient scanning and printing with the **Sharpdesk® Mobile App**.
- Access popular cloud services, such as Microsoft® OneDrive™ for Business, SharePoint® Online, Google Drive™, Dropbox and more with Sharp's **Cloud Connect** feature. And with Sharp's new **Application Portal** (coming Spring 2019) administrators can add or update apps right from the MFP.
- Sharp's **Color Consistency System** delivers high quality color output and helps maintain optimum image balance and toner density page after page.
- **Multi-layered, leading-edge security features** provide enhanced protection and help businesses stay one step ahead of hackers and malicious network intruders. An End-of-Lease feature can erase all data and personal information at time of trade-in.



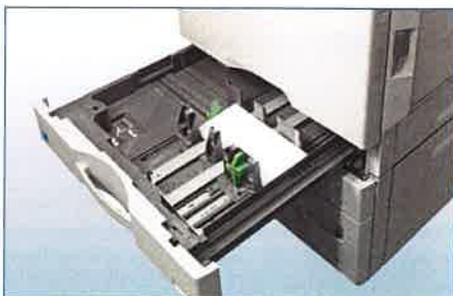
## ENHANCED FUNCTIONALITY – INTUITIVE DESIGN



Easy Copy Screen offers the most commonly used settings.



MX-6071 shown in both a compact configuration with inner finisher and full configuration with saddle stitch finisher and large capacity cassette.



Feeds up to 50 envelopes from the standard paper tray.

\*See specifications for a list of supported envelopes.

From paper handling to networking, the MX-5071 and MX-6071 Color Advanced Series will exceed your expectations.

### Simple and Intuitive Operation

From the most basic of copy functions, to the most complex scan jobs, the Color Advanced Series will perform them with ease and efficiency. Use one of the **Easy Modes** for fast, simple operation, with basic functions displayed in **large, clearly-labeled tiles** and keys. Easy Modes are available for the standard copy and scan functions, as well as for the optional fax expansion kit. And for more advanced features, just touch the “Details” button—it’s that easy.

### The Productivity You Need with the Performance You Want

When it's time to get the job done, the Advanced Series color document systems are outstanding performers. Quickly scan documents at speeds up to **220 ipm**. Then use the **manual stapling feature** on select finishers to restaple your originals. **Multiple finishing options** give you the output you require, be it stacked, stapled, or saddle-stitched. There's even an available built-in **stapleless finishing** feature, which can bind up to five sheets of paper by adding a crimp to the corner of the set, saving regular staples for larger sets. These models also feed up to 50 envelopes from the standard paper tray.\*

### Experience Hands-free, Voice-first Interaction at the MFP with Alexa

Sharp has always been known for enhancing MFP productivity in the workplace by offering innovative, easy-to-use features. Sharp has done it again with the new **MFP Voice feature** available for the new Color Advanced Series document systems. With Sharp's MFP Voice feature, you can interact with the machine just by using the power of natural language. With simple voice commands, you can ask the Sharp document system to make copies or scan a document.

Copier

“Alexa, ask Sharp Copier to scan to me.”



MX-6071 shown with available Sharp MFP Voice feature with Alexa.

# HIGH IMPACT VERSATILITY AND SCALABILITY

The MX-5071 and MX-6071 Advanced Series color document systems provide high-performance functionality that easily adapts to your business needs.

## innovative features

### Duplexing Single Pass Feeder (DSPF)

Standard 150-sheet dual head document feeder scans both sides of a document in a single pass, and a built-in indicator light flashes to remind you to take your originals.

### Convenient Wireless Networking

Scanning and printing from mobile devices is made quick and easy with the available Sharpdesk Mobile App.

### Easy-to-Use Smart Touchscreen

Award-winning, tablet-style menu provides quick access to features and functions.

### High Quality Printing

1,200 x 1,200 dpi resolution produces razor-sharp documents. Adobe PostScript 3 drivers offer extensive job control.

### Built-in Retractable Keyboard

Full-size QWERTY keyboard enables easy data entry.

### Hands-free Operation

The available MFP Voice feature enables users to control the device using simple verbal commands with Alexa.

### In-line Stapling

Produce professional-looking corner-staple or edge-staple documents up to 65 pages.

### Walk-up Motion Sensor

Detects walk-up users and wakes the machine from sleep mode, making it ready for use within seconds.

### Manual Stapler

Manual stapling feature makes it easy to re-staple originals after scanning.

### Easily Access Popular Cloud Applications

With the Cloud Connect feature, users gain access to Microsoft OneDrive, Google Drive, Dropbox and more. Sharp's new Application Portal (coming Spring 2019) will make it easy for administrators to add or update apps right from the MFP.

### Saddle Stitch Finishers

Make high quality booklets up to 80 pages.

### Multi-layered Security Features

Leading-edge security features provide enhanced protection of data and personal information and helps protect against network intrusions.



Sharp's Color Consistency System combines Micro-fine Toner with Developer Refresh and advanced Image Process Control. These processes help ensure color output is always at peak performance.

### Advanced Finishing

Sharp gives you a choice of five high-performance finishers to give your documents a professional look. Choose from a compact inner finisher to a high capacity, floor-standing saddle stitch finisher.

### Flexible Paper Handling

Paper drawers feed up to 12" x 18" and support media up to 300 gsm. Also feeds up to 50 envelopes through the standard paper tray.\* A variety of paper tray options are available, including a large capacity cassette and split tandem paper drawers.

### Large Capacity Cassette

Large capacity cassette option adds an additional 3,000 sheets of paper for a total on-line capacity of up to 6,300 sheets.

\*See specifications for a list of supported envelopes.

# ENHANCED COLLABORATION FOR STREAMLINED WORKFLOWS



Access popular cloud applications, distribute files and print documents more easily.



Scan and convert documents to popular file types seamlessly with Sharp's built-in OCR function.



Standard Serverless Print Release enables users to securely print a job and release it from up to six supported models on the same network.

## Powerful document workflow solutions help you work more efficiently.

### **Distribute, Access and Print Your Documents with Ease**

Sharp makes it easy to go beyond traditional network scanning with standard **Email Connect** and **Cloud Connect** features. With **Email Connect**, scan to email is seamlessly integrated with Microsoft Exchange/Office 365<sup>®</sup> and Gmail<sup>™</sup> user accounts, making it easy to identify the sender of scanned files. With **Cloud Connect**, users can easily scan-to and print-from **Microsoft OneDrive for Business, SharePoint Online, Google Drive, Box and Dropbox**. And with Sharp's new Application Portal (coming spring 2019), administrators will be able to **easily add new apps** and update existing apps right from the MFP touchscreen panel.



### **Scan and Print Files Easily from Mobile Devices**

The Advanced Series color document systems also make it easy to scan and print files from tablets and smart phones using **Sharpdesk Mobile**, a free downloadable app available for most mobile devices.\* These new models also support popular mobile technologies such as **Apple<sup>®</sup> Airprint<sup>®</sup>**, **Android<sup>™</sup> print framework** and **Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>**. With standard **wireless networking**, users can also print directly to the MFP from mobile devices without interfering with the corporate network!

### **Simplify Managing Different File Types with Intelligent Image Processing**

With standard OCR capabilities, users can easily scan and convert documents to popular file formats including Microsoft Word, PowerPoint and Excel, as well as Searchable PDF, Encrypted PDF and others. You can even directly print these same file types from thumb drives, cloud applications and mobile devices. This function is enabled via Qualcomm DirectOffice technology. These new models also support the new **Adobe Embedded Print Engine**, which direct prints PDF files with greater accuracy and performance.

### **Flexible Printing Solutions Help Maximize Productivity**

Standard PCL 6 and Adobe PostScript 3 printing systems to help you speed through all of your output needs. Sharp's **Serverless Print Release** feature enables users to securely print a job and release it from up to six supported models on your network.\* And with **Google Cloud Print**, you can send print jobs from Chromebook<sup>™</sup> notebook computers, PCs and more from virtually anywhere.

### **Simplify Complex Business Workflows with Sharp OSA<sup>®</sup> Technology**

**Sharp OSA technology** can help your business leverage the power of your network applications, back-end systems and cloud services. Easily automate complex processes and help eliminate redundant tasks. Talk to your authorized Sharp dealer to see how they can help you implement a streamlined workflow solution.



\* Go to [www.sharppusa.com](http://www.sharppusa.com) for a list of supported equipment and operating systems.

# TAKING CARE OF BUSINESS SAFELY AND SECURELY

## Manage your device, help safeguard your data, help protect your business.

To help protect employees' privacy and intellectual property, the new Color Advanced Series is armed with leading-edge, **multi-layered security features**, including **Firmware Attack Prevention and Self Recovery**, which can help identify a malicious intrusion and restore the machine firmware to its original state. The new **Whitelisting** feature detects access attempts to the machine file system and denies access if the source data is not on the white list. **Authority Groups** help manage and restrict copying, printing and scanning features to safeguard data and control costs. Administrators can also apply **Active Directory® Group Policy** to the device, which offers centralized configuration and control. **Confidential Printing** helps ensure sensitive documents are kept safe by requiring users to enter a PIN code to print them. These models also support Active Directory user authentication and secure **Single Sign-On**. **Integrated ID card authentication** is also available.\* When you are ready to trade the machine in, a convenient **End-of-Lease** feature can erase all data and personal information, as well as print a confirmation report.



These scalable security offerings aim to help protect your confidential and personal information, as well as help your business meet regulatory requirements. For additional information visit: [www.sharppusa.com/security](http://www.sharppusa.com/security).

\* Some features require optional equipment and/or software.



With **Sharp Remote Device Manager (SRDM)**, administrators can take control of system features and simplify installation and management. SRDM makes it easy to view service logs, click counts, history reports and more. Event-driven service alerts help monitor the device and maximize uptime. The centrally managed **security dashboard** monitors security settings and can automatically reset the security policy if changed locally at the machine. Also, **Centralized Admin Password Management** and **Centralized Power Management** make it easy to deploy changes when needed. The **Remote Front Panel** feature enables administrators to control the machine's LCD panel from a PC to troubleshoot issues and train operators. Sharp also offers both **built-in and additional auditing hardware and software to control, access and track usage** of each device on the network.\* And with **My Sharp™**, you get a dedicated training website customized to your Advanced Series model to help you understand all of the features.



## ENVIRONMENTAL COMMITMENT



### **An Environmentally Responsible Approach to Product Design**

Sharp is committed to environmental sustainability and corporate responsibility including planning, design, manufacturing, distribution and product end-of-life management. The Color Advanced Series adhere to Sharp's Green Products Guidelines in pursuit of these commitments. These guidelines include designing products that consume less power, using recycled materials, reducing the amount of material used in products and packaging, and labeling the type of materials used. Sharp also aims to design products that are upgradable, easy to repair and easy to take apart for recycling.

The MX-5071 and MX-6071 document systems are ENERGY STAR® qualified and RoHS compliant to restrict the use of hazardous substances. These products also have low TEC values. Sharp MFPs are EPEAT® registered.



### **Toner Recycling Program**

As part of our commitment to help preserve the environment, Sharp offers zero-waste-to-landfill recycling for Sharp consumables at no cost to our customers. This program includes cartridges, bottles, toner collection containers and drum units. Sharp encourages customers to recycle their used Sharp toner cartridges in bulk by providing them with a pre-paid recycling kit for their return to our facility.

### **Environmental Leadership**

As a testament to our commitment to the environment, Sharp is a multi-year winner of the ENERGY STAR annual Excellence in Energy Proficiency Product Design. Sharp is also a multi-year winner of the SmartWay® Excellence Award which recognizes companies for conserving energy and lowering greenhouse gas emissions in logistics and transportation.

For more information about Sharp's environmental leadership including information about energy efficient products, electronics or toner cartridge recycling, please visit [www.sharppusa.com/environment](http://www.sharppusa.com/environment).

# MX-5071/6071 SPECIFICATIONS

## Main Specifications

<b>MX-5071/6071</b>	Base models include multitasking controller, 150-sheet DSPP, PCL 6 and Adobe PostScript 3 printing systems, network scanning, auto duplexing, 1 x 550-sheet paper drawer, 100-sheet bypass tray, Black and color developer is included.
<b>Type</b>	Color multi-function digital document system
<b>Display</b>	10.1" (diagonally-measured) color dot matrix high-resolution touch panel tilting display, 1,024 x 600 dots (W-SVGA)
<b>Functions</b>	Copy, print, network print, network scan, document filing and fax <sup>1</sup>
<b>Copy System</b>	Dry electrostatic transfer/Dual component developer/Magnetic brush development/DPC drums/Belt fusing/White LED exposure
<b>Originals</b>	Sheets and bound documents
<b>Max. Original Size</b>	11" x 17"
<b>Output Size</b>	Min. 5 1/2" x 8 1/2", Max. 12" x 18"
<b>Copy Speed</b>	50/60 ppm Mono/Color (8 1/2" x 11")
<b>Multiple Copy</b>	Max. 9,999 copies
<b>First Copy Time (In Seconds)<sup>2</sup></b>	Platen Glass: Mono 3.7, Color 4.8 DSPP: Mono 6.1, Color 7.5
<b>Warm Up Time</b>	45 seconds (from main power switch on), 31 seconds (from [Power] button on)
<b>Magnification</b>	25% to 400% in 1% increments (with DSPP 25%-200%)
<b>Original Feed</b>	150-sheet DSPP with original size detection
<b>Scan Speed</b>	Copy: Up to 220 ipm (Mono)/110 ipm (Color) Scan: Up to 220 ipm (Mono/Color)
<b>Original Sizes</b>	5 1/2" x 8 1/2", 8 1/2" x 11", 8 1/2" x 11" R, 8 1/2" x 14", 11" x 17"
<b>Paper Capacity</b>	Standard: 650 Sheets/Maximum: 6,300 Sheets
<b>Paper Feed System</b>	Standard: (1) paper drawer 550 sheets (letter/legal/ledger/stml size) or up to 50 envelopes (max. height: 25 mm), 100-sheet (or 20 envelope) bypass tray. Optional: Single, double, or triple paper drawer(s) (550, 1,100, or 1,650 sheets), split tandem paper drawers 2,100 sheets (letter) + (1) 550-sheet paper drawer (letter/legal/ledger/stml size).
<b>Paper Weights and Types</b>	Paper drawers: 18 lb. bond to 110 lb. cover. Drawer 1: 20-24 lb. bond or Monarch/Com-9 envelopes. Split Tandem Drawers: 18 lb. bond to 28 lb. bond or plain, pre-printed, recycled, pre-punched, letterhead and color paper. Bypass tray: 15-28 lb. bond (plain paper), 13-16 lb. bond (thin paper), 28 lb. bond-110 lb. cover (heavy paper), tab paper (letter) and Monarch/Com-10 envelopes. Also label, gloss, preprinted, recycled, pre-punched, letterhead and color paper or OHP film.
<b>Duplexing</b>	Standard automatic duplex copying and printing
<b>CPU</b>	Up to 1.4 GHz multi-processor design
<b>Interface</b>	RJ-45 Ethernet (10/100/1000 Base-T), USB 2.0: 2 host ports (front and rear), 1 device port (rear), wireless 802.11 a/b/g/n
<b>Memory</b>	Standard 5 GB copy/print (shared)
<b>Hard Disk Drive</b>	500 GB
<b>Copy Resolution</b>	Scan: 600 x 600 dpi (Mono/Color) Output: Up to 1200 x 1200 dpi (Mono), up to 600 x 600 dpi (Color)
<b>Color Modes</b>	Auto Color Selection (ACS), Full Color Mode, Monochrome (B/W)
<b>Exposure Control</b>	Modes: Automatic, Text, Text/Photo, Text/Printed-Photo, Printed-Photo, Photo, Map, Pale-Color Document Settings: Auto or 9 step manual
<b>Halftone</b>	256 gradations/2 levels (monochrome)
<b>Copy Features</b>	Scan-Once Print-Many, electronic sorting, offset-stacking, Auto Color Selection (ACS), Auto Paper Selection (APS), Auto Magnification Selection (AMS), Auto Tray Switching (ATS), black-white reversal, blank page skip, book copy, book divide, card shot, center erase, centering, cover pages, dual page copy, edge erase, image edit, image preview, insert pages, job build, job programs, margin shift, mirror image, mixed size original, multi-page enlargement, original count, pamphlet style, proof copy, repeat layout, reserve copy, related copy, stamp, stamp custom image, suppress background, tab copy, tab-paper insertion, tandem copy, toner save mode, transparency inserts, watermark, 2-in-1 / 4-in-1 / 8-in-1 multi shot
<b>Account Control</b>	Up to 1,000 users. Supports user-number authentication via local, LDAP and Active Directory for copy, print, scan and document management

## Main Specifications (continued)

<b>Output Tray Capacity</b>	Center Exit Tray (Main): 250 sheets (face down) Job Separator (Upper Tray): 100 sheets (face down) Right Side Exit Tray: 100 sheets (face down)
<b>Cloud Supported Services</b>	Google Cloud Print, Google Drive, Box, OneDrive for Business, SharePoint Online, Dropbox, Office 365, Gmail
<b>Network Protocols</b>	TCP/IP (IPv4, IPv6, IPsec), HTTP/HTTPS, IPP/IPP-SSL, FTP/FTPS, SNNPv3, SMTP/SMTP-SSL, POP3/POP3-SSL, LDAP/LDAP-SSL, 802.1x for Windows and Unix.
<b>Network and Data Security</b>	Includes IP/MAC address filtering, protocol filtering, port control, user authentication (local/LDAP/Active Directory), TLS Encryption, Kerberos support
<b>Firmware Management</b>	Flash ROM with local (USB), network update capability and firmware update 1 to N with SRDM (Sharp Remote Device Manager)
<b>Device Setup</b>	Web-based management with user/admin level login
<b>Service/Functions</b>	Remote Front Panel, remote access to service logs and click counts
<b>Accessibility Features</b>	Free stop tilting front panel, adjustment of key touch sound and speed, concave key, document feeder free stop, job programs, remote front panel, universal grip for paper trays, and disable screen timeout
<b>Environmental Standards</b>	International Energy Star Program Ver. 2.0, European RoHS, Blue Angel (RAL-UZ205)
<b>Power Source</b>	110-127 V AC, 60 Hz, 20 A Receptacle
<b>Power Consumption</b>	1.92 kW or less
<b>Weight</b>	Approx. 198 lbs.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Approx. 24" (w) x 26" (d) 33" (h)
<b>Network Printing System</b>	
<b>PDL</b>	Standard PCL 6, Adobe PostScript 3
<b>Resolution</b>	1200 x 1200 dpi
<b>Print Speed</b>	50/60 pages per minute (8 1/2" x 11")
<b>Print Drivers</b>	Windows <sup>®</sup> 7, Windows 8.1, Windows 10, Windows Server <sup>®</sup> 2008, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2016, Windows PPD, Mac <sup>®</sup> OS X <sup>®</sup> (including 10.6 to 10.14), all Mac PPD, UNIX <sup>®</sup> , Linux <sup>®</sup>
<b>Mobile Printing<sup>1</sup></b>	Android printing framework (Sharp Print Service Plugin), Sharpdesk Mobile, Google Cloud Print, Apple AirPrint
<b>Print Features</b>	Auto configuration, serverless print release, chapter inserts, confidential print, continuous printing, custom image registration, document control, document filing, duplex printing, electronic sorting, form overlay, hidden pattern print, image rotation, job bypass print, job retention, layout print, margin shift, multiple pamphlet, network tandem print, N-up printing, offset stacking, page interleave, pamphlet style, poster print, proof print, print and send, tab paper print, tab printing, transparency inserts, tray status, user authentication single sign-on, watermarks, zoom print
<b>Direct Printing</b>	File Types: TIFF, JPEG, PCL, PRN, TXT, and PNG. Optional: PDF, Compact PDF, Encrypted PDF, PS, DOCX, XLSX and PPTX. Methods: FTP, SMB, Web page, Email and USB memory. PDF file formats support the Adobe Embedded Print Engine
<b>Resident Fonts</b>	80 outline fonts (PCL), 139 fonts (PS)
<b>Interface</b>	RJ-45 Ethernet 10/100/1000 Base-T, USB 2.0, Wireless
<b>Operating Systems and Environments</b>	Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 10, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2016, Chrome <sup>®</sup> , Mac OS X 10.6-10.14, Unix, Linux, Citrix <sup>®</sup> , and SAP device types <sup>3</sup>
<b>Printing Protocols</b>	LPR, IPP, IPPS, PAP, Raw TCP (port 9100), FTP, POP3 and HTTP
<b>Network Scanning System</b>	
<b>Scan Modes</b>	Standard: Color, monochrome, grayscale
<b>Max. Original Size</b>	11" x 17"
<b>Optical Resolution</b>	600 dpi
<b>Output Modes</b>	600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200 dpi, 150 dpi, 100 dpi
<b>Image</b>	Monochrome Scanning: Uncompressed, G3 (MH), G4 (MR/MMR)
<b>Compression</b>	Color/Grayscale: JPEG (high, middle, low) Internet Fax mode: MH/MMR (option) <sup>4</sup>

## Network Scanning System (continued)

<b>Image Formats</b>	Monochrome: TIFF, PDF, PDF/A, Encrypted PDF, XPS, Searchable PDF, DOCX, XLSX, PPTX, TXT, and RTF. Color/Grayscale: TIFF, JPEG, PDF, PDF/A, Compact PDF, Encrypted PDF, XPS, Searchable PDF, DOCX, XLSX, PPTX, TXT, and RTF. Internet Fax: TIFF-FX, TIFF-F, TIFF-S <sup>5</sup>
<b>Scan Destinations</b>	Email, Desktop, FTP, Folder (SMB), USB, Internet fax (option), Super G3 fax (option)
<b>One-touch Destinations</b>	Up to 2,000 (combined scan destinations)
<b>Group Destinations</b>	Up to 500
<b>Programs</b>	48 (combined)
<b>Max. Jobs</b>	Up to 100
<b>Enhanced Email Integration</b>	Standard Gmail connector, standard Exchange connector
<b>Scanning Protocols</b>	HTTP/HTTPS, FTP/FTPS, SMTP/SMTP-SSL/ESMTP, SMB, POP3, LDAP, S/MIME
<b>Software<sup>1</sup></b>	Sharpdesk personal document management software, Network Scanner tool, Sharpdesk Mobile (download)
<b>Optional Equipment</b>	
<b>MX-60ABD</b>	Deluxe Copier Cabinet Base (with front door)
<b>MX-DE25N</b>	Stand/1 x 550-sheet Paper Drawer
<b>MX-DE26N</b>	Stand/2 x 550-sheet Paper Drawers
<b>MX-DE27N</b>	Stand/3 x 550-sheet Paper Drawers
<b>MX-DE28N</b>	Stand/1 x 550 + 2,100-sheet Split Tandem Paper Drawers
<b>MX-DE29N</b>	Low Stand/1 x 550-sheet Paper Drawer
<b>MX-LC17N</b>	3,000-sheet Large Capacity Cassette (letter, requires MX-DE25N/26N/27N/28N)
<b>MX-LT10</b>	Long Paper Feeding Tray
<b>MX-FN27N</b>	50-sheet Staple Inner Finisher
<b>MX-FN28</b>	1K Stacking 50-sheet Staple Finisher
<b>MX-FN29</b>	1K Stacking 50-sheet Staple/Saddle Stitch Finisher
<b>MX-FN30</b>	3K Stacking 65-sheet Staple Finisher
<b>MX-FN31</b>	3K Stacking 65-sheet Staple/Saddle Stitch Finisher
<b>MX-RB25N</b>	Paper Pass Unit (required for MX-FN28/29/30/31)
<b>MX-PN14B</b>	3-Hole Punch Unit (requires MX-FN27N)
<b>MX-PN15B</b>	3-Hole Punch Unit (requires MX-FN28/29)
<b>MX-PN16B</b>	3-Hole Punch Unit (requires MX-FN30/31)
<b>MX-SCX1</b>	Staple Cartridge for MX-FN27N/28
<b>AR-SC2</b>	Saddle-stitch Staple Cartridge for MX-FN29
<b>MX-SC11</b>	Staple Cartridge for MX-FN30/31
<b>MX-SC12</b>	Saddle-stitch Staple Cartridge for MX-FN31
<b>MX-TR19N</b>	Right Side Exit Tray
<b>MX-TR20</b>	Job Separator Tray
<b>MX-TU16</b>	Center Exit Tray
<b>MX-UT10</b>	Utility Table
<b>MX-FX15</b>	Fax Expansion Kit
<b>MX-FWX1L</b>	Internet Fax Kit
<b>MX-PFT0</b>	Bar Code Font Kit
<b>AR-SU1</b>	Stamp Unit (requires AR-SV1 Stamp Cartridge)
<b>AR-SV1</b>	Stamp Cartridge
<b>MX-AMX1L</b>	Application Integration Module
<b>MX-FR62U</b>	Commercial Data Security Kit
<b>DVENDFSV</b>	Generic Vendor Interface Kit
<b>Supplies</b>	
<b>MX-61NTBA</b>	Black Toner Cartridge
<b>MX-61NTCA</b>	Cyan Toner Cartridge
<b>MX-61NTMA</b>	Magenta Toner Cartridge
<b>MX-61NTYA</b>	Yellow Toner Cartridge
<b>MX-61NVBA</b>	Black Developer
<b>MX-61NVSA</b>	Cyan/Magenta/Yellow Developer
<b>MX-60NRSA</b>	Drum

<sup>1</sup> Some features require optional equipment. See your local dealer.  
<sup>2</sup> May vary depending on product configuration, machine settings and operating and/or environmental conditions.



SHARP ELECTRONICS CORPORATION  
100 Paragon Drive, Montvale, NJ 07645  
1-800-BE-SHARP • www.sharpsusa.com

Design and specifications subject to change without notice. Sharp, Sharp OSA, Sharpdesk, My Sharp, and all related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation and/or its affiliated companies. Microsoft, Office 365, Active Directory, Windows, Windows Server, Excel, PowerPoint, OneDrive, and SharePoint are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Android, Chrome, Gmail, Google Drive, Google Cloud Print, and Chromebook are trademarks or registered trademarks of Google LLC. Adobe, the Adobe logo, PostScript, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. Qualcomm DirectOffice is a product of Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. and/or its subsidiaries. Qualcomm is a trademark of Qualcomm Incorporated, registered in the United States and other countries. DirectOffice is a trademark of CSR Imaging US, LP, registered in the United States and other countries, used with permission. Amazon, Alexa, and all related logos and motion marks are trademarks of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

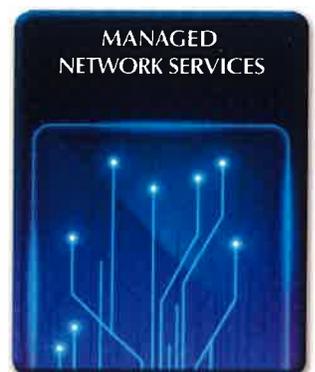
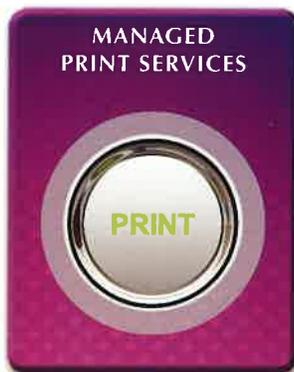
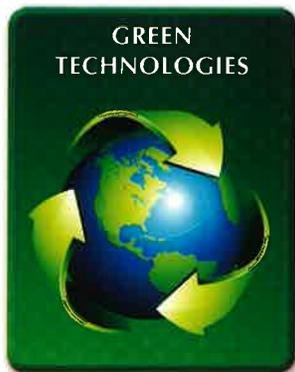


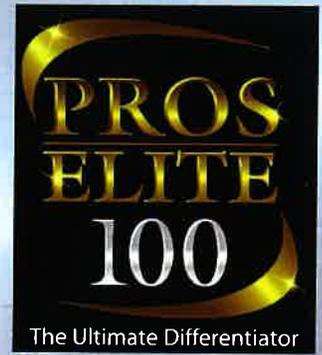


# CAPITAL

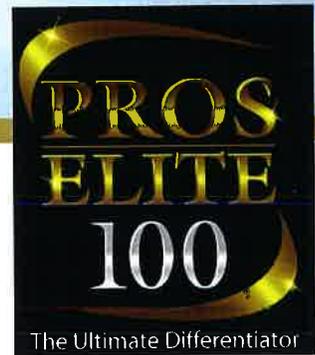
## BUSINESS SYSTEMS, INC.

*Board Copy  
Received 5-1-24*





Capital Business Systems, Inc.  
is proud to announce its  
selection by  
PROs Elite, *the co-authors of  
the Document Imaging  
Industry Service benchmark  
model*, as one of the  
**Top 100 Servicing dealers  
in the United States.**  
Only one dealer in any  
Market can achieve this  
Elite recognition and  
Capital Business Systems, Inc.  
earned that recognition.



**The Commitment to achieve PROs Elite 100 certification began with a complete assessment of our current service operations by the PROs executive team.**

**An action plan for achieving PROs Elite 100 benchmark standards for Service Excellence was built off of this assessment by the PROs expert staff.**

- ◆ We committed to executing the action plan and achieved the customer benchmarks.
- ◆ We committed to train our Service Management in Advanced Service Management skills.
- ◆ We trained our Executive team in Customer focused leadership and strategic planning skills.
- ◆ We trained our whole organization in Elite Customer Relations Management skills.
- ◆ We taught our Sales Reps how to develop customer solutions based on this certification.
- ◆ We committed to having our Service results audited on an ongoing basis by the PROs Elite team.
- ◆ We committed to ongoing coaching in the tactics to insure our audited customer results remain at or above the PROs standards.
- ◆ We annually attend roundtable discussions with other PROs Elite 100 dealers to develop technologies and solutions that resolve strategic issues facing the office imaging customer.
- ◆ We will earn certification annually to insure that our customers' ongoing experience is consistent with the services offered by PROs Elite 100 dealers throughout the United States.





# PROPOSAL



**HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS** Home of the Bobcats

**Prepared for:** Hemingford Public School

**Prepared by:** Chris Allen, [callen@capitalmds.com](mailto:callen@capitalmds.com)

**Date:** April 30, 2024

*The contents of this proposal are confidential trade secret information and are intended for the use of the intended customer only. The contents herein may not be reproduced without the specific written permission of Capital Business Systems, Inc. This is a proposal only and informative in nature. Actual contract terms and conditions, as well as final pricing, will be submitted upon request.*

**Proposed Pricing is effective for 60 days from 4/30/24**

[www.capitalMDS.com](http://www.capitalMDS.com)

“ We consider our clientele to be *associates*, not just customers, and treat them accordingly. Our services are always hands-on, with proactive maintenance the norm. The industry service awards we've won have proven that we understand clearer than most companies how to listen to our clients and address their needs.

*James Kreikemeier, President  
Capital Business Systems*

1

**Equipment Performance**

If you are not satisfied with your equipment, we will replace it

2

**Service Response**

We will respond to your service call within four hours in Zone 1

3

**Reliability Guarantee**

We offer every client a 98% level of uptime

4

**Parts and Supplies**

Local inventory of authorized parts and supplies

5

**Factory Trained Technicians**

All technicians trained by a manufacturer certified instructor

We will *exceed* your expectations, every day.

[www.capitalMDS.com](http://www.capitalMDS.com)

## Proven Leadership

Capital Business Systems was founded on a cornerstone of quality, integrity, and honesty. Today, as a locally owned and operated office technology and document management company, we offer the best document imaging technology from the world's leading companies and support their products with a commitment to 100% customer satisfaction.

## Customer Satisfaction Guarantee

At Capital Business Systems, we do not make promises we cannot keep and the ones we do make, we live up to 100%. In fact, we are so confident in the reliability and performance of our products and our people, we put our promises to you in our Customer Satisfaction Guarantee.

## Selection

**RICOH**

**Canon**<sup>®</sup>

 Microsoft



**RICOH**  
**GreenLine**<sup>™</sup>



**datto**

## Services



### MANAGED NETWORK SERVICES

Capital Business Systems can consolidate, integrate, and manage your network with predictable technology costs, network accountability, and improved uptime. Our holistic Managed Network Services solution allows you to transfer the risk and accountability of your network to us, so you can continue growing your business - something that typical break/fix service models can't offer.



### MANAGED PRINT SERVICES

Capital Business System's Managed Print Services reduce the burden of printing maintenance on your finances, as well as on your office staff. We ensure that your software and drivers are proactively updated, we identify potential problems before costly repairs are needed, and we provide you with easy access to all the relevant printing supplies.



### MANAGED DOCUMENT SERVICES

Our Managed Document Services provide you with the ability to digitally manage your complete document workflow, increasing productivity, enhancing privacy and reducing costs simultaneously. Managed Document Services typically include storage, retrieval, access control, remote access, audit control, security, backup and disaster recovery.

[www.capitalMDS.com](http://www.capitalMDS.com)

## Acquisition Solutions Program

The Capital Business Systems Acquisition Solutions Program is another component to help improve your document management system while keeping expenses under control. We will customize an acquisition program that fits the needs of your organization. Our goal is to provide your organization with the technology that is best suited to the dynamics of your business.



### Flexible Financing

To ensure that your program fits comfortably within your budget



### Single Invoice

One all-inclusive invoice covering equipment, service and most supplies



### National Account Program

For out-of-region product placement, in addition to ongoing service and support



### Managed Print Services

Let us optimize, manage and improve your entire document production environment

## Equipment Service and Support

Capital Business Systems, Inc. is committed to customer satisfaction. Our technicians are measured and compensated under programs that align with our client's desire for maximum system uptime. Each system is assigned a primary and secondary technician to meet reliability and response time expectations. Our technicians carry smartphones that allow them to search service histories, and parts inventories, clear calls, and instantly receive your service request.

Capital Business Systems is a **Canon & Ricoh Authorized Training Center**. Only the top dealer organizations make the investment to provide superior customer service and hold this certification.

## Computer and Networking Certifications



## Warranty Period



The Service and Supply Agreement have calculated the **90-day warranty period** offered with all equipment. Please contact us for additional details.

[www.capitalMDS.com](http://www.capitalMDS.com)

## ***Delivery and Installation***



**Delivery** includes set-up, attachment of accessories, quality check of all functions, and physical delivery to your location. This is included in the initial investment.



**Installation** includes locating system in designated area, connection of hardware accessories, and connection to appropriate power source. *(It is the responsibility of the customer to provide appropriate power configuration and network connectivity at their location).*



**Use and Function Training** is provided to help you truly leverage the technology. Installation and training staff will provide basic training at time of installation. Detailed application training is arranged with you per your request, as long as the system is maintained under a service agreement with Capital Business Systems. *(We will work with you and your staff's schedule. We can provide specific training per your request, i.e. small groups, individual, etc.)*

## ***Network Connectivity and Support***



We provide post-installation integration and support services. A vendor-trained Capital Business Systems representative will work with your internal staff to integrate your system with your network after installation.

## ***Additional Considerations***

All pricing quoted in this proposal is exclusive of sales, use, and/or property taxes, if applicable. Normal delivery time frames are 10-20 business days from receipt of authorized documents. Capital Business Systems cannot be held responsible for delays resulting from manufacturer backorders, erroneous shipments, or other circumstances beyond our control.

Capital Business Systems is committed to performing account reviews to ensure that equipment is meeting expectations and fulfilling the needs of the workgroup it supports. This also encompasses the tracking of volume levels to realize maximum efficiencies.

***It is our goal to partner with you to help you reach your business goals.***

## Company Executives

**James Kreikemeier**

President

**Laurie Davis**

Executive Vice-President

**Jack Lyman**

Chief Financial Officer

**Jeremy Reimers**

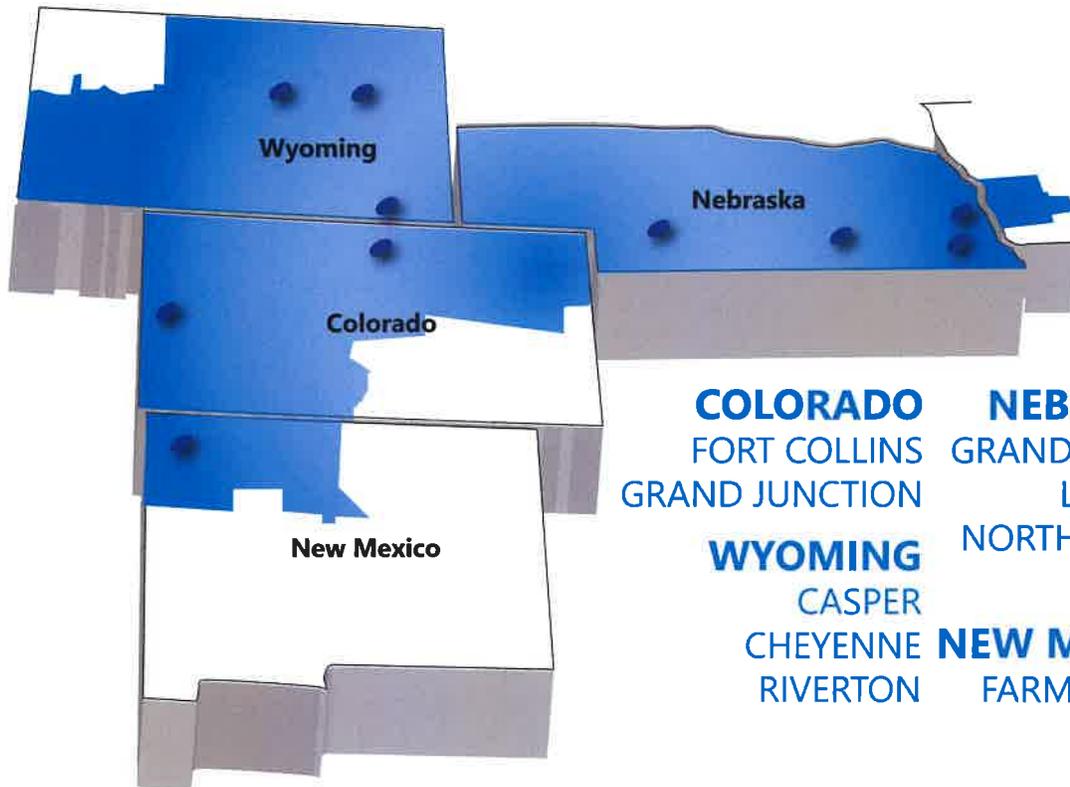
Vice President of Sales and Marketing

**Cliff Davis**

Vice President of Service

*To place a service call, request supplies, or discuss accounts payable or receivables, please call 800-221-0604*

## Office Locations



### **COLORADO**

FORT COLLINS  
GRAND JUNCTION

### **WYOMING**

CASPER  
CHEYENNE  
RIVERTON

### **NEBRASKA**

GRAND ISLAND  
LINCOLN  
NORTH PLATTE  
OMAHA

### **NEW MEXICO**

FARMINGTON

## **Proposed Solution**

In order to meet the needs and requests of the district, we have proposed the 8 devices below to replace your current machines. They are all new Canon devices ordered from the factory. We took a 3-pronged approach to give you the best solution possible by requesting our best hardware price, lease rate and service rates. We have the base proposed service set up as all pages billed in arrears, as your current contract is. This is better for the district, as it allows you to pay for only what is printed and keep you from being over committed on pages. The option for the 50,000 pages per month is below.

### **New Canon iRA DX C3930i: Administration (1)**

- Print, Copy, Scan, Fax
- Color print at 30-pages per minute
- Paper Capacity of up to 1,200, paper size up to 12x18
- Single Pass Duplex Scanner, up to 270 images per minute

### **New Canon iRA DX C5850i: Elementary and HS workroom, Front Office (3)**

- Print, Copy, Scan, Fax
- Color print at 50-pages per minute
- Paper Capacity of up to 3,650
- Single Pass Duplex Scanner, up to 270 images per minute
- 3,500 Sheet External Staple Finisher with Convenience Stapler

### **New Canon MF1333C: E/W Modulars, HS Library, Ag/Shop (4)**

- Print, Copy, Scan, Fax
- Color print at 35-pages per minute
- Paper Capacity of up to 300
- Single Pass Duplex Scanner, up to 70 images per minute

## **Financial Overview**

### **48 Month Lease Agreement \$845.24+tax/Month**

- Includes Property Tax and Net 60 Payment Terms
- Includes the 8 devices above as configured
- Continued Papercut Support for the term
- Delivery, Networking, Training Included

### **Service Contract**

- Runs concurrent with lease, no annual renewal
- Parts, Service, Labor and Toner Included
- 10% annual Service increase
- Includes Staples
- All pages billed monthly in arrears as follows: **or**
  - C3930/C5860: Mono - \$0.0038, Color - \$0.038
  - MF1333: Mono - \$0.010, Color - \$0.070

50,000 pages per month = \$221.00/mo  
(45,000 BW Pages = \$171.00/mo)  
(5,000 BW pages = \$50.00/mo)

**Additional Considerations:**

Capital Business Systems has been providing industry leading technology for 50+ years and is the largest dealer in Nebraska, with nearly 9,600 devices being supported by our team. We have 3 service techs within the area that help us to achieve a 90+% uptime on your fleet. I hope our last 5-years of service show our capabilities. With Canon, your devices has the ability to analyze themselves and place service calls before problems arise. That along with our ability for auto-toner replenishment, means there are very little supplies left on-site. Our team will train your staff during delivery and anytime during your contract. Luckily, sticking with Canon will make this an easy task. Please feel free to contact any of our references below.

**Beatrice Public Schools**

Jason Alexander, Supt. (402)223-1504  
jalexander@bpsnebr.org  
Ryan McDowell, IT (402)223-5277  
rmcdowell@esu5.org

**Norris Public Schools**

Noel Erskine, IT  
402-791-0045  
noel.erskine@nsdtitans.org

**Grand Island Public Schools**

Cory Gearhart, CIO  
308-385-5900  
cgearhart@gips.org

**ESU 13**

B.J. Peters, Director of Technology  
308-635-3696  
bpeters@esu13.org

**Leyton Public Schools**

Matt McLaughlin, Supt.  
308-377-2301  
matt.mclaughlin@leytonwarriors.org

**Chadron Public Schools**

Ginger Meyer, Supt.  
308-432-0700  
ginger.meyer@chadronschools.net



# Measuring Customer Satisfaction

Many companies claim that they have the "Best service in the business" but few even have a way to measure how happy customers are. Here at Capital Business Systems Inc we have a system that allows us to capture feedback after every service call. We use the Net Promoter Score system [www.netpromoter.com](http://www.netpromoter.com)

The average N. American company has a Net Promoter Score® of 30.

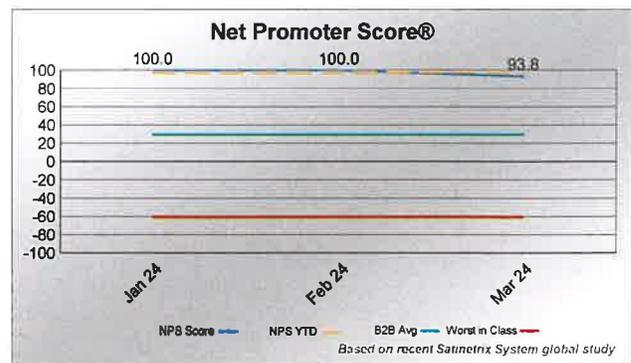
Some well-loved companies reach scores into the 70s and 80s

NPS® Leaders - N. America 2023		
Company		NPS
Amazon		83
T-Mobile		82
USAA		75
Southwest		71
Apple		61

NPS scores published by Satmetrix Systems



The Net Promoter Score (NPS)®, is a straightforward loyalty metric that holds companies and employees accountable for how they treat customers. It is both a loyalty metric and a discipline for using customer feedback to fuel profitable growth in your business. Employees at all levels of the organization understand it, opening doors to customer centric change and improved performance.



Data Collection and NPS® Verification powered by CEO Juice Inc.

Capital Business Systems Inc | 4812 McMurry Ave, Fort Collins, CO 80525 | (800) 221-0604

\* Ranking among US and Canada copier dealers using the NPS® system provided by CEO Juice.

\*\* Net Promoter, NPS, and Net Promoter Score are trademarks of Satmetrix Systems, Inc., Bain & Company, and Fred Reichheld

# WINNER

## BLI 2022-2024 MOST RELIABLE A3 BRAND AWARD

### We might need a bigger trophy case ...



Keypoint Intelligence rigorously tested **23** Canon MFP devices over the course of **5 years** against its competitors.

imageRUNNER  
ADVANCE



CANON HAD ONLY  
**6 MISFEEDS**

THAT'S A RATE OF  
1 IN 742,500

OUT OF  
**4,455,000 PAGES**

▶ THAT'S A MINISCULE 0.000135%

**4,455,000** is a **BIG** number! It's equivalent to approximately ...



WEIGHT IN POUNDS OF  
**11 BLUE WHALES**



MILES TRAVELED IN  
**179 TRIPS AROUND THE WORLD**



HEIGHT IN FEET OF  
**153 MOUNT EVERESTS**  
STACKED ON TOP OF EACH OTHER



When it comes to your business needs, Canon shows up **BIG**.  
To learn more about Canon's recent awards, visit [usa.canon.com/iradvawards](https://usa.canon.com/iradvawards).



BLI Reliability Award based on devices tested from 2017 through 2021.  
Winner of the BLI A3 Line of the Year Award 2016, 2017, 2018, 2020, 2022.

As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. qualified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon and imageRUNNER are registered trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All printer output images are simulated. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

© 2023 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.  
07/23-0361

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C3900 Series

Print up to 35 ppm (BW/color)

Scan up to 270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" x 18"

2,300-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.

Color  
Low- to Mid-volume  
Multifunction



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- A large, 10.1" responsive and intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability, making operation clear and virtually seamless.
- Consistent interface across the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX product line, allowing work to proceed effortlessly and with a minimal learning curve.
- A unique, customized experience that can be tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Easily scan to, and print from, cloud services or email directly from the device User Interface.<sup>2</sup>



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM<sup>2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at setup. Includes automatic recovery of boot process for self resiliency.
- Trellix<sup>™</sup> Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes whitelisting to help protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security settings can be established at once by selecting the environment type in Recommended Security Settings. Security policy settings can be configured from a central location and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images, thanks to Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications that help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability. This includes the 2022-2024 BLI Most Reliable A3 Brand Award from Keypoint Intelligence.

<sup>1</sup> Security Information and Event Management.  
<sup>2</sup> Optional Cloud Connector term license required.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.

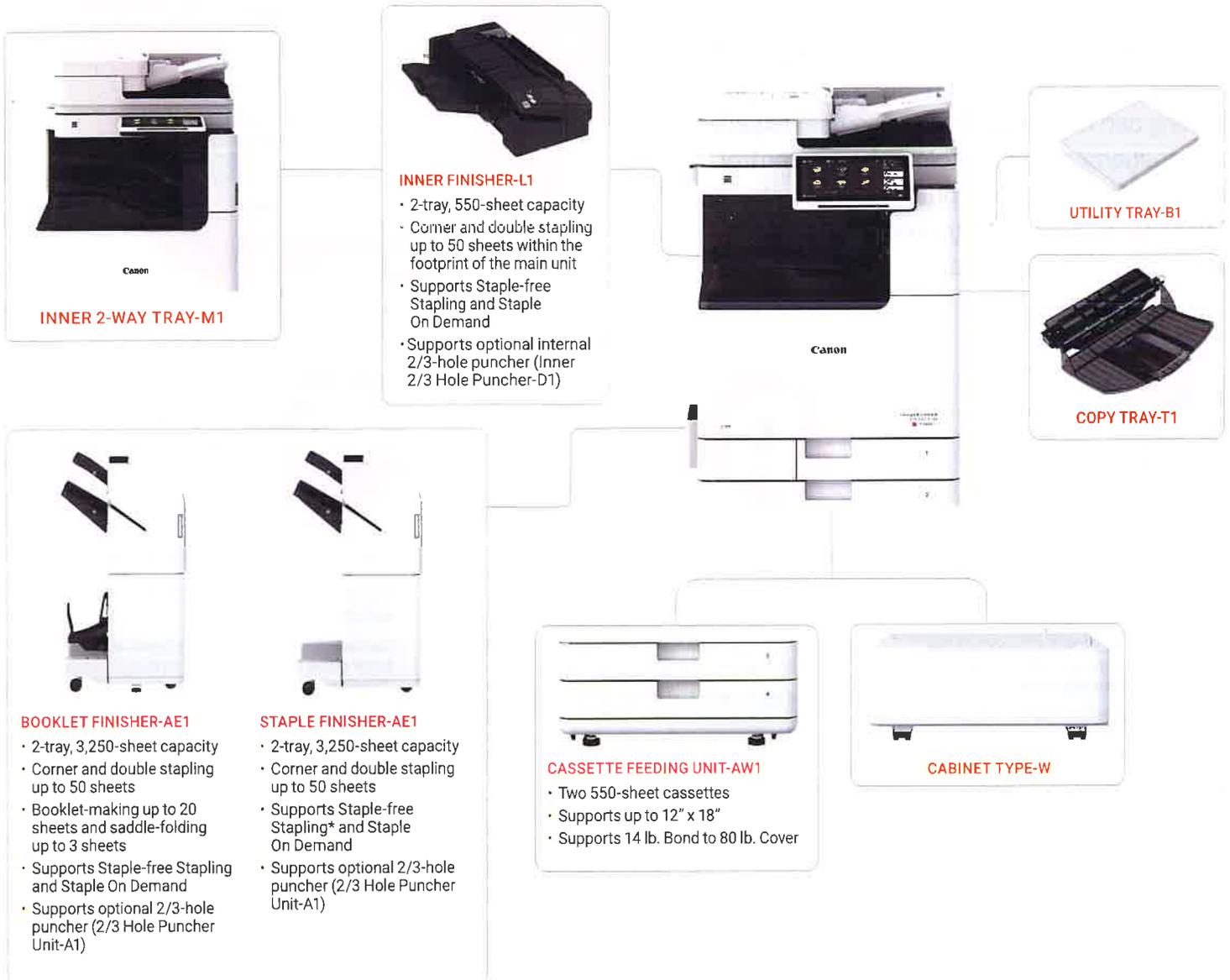


## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and lower-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Cardboard is now utilized as a sustainable packaging solution.
- Drum covers are constructed of regrind plastic, helping to lower environmental impact.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and rated EPEAT® Gold.<sup>5</sup>

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C3900 Series



\* Staple-Free stapling, up to 10 pages of 17 lb. Bond.

**Main Unit****Type**

Color Laser Multifunctional

**Core Functions**Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax**Processor**

1.8 GHz Dual Core Processor

**Control Panel**

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Touch-panel

**Memory**

3.5 GB RAM

**Solid State Drive**

Standard: 256 GB/Maximum: 1 TB

**Interface Connection**Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Optional: Wireless LAN Board F-1  
Others  
Standard: USB 2.0 x1 (Host), USB 3.0 x1 (Host),  
USB 2.0 x1 (Device)  
Optional: Copy Control Interface, Serial Interface**Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 2,300 Sheets**Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Multipurpose Tray  
Optional: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Feeding Unit-AW1)**Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with Staple Finisher-AE1/Booklet  
Finisher-AE1 and Copy Tray-T1)**Finishing Capabilities**Standard: Collate, Group  
With Finishers: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch,  
Hole Punch, Eco Staple, Staple On Demand**Supported Media Types**Multi-purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Heavy, Recycled, Coated,  
Color, Tracing, Bond, Transparency,  
Label, Pre-punched, Envelope,  
Postcard, Letterhead  
Upper Cassette: Thin, Plain, Heavy, Recycled, Color,  
Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Pre-  
punched, Envelope, Postcard, Letterhead  
Lower Cassette: Thin, Plain, Heavy, Recycled, Color,  
Bond, Transparency, Pre-punched,  
Envelope<sup>6</sup>, Postcard, Letterhead**Supported Media Sizes**Multi-purpose Tray: 12"x18", 11"x17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R  
Custom Size/Free Size: 4" x 5-7/8" to  
12" x 18", Envelopes (COM10 No.10,  
Monarch, ISO-C5, DL), Envelope Custom  
Size ( 3-7/8" x 3-7/8" to 12-5/8" x 18")  
Letter, Executive, Statement-R  
Upper Cassette: Custom Size (4-1/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x  
8-1/2"), Envelopes (ISO-C5)  
Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Custom Size  
(4-1/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18"), Envelopes<sup>6</sup>  
(COM10 No.10, Monarch, DL)**Supported Media Weights**Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Multipurpose Tray: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)**Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)**C3935i: Up to 35 ppm (Letter); Up to 23 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 17 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")  
Up to 30 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")  
C3930i: Up to 26 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")  
C3926i: Up to 26 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")**Warm-up Time**From Power On: Approx. 10 Seconds<sup>7</sup>  
From Sleep Mode: Approx. 10 Seconds<sup>8</sup>  
Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>9</sup>**Dimensions (W x D x H)**22-1/4" x 28-1/2" x 35-3/8" (565 mm x 722 mm x 897 mm)<sup>10</sup>**Installation Space (W x D)**Basic: 38-1/2" x 44-1/8" (978 mm x 1119 mm)<sup>11</sup>  
Fully Configured: 65" x 44-1/8" (1651 mm x 1119 mm)<sup>12</sup>  
Weight: Approx. 187.4 lb. (85 kg) including toner**Print Specifications**

Print Resolution (dpi): 1200 x 600, 1200 x 1200

**Standard Page Description Languages**UFR II, PCL<sup>®</sup> 6, Adobe<sup>®</sup> PS<sup>®</sup> 3**Supported File Types**

PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS, XPS

**Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-  
based solutions (including Cloud Connector, AirPrint,  
Mopria, Universal Print by Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Canon PRINT  
Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide  
printing from mobile devices or internet-connected  
devices and cloud-based services depending on your  
requirements. Please contact your sales representative  
for further information.**Fonts**PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional  
Chinese),<sup>13</sup> Barcode Fonts<sup>14</sup>  
PS: 136 Roman**Operating System<sup>15</sup>**UFR II/PS: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022,  
macOS (10.13 or later)  
PCL: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022  
PS: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022,  
macOS (10.13 or later)  
PPD: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11, macOS (10.13 or later)**Copy Specifications****First-Copy-Out Time (LTR)**C3935i: Approx. 5.5 seconds (BW)/  
7.4 seconds (Color)  
C3930i/  
C3926i: Approx. 6.1 seconds (BW)/  
8.4 seconds (Color)**Copy Resolution (dpi)**

600 x 600

**Multiple Copies**

Up to 999

**Magnification**

25%-400% (1% Increments)

**Presets Reduction/Enlargement**25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%, 200%,  
400%**Scan Specifications****Type**Single-pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder<sup>16</sup>**Document Feeder Paper Capacity**

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

**Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes**11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17" (69.9 mm x 139.7  
mm to 304.8 mm x 431.8 mm)**Document Feeder Supported Media Weights**BW/Color: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to  
Original: 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)**Platen Acceptable Originals**

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

**Platen Maximum Scanning Size**

Up to 11-3/4" x 17" (297.0 mm x 431.8 mm)

**Pull Scan**Color Network ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
Supported OS: Windows<sup>®</sup> 8.1/10/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016**Scan Resolution (dpi)**Scan for Copy: 600 x 600  
Scan for Send: Push (600 x 600), SMB/FTP/WebDAV,  
Pull (600 x 600)  
Scan for Fax: 600 x 600**Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to  
mobile devices and cloud-based services depending on  
your requirements.**Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)**Single-sided Scanning: 135 ipm (300 dpi)/80 ipm (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning: 270 ipm (300 dpi)/160/90 ipm (600 dpi)**Send Specifications****Destination**Standard: E-mail/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB 3.0,  
FTP, WebDAV, Mail Box  
Optional: Super G3 FAX, IP Fax**Address Book**

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

**Send Resolution (dpi)**Push: Up to 600 x 600 dpi  
Pull: Up to 600 x 600 dpi**Communication Protocol**File: FTP (TCP/IP), SMB 3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV  
Email: SMTP, POP3**File Format**TIFF, JPEG, PDF(Compact, Searchable, Apply Policy,  
Optimize for Web, PDF/A-1b, Trace & Smooth, Encrypted,  
Device Signature, User Signature), XPS (Compact,  
Searchable, Device Signature, User Signature), Office  
Open XML (PowerPoint, Word)**Fax Specifications****Maximum Number of Connection Lines**

2

**Modem Speed**Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps**Compression Method**

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

**Resolution (dpi)**

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

**Sending/Receiving Size**

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

**Fax Memory**

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 Jobs)

**Speed Dials**

Max. 200

**Group Dials/Destinations**

Max. 199 Dials

**Sequential Broadcast**

Max. 256 Addresses

**Memory Backup**

Yes

## Store Specifications

### Box (Number Supported)

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 10,000 Pages (2,000 Jobs Stored)

### Advanced Box

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV Supported

Client PC: Windows® 10/11

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3 (Active Sessions)

### Advanced Box Available Disc Space

Standard: 16 GB (With Option: max. 480 GB)

## Security Specifications

### Authentication and Access Control

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express™ (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

### Document Security

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>13</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax Inbox Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle® Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Space Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

### Network Security

TLS 1.3, IPsec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), WPA3 support (Wi-Fi), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), Communication Line Separation (G3 FAX, USB Port, Advanced Space, Scan and Send-Virus Concerns for E-mail Reception)

### Device Security

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFP Software Integrity, Automatic Recovery, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection with Trellix Embedded Control)

### Device Management and Auditing

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F

Humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (Relative Humidity)

### Power Requirements

110V-127V, 60Hz, 8.5A

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1,500 W

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>19</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>20</sup>

C3935i: 0.33 kWh

C3930i: 0.29 kWh

C3926i: 0.26 kWh

### Standards

ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Certified  
Rated EPEAT<sup>®</sup> Gold<sup>5</sup>

## Consumables

### Toner<sup>21</sup>

GPR-66 Toner BK/C/M/Y

GPR-66L Toner C/M/Y

### Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)

GPR-66 Toner

BK: 38,000 pages

GPR-66 Toner

C/M/Y: 25,500 pages

GPR-66L Toner

C/M/Y: 11,000 pages

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service providers' Terms and Conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.

<sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.

<sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.

<sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>6</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment A (standard) is required.

<sup>7</sup> Time from device power-on until copy ready (not print reservation).

<sup>8</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.

<sup>9</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.

<sup>10</sup> Includes Single Pass DADF.

<sup>11</sup> With right cover open + Multi-purpose tray extension extended + paper cassette open.

<sup>12</sup> Includes Staple Finisher-AE1/Booklet Finisher-AE1 + Copy Tray-T1 extension extended + paper cassette open.

<sup>13</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>14</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>15</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix, may be supported. Some solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>16</sup> Detect Feeder Multi Sheet Feed is supported.

<sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.

<sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>19</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>20</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

<sup>21</sup> GPR-66L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y). Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 11,000 images.

As an ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Some security features may impact functionality/performance; you may want to test these settings in your environment. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Trellix and the Trellix logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Musarubra US LLC or its subsidiaries in the U.S. and other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All printer output images are simulated. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Products shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.  
©2023 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.



Trellix

CANON  
GENUINE  
TONER, CARTRIDGE  
& PARTS



Canon

USA.CANON.COM/SIMPLYADVANCED



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit  
[usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).



imageRUNNER  
ADVANCE DX  
C5870i / C5860i  
C5850i / C5840i

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series

Color  
Mid-volume  
Multifunction

Print up to 70 ppm (BW/color)

Scan up to 270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" × 18"

6,350-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 10.1" intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- A unique, customized experience tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Hot Folders allow users to drag and drop a file into a hot folder and automatically print with pre-defined settings such as number of copies and finishing requirements.
- Easily scan to, and print from, cloud services or email directly from the device User Interface.<sup>2</sup>



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM<sup>\*2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at startup. Trellix<sup>™</sup> Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes a whitelist to protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security policy settings can be controlled with a dedicated password, configured from a central location, and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features, using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images, thanks to Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications that help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability.

\* Security Information and Event Management.

\*\* Optional Cloud Connector term license required.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.

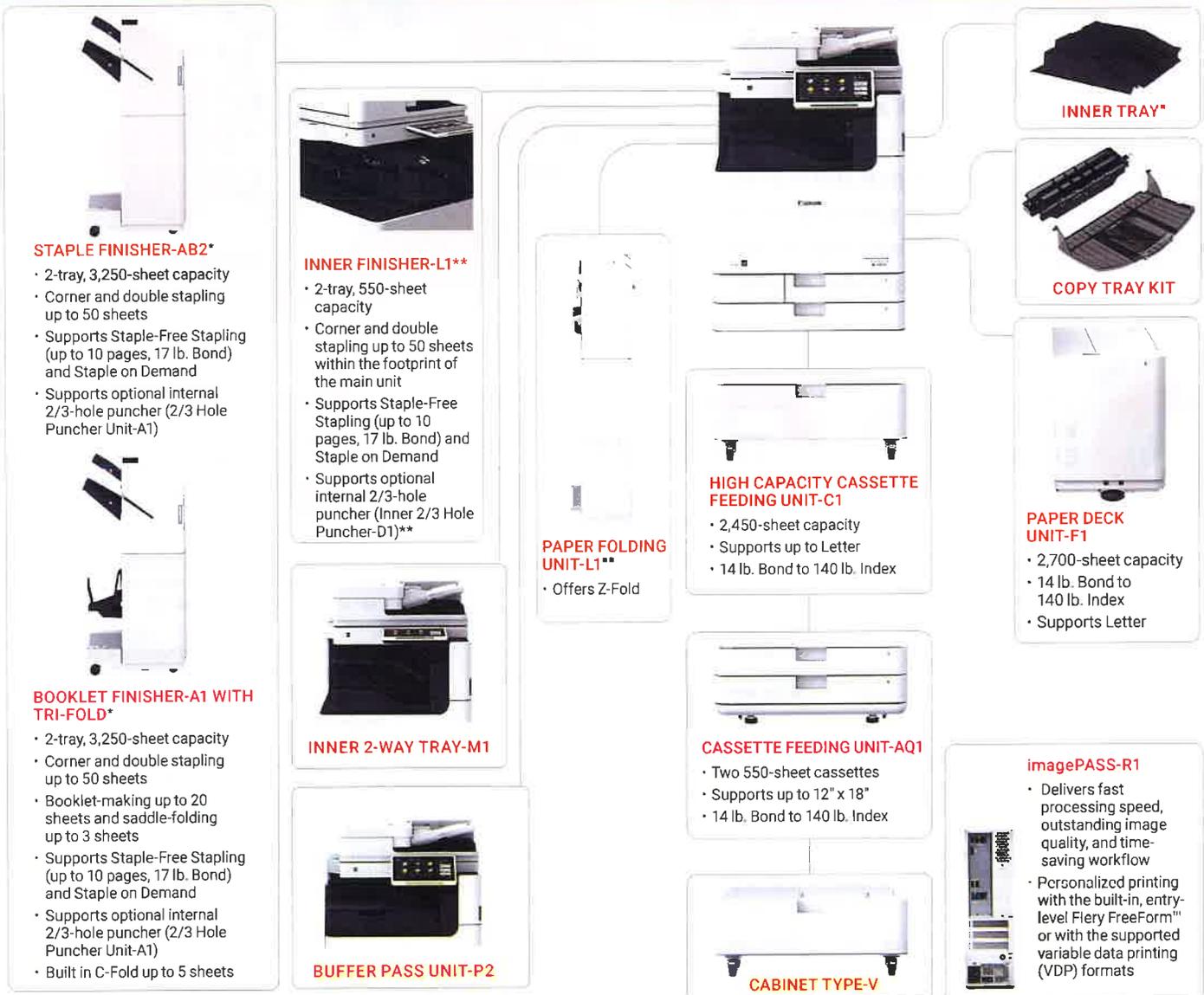


## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified, registered as EPEAT® Gold, also attained EPEAT Climate+.<sup>5</sup>

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series



\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2.  
 \*\* Inner Finisher L1 and Inner 2/3 Hole Puncher D1 not available on the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5870i.  
 \* Required when Staple Finisher-AB2/Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Inner Finisher-L1 is not installed.  
 \*\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2 and either Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Staple Finisher-AB2.

**Main Unit**

<b>Type</b>	Color Laser Multifunctional
<b>Core Functions</b>	Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store Optional: Fax
<b>Control Panel</b>	10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Flat-panel
<b>Memory</b>	5.0 GB RAM
<b>Solid State Drive</b>	Standard: 256 GB Optional: 1 TB
<b>Interface Connection</b>	Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T, Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n) Optional: Bluetooth Low Energy Others: Standard: USB 2.0 (Host) x1, USB 3.0 (Host) x1, USB 2.0 (Device) x1 Optional: Copy Control Interface
<b>Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)</b>	Standard: 250 Sheets Maximum: 3,450 Sheets (with Staple Finisher-AB2 or Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold and 3rd Copy Tray Kit-A1)
<b>Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)</b>	Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes, 100-sheet Stack Bypass Optional: Dual 550-Sheet Paper Cassettes (Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1), 2,450-Sheet High Capacity Paper Cassette (High Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1), 2,700-Sheet Paper Deck (Paper Deck Unit-F1)
<b>Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)</b>	Standard: 1,200 Sheets Maximum: 6,350 Sheets
<b>Finishing Capabilities</b>	Standard: Collate, Group With Options: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch, Hole Punch, Staple Free Stapling, Staple On Demand <sup>6</sup>
<b>Supported Media Types</b>	Multi-Purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Coated, Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Label, Pre-punched, Letterhead, Tab, Envelope Paper Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Bond, Transparency, Pre-punched, Letterhead, Envelope <sup>7</sup>
<b>Supported Media Sizes</b>	Upper Cassette: Letter, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5], Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x 8-1/2") Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5], Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18") Multi-Purpose Tray: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Executive, Statement, Statement-R, Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5], Envelope Custom Size (3-7/8" x 3-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18"), Custom Size/Free Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18")
<b>Supported Media Weights</b>	Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Stack Bypass: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
<b>Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)</b>	C5870i: Up to 70 ppm (Letter); Up to 42 ppm (Letter-R); Up to 40 ppm (Legal); Up to 35 ppm (11" x 17") C5860i: Up to 60 ppm (Letter); Up to 36 ppm (Letter-R); Up to 34 ppm (Legal); Up to 32 ppm (11" x 17") C5850i: Up to 50 ppm (Letter); Up to 30 ppm (Letter-R); Up to 29 ppm (Legal); Up to 27 ppm (11" x 17") C5840i: Up to 40 ppm (Letter); Up to 24 ppm (Letter-R); Up to 23 ppm (Legal); Up to 21 ppm (11" x 17")

<b>Warm-up Time</b>	From Power On: Approx. 6 Seconds <sup>8</sup> From Sleep Mode <sup>9</sup> : C5870i: Approx. 7 Seconds C5860i/ C5850i/ C5840i: Approx. 6 Seconds Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds <sup>10</sup>
<b>Dimensions (W x D x H)</b>	24-3/8" x 28-1/2" x 36-7/8" (620 x 722 x 937 mm) <sup>11</sup>
<b>Installation Space (W x D)</b>	Basic: 44-7/8" x 45-3/4" (1,138 x 1,162 mm) (Right Cover Open with Multi-purpose tray extended + Cassette Drawers Open) Fully Configured: 73-1/2" x 45-3/4" (1,866 x 1,162 mm) (Staple Finisher-AB1 or Booklet Finisher-AB1 with the extension tray extended + Paper Deck Unit-F1 + Cassette Drawers open)
<b>Weight<sup>12</sup></b>	C5870i: Approx. 238.1 lb. (108 kg) C5860i/ C5850i: Approx. 231.5 lb. (105 kg) C5840i: Approx. 229.3 lb. (104 kg)

**Print Specifications**

<b>Print Resolution (dpi)</b>	1200 x 1200
<b>Standard Page Description Languages</b>	UFR II, PCL6, Adobe PS 3
<b>Supported File Types</b>	PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS, <sup>13</sup> XPS
<b>Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services</b>	A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including Cloud Connector, AirPrint, Mopria, Universal Print by Microsoft <sup>®</sup> , Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.
<b>Fonts</b>	PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts, Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese, Korean, Simplified and Traditional Chinese), <sup>14</sup> Barcode Fonts <sup>15</sup> PS: 136 Roman
<b>Operating System<sup>16</sup></b>	UFR II/PS: Windows <sup>®</sup> 7/8.1/10/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019, Mac OS X (10.11 or later) PCL: Windows <sup>®</sup> 7/8.1/10/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019 PPD: Windows <sup>®</sup> 7/8.1/10, Mac OS X (10.10 or later)

**Copy Specifications**

<b>First-Copy-Out Time</b>	C5870i: As fast as 2.7 seconds (BW)/ 3.7 seconds (Color) C5860i: As fast as 2.9 seconds (BW)/ 4.2 seconds (Color) C5850i: As fast as 3.3 seconds (BW)/ 4.9 seconds (Color) C5840i: As fast as 4.1 seconds (BW)/ 6.1 seconds (Color)
<b>Copy Resolution (dpi)</b>	600 x 600
<b>Multiple Copies</b>	Up to 999
<b>Magnification</b>	25%-400% (1% Increments)
<b>Preset Reductions/Enlargements</b>	25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%, 200%, 400%

**Scan Specifications**

<b>Type</b>	Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder
<b>Document Feeder Paper Capacity</b>	Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)
<b>Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes</b>	11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R, Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17"
<b>Document Feeder Supported Media Weights</b>	Single-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm) (BW, CL) Double-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm) (BW, CL)
<b>Platen Acceptable Originals</b>	Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects
<b>Pull Scan</b>	Color Network ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA Supported OS: Windows <sup>®</sup> 7/8.1/10/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/Server 2016
<b>Scan Resolution (dpi)</b>	Scan for Copy: 600 x 600 Scan for Send: (Push) 600 x 600 (SMB/FTP/WebDAV/IFAX), (Pull) 600 x 600 Scan for Fax: 600 x 600

**Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**  
A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to compatible mobile devices and certain cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

<b>Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)</b>	Single-sided Scanning: 135/135 (300 dpi), 80/80 (600 dpi) Double-sided Scanning: 270/270 (300 dpi), 160/90 (600 dpi)
---------------------------------	---

**Send Specifications**

<b>Destination</b>	Standard: Email/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB3.0, FTP, WebDAV, Mail Box Optional: Super G3 FAX, IP Fax
<b>Address Book</b>	LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)
<b>Send Resolution (dpi)</b>	Push: Up to 600 x 600 Pull: Up to 600 x 600
<b>Communication Protocol</b>	File: FTP (TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV Email: SMTP, POP3
<b>File Format</b>	Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Encrypted, Compact, Searchable, Apply Policy, Optimize for Web, User Signature, PDF A/1-b, Limited Color, Device Signature, User Signature), XPS (Compact, Searchable, Device Signature, User Signature), Office Open XML (PowerPoint, Word)

**Fax Specifications (Optional)**

<b>Modem Speed</b>	Super G3: 33.6 Kbps G3: 14.4 Kbps
<b>Compression Method</b>	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
<b>Resolution (dpi)</b>	400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100
<b>Sending/Recording Size</b>	Statement-R to 11" x 17"
<b>Fax Memory</b>	Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs)
<b>Speed Dials</b>	Max. 200
<b>Group Dials/Destinations</b>	Max. 199 Dials
<b>Sequential Broadcast</b>	Max. 256 Addresses
<b>Memory Backup</b>	Yes

**Store Specifications**

**Mail Box (Number Supported)**

100 User Inboxes, 1 Memory RX Inbox, 50 Confidential Fax Inboxes, Maximum 10,000 Pages (2,000 jobs) Stored

**Advanced Box**

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV Supported

Client PC: Windows (Windows 8.1/10)

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64  
WebDAV: 3

**Advanced Box Available Disc Space**

Approx. 16 GB (Standard HDD)  
Approx. 480 GB (With Optional 1 TB HDD)

**Security Specifications**

**Authentication and Access Control**

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express<sup>17</sup> (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

**Document Security**

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>18</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax Inbox Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle<sup>®</sup> Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Box Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted Email/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

**Network Security**

TLS 1.3, IPsec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN, Prohibit the execution of files stored in Advanced Box in the MFP, Scan and Send Virus Concerns for Email Reception

**Device Security**

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFD Software Integrity, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection with Trellix Embedded Control)

**Device Management and Auditing**

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

**Environmental Specifications**

**Operating Environment**

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F  
Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (Relative Humidity)

**Power Requirements**

C5870i/  
C5860i/ 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 12 A  
C5850i:  
C5840i: 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 10 A

**Power Consumption**

Maximum: Approx. 1,800 W  
Standby: Approx. 56.1 W<sup>19</sup>  
Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>20</sup>  
Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>21</sup>  
C5870i: 0.86 kWh  
C5860i: 0.71 kWh  
C5850i: 0.57 kWh  
C5840i: 0.47 kWh

**Standards**

ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Certified  
EPEAT Gold with Climate+

**Consumables**

**Toner<sup>22</sup>**

GPR-61 Toner BK/C/M/Y  
GPR-61L Toner C/M/Y

**Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)**

GPR-61 Toner  
BK: 71,000 Pages  
GPR-61 Toner  
C/M/Y: 60,000 Pages  
GPR-61L Toner  
C/M/Y: 26,000 Pages

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service provider's Terms and Conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.

<sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.

<sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.

<sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>6</sup> Finishing capabilities vary depending on the options connected.

<sup>7</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment (standard) is required.

<sup>8</sup> Time from device power-on until copy ready (not print reservation).

<sup>9</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.

<sup>10</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.

<sup>11</sup> Includes main unit and standard ADF.

<sup>12</sup> Includes main unit, consumables, and Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1.

<sup>13</sup> EPS can be printed directly only from the Remote User Interface.

<sup>14</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>15</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>16</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix may be supported. Some of these solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.

<sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>19</sup> Reference Value (measured one unit).

<sup>20</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>21</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

<sup>22</sup> GPR-61L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y). Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 26,000 images.



**Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5870i**  
Outstanding 70-ppm A3 Color MFP

**Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5860i**  
Outstanding 60-ppm A3 Color MFP

**Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5840i**  
Outstanding 40-ppm A3 Color MFP

As an ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Trellix and the Trellix logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Musarubra US LLC or its subsidiaries in the U.S. and other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Product shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.  
©2024 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.



[usa.canon.com](http://usa.canon.com)



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit [usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).

### Color imageCLASS X MF1333C

Print up to 35 ppm (Color)

Print up to 8-1/2" x 14"

850-sheet maximum paper capacity

Supports uniFLOW and uniFLOW Online

Designed for small workgroups within an office or home environments used as part of an organization's extended print fleet, the Canon Color imageCLASS X MF1333C offers feature-rich capabilities with high-quality imaging and minimal maintenance. Print, copy, scan, and fax capabilities help you accomplish necessary tasks with just one machine. A 5" color touchscreen delivers an intuitive user experience and can be customized by a device administrator to simplify many daily tasks.

Color  
Compact  
Multifunction  
Printer



#### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 5" intuitive color touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- UI customization allows users to drag and drop frequently used icons.
- New Application Library features create a unique, customized device experience, and ease of use.
- Supports certain compatible mobile solutions for printing and scanning.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files through a single-pass, duplex document feeder.
- Designed for small print jobs with first-print-out time as fast as 7 seconds.
- Provides consistency with the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX Series.



#### SECURITY FEATURES

- Helps reduce the risk of confidential information loss, since documents are only stored in short-term memory.
- Remotely control device access and set rules via optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online.
- Limit document distribution by implementing Send-to-Myself-only.
- Verify System at Startup is a process to help verify the validity of the device firmware and Application Library from unauthorized modifications.
- With imageWARE Enterprise Management Console Device Configuration Manager Plug-in, security settings can be captured and exported to other devices on the same network.<sup>2</sup>



#### COST MANAGEMENT

- Leverage optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online for full accounting and reporting, pull printing, and job routing.
- Service parts are designed for machine's life cycle to help minimize the need for proactive maintenance and potentially reduce service calls.
- High-capacity, all-in-one cartridge helps reduce overall supply costs.
- Out-of-the-box, standard, two-sided printing plus the ability to print multiple pages onto one sheet help to reduce paper consumption.



DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics for rapid service response.
- Easily monitor device status and consumable levels, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security settings.



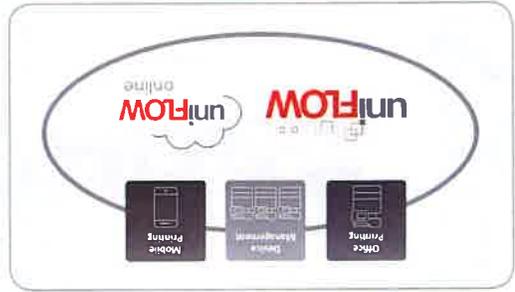
QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished.
- Intuitive maintenance videos for common tasks like consumables replacement.



SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve lower energy consumption.
- Encourages environmentally conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and currently rated EPEAT® Silver.



MANAGE OUTPUT WITH uniflow SOFTWARE

The optional uniflow portfolio offers an on-premise or cloud solution that imageCLASS devices can utilize with flexible authentication. With either card-based or PIN-code-based authentication, imageCLASS devices can help secure output management, track costs with reporting, and operate mobile printing—one platform for your print, scan, and device management.



FLEET MANAGEMENT TOOLS

imageWARE Enterprise Management Console can be used by a device administrator to centrally manage the Canon printer fleet, including consumables, status notifications, meters, and configuration settings. imageWARE Remote software allows for the service provider to manage devices proactively, including remote diagnosis and reporting. Local Content Delivery System facilitates remote firmware download at the device level.



FAST, SINGLE-PASS DUPLEX SCANNING

The Color imageCLASS X MF1333C model leverages a single-pass document feeder for two-sided scanning at up to 80 images per minute (ipm) in black-and-white or up to 40 ipm in color. Easily scan directly to PC, USB, email, or the network. Scanned files can be converted into multiple file formats, including Hi-COMPRESSION PDF and Searchable PDF (OCR).



Single Pass 2-Sided Scan



EASY TO USE WITH APPLICATION LIBRARY

Unique to the Canon product line, the Application Library platform allows for one-touch button creation of key functions: Print Template, Standby Slide (screen saver), Scan-to-Preset Destination, ID Card Copy, Consumables Information, Copy (Eco), Copy (Bleed Reduce), Passport Copy, Fax and Store, Name and Scan, Copy (Enhanced Text), Language, Print Client Faxes, Fax to Preset Destination, Template Email, Standby Slide from Server, and Print File from Server.



APPLICATION LIBRARY

**Main Unit****Core Functions**

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Fax

**Processor**

Cortex-A9MPCore 1200 MHzx2

**Control Panel**

5" Color Touch Panel

**Memory**

1 GB RAM

**Standard Interface Connection**

USB 2.0 x2 (Host), USB 2.0 x1 (Device) High-Speed, 10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet (Network), Wi-Fi 802.11b/g/n, Wi-Fi® Direct Connection

**Paper Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)**

Standard: 300 Sheets

Maximum: 850 Sheets

**Paper Sources (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)**

Standard: 250-sheet Paper Cassette, 50-sheet Stack Bypass

Optional: 550-sheet Paper Cassette (Paper Feeder PF-K1)

**Paper Output Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)**

Standard: 75 Sheets

**Supported Media Types**

Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled, Coated, Label, Pre-punched, Letterhead, PostCard, Envelope

Stack Bypass: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled, Coated, Label, Pre-punched, Letterhead, PostCard, Envelope

**Supported Media Sizes**

Cassettes: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Index Card, Envelope: [No. 10 (COM10), Monarch, ISO-C5, DL], Custom (Min. 3.9" x 5.8" to Max. 8.5" x 14")

Stack Bypass: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Index Card, Envelope: [No. 10 (COM10), Monarch, ISO-C5, DL], Custom (Min. 3" x 5" to Max. 8.5" x 14")

**Supported Media Weights**Cassettes: 16 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover (60 to 200 g/m<sup>2</sup>)Stack Bypass: 16 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover (60 to 200 g/m<sup>2</sup>)**Warm-Up Time**

From Power On: 14 Seconds or Less

From Sleep: 5.3 Seconds or Less

**Mode:****Dimensions (W x D)**

Standard: 16.7" x 18.1"

(Desktop): (425 mm x 461 mm)

**Installation Space (W x D)**

Fully: 16.7" x 36.1"

Configured: (425 mm x 917 mm)

**Weight<sup>4</sup>**

Main Unit: Approx. 48.5 lb. (22 kg)

(Standard):

**Supported OS**

Windows® 8.1/10/11, Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022, MAC OS (10.12 or later)

**Print Specifications****Printing Method**

Laser Beam Printing

**Print Speed (Color)<sup>5</sup>**

Up to 35 ppm (1-Sided Letter); Up to 31 ppm (2-Sided Letter)

**First-Print-Out Time**

Approx. 7 Seconds

**Recommended Monthly Page Volume**

750 - 4,000 Pages

**Print Resolution (dpi)**

1200 x 1200

**Standard Page Description Languages**

UFR II, PCL®6, PCL®5, Adobe PostScript® 3™

**Double-Sided Printing**

Automatic (Standard)

**Direct Print**

Available from USB memory

Supported file types: TIFF, JPEG, PDF and XPS

**Printing from Mobile and Cloud-based Services<sup>1</sup>**

Apple® AirPrint® Canon PRINT Business, Mopria™ Print Service, Canon Print Service, uniFLOW Online

**Fonts**

PCL: 93 Fonts

PS: 136 Fonts

**Print Features**

Secure Watermark, Header/Footer, Page Layout, Two-sided Printing, Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations, Toner Reduction, Poster Printing, Print Date

**Copy Specifications****Copy Speed**

Up to 35 ppm (1-Sided Letter); Up to 31 ppm (2-Sided Letter)

**First-Copy-Out Time (Letter)**

Platen: 8.1 seconds/9.2 seconds (BW/Color)

ADF: 7.4 seconds/8.6 seconds (BW/Color)

**Copy Resolution (dpi)**

600 x 600

**Copy Size**

Platen: Up to Letter

ADF: Up to Legal

**Multiple Copies**

Up to 999 Copies

**Magnification**

25% - 400% (1% Increments)

**Preset Reductions**

25%, 50%, 64%, 78%

**Preset Enlargements**

129%, 200%, 400%

**Copy Features**

Preset R/E Ratios by Area, Two-Sided, Density Adjustment, Original Type Selection, Two-sided Original, Sort, N-on-1, Different Size Originals, Sharpness, Erase Frame, Copy ID Card, Copy Passport, Color Mode, Reserved Copy

**Scan Specifications****Type**

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

**Document Feeder Paper Capacity**

50 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

**Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes**

Legal, Letter, Statement

**Document Feeder Supported Media Weights**14-28 lb. Bond (50-105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)**Platen Acceptable Originals**

Sheet, Book

**Pull Scan**

ScanGear MF for TWAIN, and WIA

**Scan Resolution (dpi)**

Push Scan: Up to 300 x 600

Pull Scan: Up to 600 x 600

**Scan Speed (Letter)**

Single-sided: 20/40 ipm (300 x 600 dpi) (Color/BW)

Double-sided: 40/80 ipm (300 x 600 dpi) (Color/BW)

**Memory Media**

Standard USB Memory (JPEG, TIFF, PDF)

**Send Specifications****Destination**

Email/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB, FTP

**Address Book**

LDAP (50)/Local (300)/Speed Dial (281)

**Send Resolution (dpi)**

Pull: Max. 9600 x 9600

Push: 192 x 204 (iFax), 300 x 300 (email/SMB/FTP)

**Communication Protocol**

File: FTP (TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP)

Email/iFax: SMTP (Send), POP3 (Receive)

**File Format**

Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Compact, Searchable)

Optional: PDF (Encrypted, Digital Signature)

**Fax Specifications****Modem Speed**

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps

G3: 14.4 Kbps

**Compression Method**

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

**Resolution (dpi)**

Up to 400 x 400

**Sending/Recording Size**

Statement to Legal

**Fax Memory**

Up to 512 Pages

**Speed Dials**

Max. 281

**Group Dials/Destinations**

Max. 299 Dials

**Sequential Broadcast**

Max. 310 Addresses

**Memory Backup**

Yes

**Fax Features**

Sender's Name (TTI), Direct Send, Preview, TX Report, Sequential Broadcasting

**Security Specifications****Authentication**

Standard: Department ID Authentication, Embedded

Universal Login Manager

Optional: uniFLOW, uniFLOW Online

**Data**

Standard: Verify System at Startup

**Network**

Standard: TLS 1.3, IPsec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMPv3, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Enabling/Disabling (Network Applications, Remote UI, USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN

**Document**Standard: Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>6</sup>), Scan Security<sup>7</sup> (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS), Send Data Security (Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History)**Wi-Fi Authentication Methods**

Wi-Fi: 128(104)/64(40)bit WEP, WPA-PSK

Infrastructure (TKIP/AES-CCMP), WPA2-PSK

Mode: (TKIP/AES-CCMP), WPA-EAP

(AES-CCMP), WPA2-EAP(AES-CCMP)

Wi-Fi Access: WPA2-PSK(AES-CCMP)

Point:

**Environmental Specifications****Operating Environment**

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F

Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (No Condensation)

**Power Requirements**

AC110-127V: 6.6A, 60Hz

**Power Consumption**

Maximum: Approx. 1610 W or less

Standby: Approx. 24.0 W

Sleep Mode: Approx. 1.0 W

Typical: 0.34 kWh

Electricity

Consumption

(TEC) Rating:

**Standards**ENERGY STAR® Qualified, Currently Rated EPEAT Silver<sup>3</sup>



Canon

**PAPER FEEDER PF-K1**

- 550-Sheet Capacity
- 16 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover
- Supports Letter

**Accessories**

**Card Readers<sup>9</sup>**

**MiCard Attachment Kit-B1<sup>9</sup>**  
Proximity card reader designed to be used with uniFLOW for card authentication.

**Copy Card Reader-F1<sup>10</sup>**  
Department ID authentication with Canon magnetic stripe cards.

**Copy Control Interface Kit C-1**  
Connects third-party reader or coin operator system to device.

**Print/Scan Accessories**

**Barcode Print Kit-E1**  
Installs bar code fonts for bar code printing.

**Send PDF Security Feature Set-E1**  
Send encrypted PDFs and add digital device signatures.

**Extended Service Packs**

**Canon eCarePAK**  
Canon Extended Service Plans offer coverage beyond the standard one-year limited warranty<sup>11</sup> up to four years.

**GENUINE CONSUMABLES**

Always look for the Canon anti-counterfeiting hologram on your Canon GENUINE product packaging.



Toner T12 Black	Yields 1,600 Impressions
Toner T12 Cyan	Yields 1,600 Impressions
Toner T12 Magenta	Yields 1,600 Impressions
Toner T12 Yellow	Yields 1,600 Impressions

Use of Canon GENUINE toner cartridges helps provide longer equipment life, high yields, reliable performance, high-quality output, and minimal jamming or issues. Black Toner (yielding 1,600 pages) and C/M/Y Toners (yielding 1,600 pages each) are included in the box.

<sup>1</sup> Canon PRINT Business is a free app available on the App Store® and Google Play™ Store. For more information, including compatibility, please visit <https://www.usa.canon.com/mobile-app>. Please see the respective websites for Apple AirPrint and Mopria Print Service for compatibility and additional information.

<sup>2</sup> Please reference user manuals for details on settings available to export.  
<sup>3</sup> For latest EPEAT ratings (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>4</sup> Includes consumables.  
<sup>5</sup> Print speed is based on internal testing. Print speed may vary, depending on the number of copies selected as well as the settings for size, type, and orientation of paper.

<sup>6</sup> Requires optional uniFLOW Online / uniFLOW.

<sup>7</sup> Requires optional PDF SECURITY-E1.

<sup>8</sup> Attachment kit required.

<sup>9</sup> Contact your Canon representative for information on reader compatibility.

<sup>10</sup> Copy Card Reader Attachment-J1 Required.

<sup>11</sup> Limited warranty program is subject to certain conditions and restrictions. See warranty card for details.

**Canon**

usa.canon.com



As an ENERGY STAR partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has qualified this model as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageCLASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. uniFLOW is a registered trademark of NT-ware Systemprogrammierung GmbH. Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Android and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc. iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, and the App Store are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Mopria and the Mopria logo are trademarks of the Mopria Alliance, Inc. Windows and Windows Server are trademarks of Microsoft Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of these features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2023 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

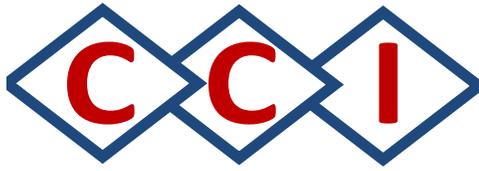
3/23-0486-7967





---

[www.capitalmds.com](http://www.capitalmds.com)



**Canon**  
**SAVIN.**

- *OVER 40 YEARS OF EXPERIENCE IN THE INDUSTRY*
- *LOCAL REFERENCES AVAILABLE*
- *MULTIPLE LOCAL TECHNICIANS AVAILABLE*
- *EXCELLENT CUSTOMER SERVICE*
- *SUPPORTS THE LOCAL ECONOMY*

***COPIER CONNECTION, INC.***

# ***PROPOSAL***

Presented to: **HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS**

**CANON DIGITAL COPIER'S**

**1 IRA-DXC5860, 2 IRA-DX 6855, 4 Imageclass xMF-1440,**  
**1 IRA-DXC 3926**

For any further information please contact:

**Rick Forsstrom**

Office: (308) 632-5520 ext. 108

Email: [sbsales@sbcopiers.com](mailto:sbsales@sbcopiers.com)

Cell: (308) 641-3019

**1912 Broadway Scottsbluff, NE - Phone (308) 632-5520 - Fax (308) 632-2895**

A division of: **ConnectingPoint**



imageRUNNER  
ADVANCE DX  
C5870i/C5860i  
C5850i/C5840i

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series

Color  
Mid-volume  
Multifunction

Print up to 70 ppm (BW/color)

Scan up to 270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" × 18"

6,350-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 10.1" intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- A unique, customized experience tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Hot Folders allow users to drag and drop a file into a hot folder and automatically print with pre-defined settings such as number of copies and finishing requirements.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\*<sup>2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at startup. McAfee Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes a whitelist to protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security policy settings can be controlled with a dedicated password, configured from a central location, and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features, using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images, thanks to Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications that help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability.

\* Security Information and Event Management.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.



## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and rated EPEAT® Gold<sup>5</sup>

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series



### STAPLE FINISHER-AB2\*

- 2-tray, 3,250-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)



### BOOKLET FINISHER-A1 WITH TRI-FOLD\*

- 2-tray, 3,250-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets
- Booklet-making up to 20 sheets and saddle-folding up to 3 sheets
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)
- Built in C-Fold up to 5 sheets



### INNER FINISHER-L1

- 2-tray, 550-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets within the footprint of the main unit
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (Inner 2/3 Hole Puncher-D1)



### INNER 2-WAY TRAY-M1



### BUFFER PASS UNIT-P2



### HIGH CAPACITY CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-C1

- 2,450-sheet capacity
- Supports up to Letter
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index



### CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-AQ1

- Two 550-sheet cassettes
- Supports up to 12" x 18"
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index



### CABINET TYPE-V



### INNER TRAY\*



### COPY TRAY KIT



### PAPER DECK UNIT-F1

- 2,700-sheet capacity
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index
- Supports Letter



### PAPER FOLDING UNIT-L1\*\*

- Offers Z-Fold



### imagePASS-R1

- Delivers fast processing speed, outstanding image quality, and time-saving workflow
- Personalized printing with the built-in, entry-level Fiery FreeForm™ or with the supported variable data printing (VDP) formats

\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2.  
 • Required when Staple Finisher-AB2/Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Inner Finisher-L1 is not installed.  
 • Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2 and either Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Staple Finisher-AB2.

**Main Unit****Type**

Color Laser Multifunctional

**Core Functions**Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax**Control Panel**

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Flat-panel

**Memory**

5.0 GB RAM

**Solid State Drive**Standard: 256 GB  
Optional: 1 TB**Interface Connection**Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)  
Optional: Bluetooth Low Energy**Others**Standard: USB 2.0 (Host) x1, USB 3.0 (Host) x1,  
USB 2.0 (Device) x1  
Optional: Copy Control Interface**Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with Staple Finisher-AB2 or Booklet Finisher-A1  
with Tri-Fold and 3rd Copy Tray Kit-A1)**Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Stack Bypass  
Optional: Dual 550-Sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Feeding Unit-AM1), 2,450-Sheet  
High Capacity Paper Cassette (High  
Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1),  
2,700-Sheet Paper Deck  
(Paper Deck Unit-F1)**Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 6,350 Sheets**Finishing Capabilities**Standard: Collate, Group  
With Options: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch,  
Hole Punch, Staple Free Stapling, Staple On  
Demand<sup>6</sup>**Supported Media Types**Multi-Purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Coated,  
Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Label,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Tab, Envelope  
Paper: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Bond,  
Cassettes: Transparency, Pre-punched, Letterhead,  
Envelope<sup>7</sup>**Supported Media Sizes**Upper Cassette: Letter, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x  
8-1/2")  
Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18")  
Multi-Purpose Tray: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R,  
Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL,  
ISO-C5], Envelope Custom Size (3-7/8" x  
3-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18"), Custom Size/  
Free Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18")**Supported Media Weights**Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Stack Bypass: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)**Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)**C5870i: Up to 70 ppm (Letter); Up to 42 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 40 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 35 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5860i: Up to 60 ppm (Letter); Up to 36 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 34 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 32 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5850i: Up to 50 ppm (Letter); Up to 30 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 29 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 27 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5840i: Up to 40 ppm (Letter); Up to 24 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 23 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 21 ppm (11" x 17")**Warm-up Time**From Power On: Approx. 6 Seconds<sup>8</sup>  
From Sleep Mode<sup>9</sup>  
C5870i: Approx. 7 Seconds  
C5860i/ C5850i/ C5840i: Approx. 6 Seconds  
Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>10</sup>**Dimensions (W x D x H)**24-3/8" x 28-1/2" x 36-7/8" (620 x 722 x 937 mm)<sup>11</sup>**Installation Space (W x D)**Basic: 44-7/8" x 45-3/4" (1,138 x 1,162 mm)  
(Right Cover Open with Multi-purpose  
tray extended + Cassette Drawers Open)  
Fully Configured: 73-1/2" x 45-3/4" (1,866 x 1,162 mm)  
(Staple Finisher-AB1 or Booklet Finisher-AB1  
with the extension tray extended + Paper  
Deck Unit-F1 + Cassette Drawers open)**Weight<sup>12</sup>**C5870i: Approx. 238.1 lb. (108 kg)  
C5860i/ C5850i: Approx. 231.5 lb. (105 kg)  
C5840i: Approx. 229.3 lb. (104 kg)**Print Specifications****Print Resolution (dpi)**

1200 x 1200

**Standard Page Description Languages**

UFR II, PCL6, Adobe PS 3

**Supported File Types**PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS,<sup>13</sup> XPS**Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Universal Print by Microsoft®, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.

**Fonts**PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional Chinese),<sup>14</sup>  
Barcode Fonts<sup>15</sup>  
PS: 136 Roman**Operating System<sup>16</sup>**UFR II/PS: Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server2008/  
Server2008 R2/Server2012/Server2012  
R2/Server2016/Server2019, Mac OS X  
(10.11 or later)  
PCL: Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server2008/  
Server2008 R2/Server2012/Server2012  
R2/Server2016/Server2019  
PPD: Windows® 7/8.1/10, Mac OS X(10.10 or later)**Copy Specifications****First-Copy-Out Time**C5870i: As fast as 2.7 seconds (BW)/  
3.7 seconds (Color)  
C5860i: As fast as 2.9 seconds (BW)/  
4.2 seconds (Color)  
C5850i: As fast as 3.3 seconds (BW)/  
4.9 seconds (Color)  
C5840i: As fast as 4.1 seconds (BW)/  
6.1 seconds (Color)**Copy Resolution (dpi)**

600 x 600

**Multiple Copies**

Up to 999

**Magnification**

25%-400% (1% Increments)

**Preset Reductions/Enlargements**25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%,  
200%, 400%**Scan Specifications****Type**

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

**Document Feeder Paper Capacity**

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

**Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes**11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17"**Document Feeder Supported Media Weights**Single-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)  
Double-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)**Platen Acceptable Originals**

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

**Pull Scan**Color Network Supported: ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
OS: Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server 2008/  
Server 2008 R2/Server 2012/  
Server 2012 R2/Server 2016**Scan Resolution (dpi)**Scan for Copy: 600 x 600  
Scan for Send: (Push) 600 x 600 (SMB/FTP/WebDAV/  
iFAX), (Pull) 600 x 600  
Scan for Fax: 600 x 600**Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to compatible mobile devices and certain cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

**Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)**Single-sided Scanning: 135/135 (300 dpi), 80/80 (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning: 270/270 (300 dpi), 160/90 (600 dpi)**Send Specifications****Destination**Standard: E-mail/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB3.0, FTP,  
WebDAV, Mail Box  
Optional: Super G3 FAX, IP Fax**Address Book**

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

**Send Resolution (dpi)**Push: Up to 600 x 600  
Pull: Up to 600 x 600**Communication Protocol**File: FTP(TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV  
Email: SMTP, POP3**File Format**Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Encrypted, Compact,  
Searchable, Apply Policy, Optimize for  
Web, User Signature, PDF A/1-b, Limited  
Color, Device Signature, User Signature),  
XPS (Compact, Searchable, Device Signature,  
User Signature), Office Open XML  
(PowerPoint, Word)**Fax Specifications (Optional)****Modem Speed**Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps**Compression Method**

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

**Resolution (dpi)**

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

**Sending/Recording Size**

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

**Fax Memory**

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs)

**Speed Dials**

Max. 200

**Group Dials/Destinations**

Max. 199 Dials

**Sequential Broadcast**

Max. 256 Addresses

**Memory Backup**

Yes

**Store Specifications**

**Mail Box (Number Supported)**

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 10,000 Pages (2,000 jobs) Stored

**Advanced Box**

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV

Supported

Client PC: Windows (Windows 8.1/10)

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3

**Advanced Box Available Disc Space**

Approx. 16 GB (Standard HDD)

Approx. 480 GB (With Optional 1 TB HDD)

**Security Specifications**

**Authentication and Access Control**

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express<sup>17</sup> (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

**Document Security**

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>18</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax In-box Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle<sup>®</sup> Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Box Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

**Network Security**

TLS 1.3, IPSec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN, Prohibit the execution of files stored in Advanced Box in the MFP, Scan and Send-Virus Concerns for E-mail Reception

**Device Security**

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFD Software Integrity, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection)

**Device Management and Auditing**

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

**Environmental Specifications**

**Operating Environment**

Temperature: 50 to 86°F

Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (Relative Humidity)

**Power Requirements**

C5870i/ C5860i/ 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 12 A

C5850i: 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 10 A

C5840i: 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 10 A

**Power Consumption**

Maximum: Approx. 1,800 W

Standby: Approx. 56.1 W<sup>19</sup>

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>20</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>21</sup>

C5870i: 0.86 kWh

C5860i: 0.71 kWh

C5850i: 0.57 kWh

C5840i: 0.47 kWh

**Standards**

ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Certified

Rated EPEAT<sup>®</sup> Gold

**Consumables**

**Toner<sup>22</sup>**

GPR-61L Toner BK/C/M/Y

GPR-61L Toner C/M/Y

**Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)**

GPR-61L Toner

BK: 71,000 Pages

GPR-61L Toner

C/M/Y: 60,000 Pages

GPR-61L Toner

C/M/Y: 26,000 Pages

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service provider's Terms and Conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.

<sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.

<sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.

<sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>6</sup> Finishing capabilities vary depending on the options connected.

<sup>7</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment (standard) is required.

<sup>8</sup> Time from device power-on, until copy ready (not print reservation).

<sup>9</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.

<sup>10</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.

<sup>11</sup> Includes main unit and either Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1, High Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1, or Cabinet Type-V.

<sup>12</sup> Includes main unit, consumables, and Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1.

<sup>13</sup> EPS can be printed directly only from the Remote User Interface.

<sup>14</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>15</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>16</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix may be supported. Some of these solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.

<sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>19</sup> Reference Value (measured one unit).

<sup>20</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>21</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

<sup>22</sup> GPR-61L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y). Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 26,000 images.



Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5870i  
Outstanding 70-ppm A3 Color MFP

Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5860i  
Outstanding 60-ppm A3 Color MFP

Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5840i  
Outstanding 40-ppm A3 Color MFP

As an ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in the US and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Product shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2022 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.



[usa.canon.com](http://usa.canon.com)



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit [usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6800 Series

Black-and-white  
Mid- to High-volume  
Multifunction

Print up to 70 ppm (BW)

Scan up to 270/270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" × 18"

6,350-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 10.1" intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- A unique, customized experience tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Hot Folders allow users to drag and drop a file into a hot folder, and automatically print with predefined settings such as number of copies and finishing requirements.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\*<sup>2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at startup. McAfee Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes a whitelist to protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security policy settings can be controlled with a dedicated password, configured from a central location, and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features, using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for crisp text and consistent images in rich black-and-white tones.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability.

\* Security Information and Event Management



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.

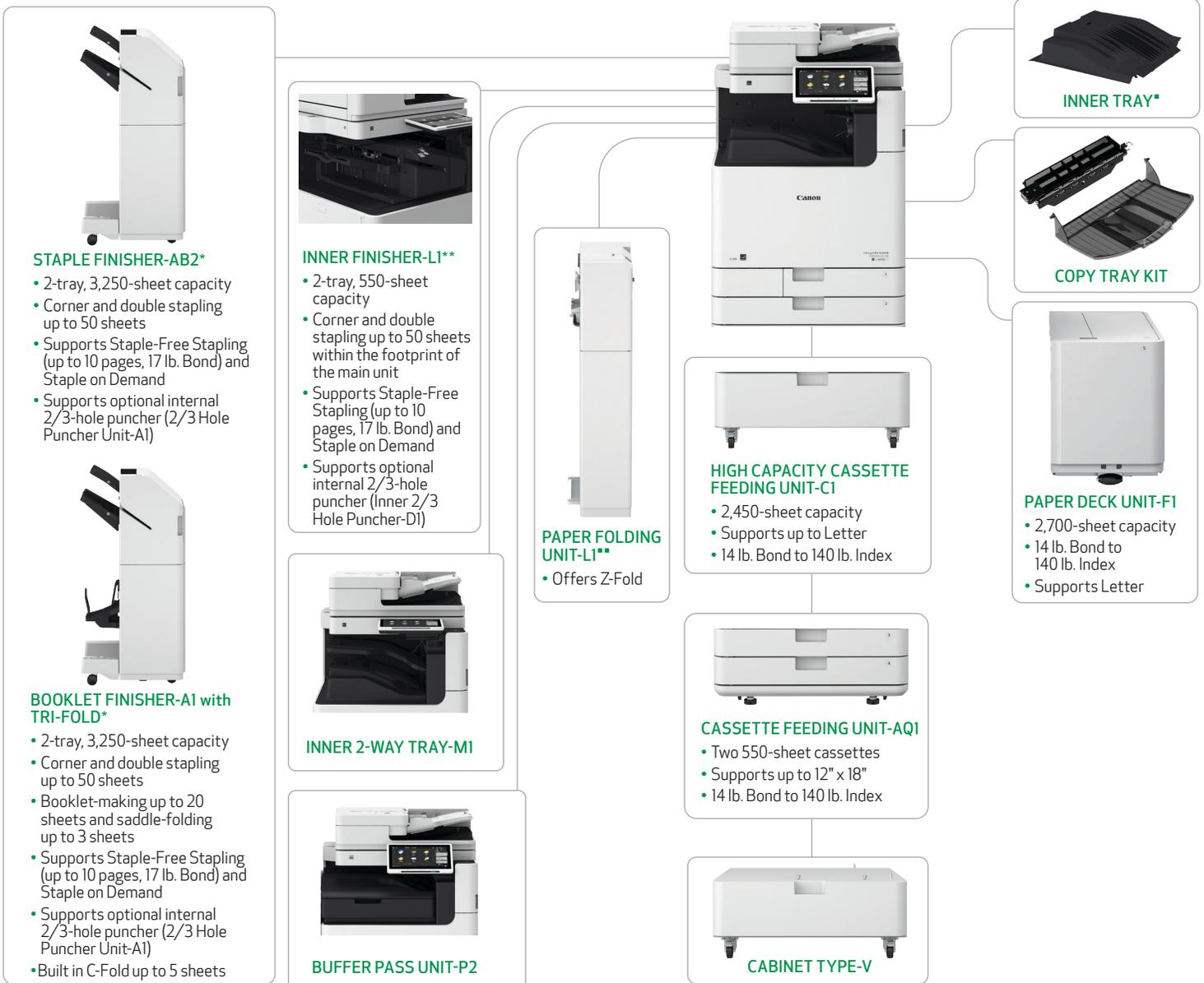


## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally-conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6800 Series



\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2.

\*\* Inner Finisher-L1 not available on imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6870i.

• Required when Staple Finisher-AB2/Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Inner Finisher-L1 is not installed.

• Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2 and either Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Staple Finisher-AB2.

## Main Unit

### Type

Monochrome Laser Multifunctional

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax

### Control Panel

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Flat-panel

### Memory

5.0 GB RAM

### Solid State Drive

Standard: 256 GB  
Optional: 1 TB

### Interface Connection

Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)

Optional:  
Others Bluetooth Low Energy

Standard: USB 2.0 (Host) x1, USB 3.0 (Host) x1,  
USB 2.0 (Device) x1  
Optional: Copy Control Interface

### Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 200 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with Staple Finisher-AB2 or Paper Folding/Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold and third Copy Tray Kit-A1)

### Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Stack Bypass  
Optional: Dual 550-Sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Feeding Unit-AM1), 2,450-Sheet  
High Capacity Paper Cassette (High  
Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1),  
2,700-Sheet Paper Deck  
(Paper Deck Unit-F1)

### Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 6,350 Sheets

### Finishing Capabilities

Standard: Collate, Group  
With Options: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch,  
Hole Punch, Staple Free Stapling, Staple On  
Demand<sup>6</sup>

### Supported Media Types

Multi-Purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Coated,  
Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Label,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Tab, Envelope  
Paper: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Bond,  
Cassettes: Transparency, Pre-punched, Letterhead,  
Envelope<sup>7</sup>

### Supported Media Sizes

Upper Cassette: Letter, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x  
8-1/2")  
Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18")  
Multi-Purpose Tray: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R,  
Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL,  
ISO-C5], Envelope Custom Size (3-7/8" x  
3-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18"), Custom Size/  
Free Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18")

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Stack Bypass: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Print/Copy Speed (BW)

6870i: Up to 70 ppm (Letter), up to 42 ppm  
(Letter-R), up to 40 ppm (Legal), up to  
35 ppm (11" x 17")  
6860i: Up to 60 ppm (Letter), up to 36 ppm  
(Letter-R), up to 34 ppm (Legal), up to  
32 ppm (11" x 17")  
6855i: Up to 55 ppm (Letter), up to 36 ppm  
(Letter-R), up to 32 ppm (Legal), up to 29  
ppm (11" x 17")

### Warm-up Time

From Power On: Approx. 6 Seconds<sup>8</sup>  
From Sleep Mode<sup>9</sup>  
6870i: 7 Seconds or Less  
6860i: 6 Seconds or Less  
6855i: 6 Seconds or Less  
Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>10</sup>

### Dimensions (W x D x H)

24-3/8" x 28-1/2" x 36-7/8" (620 x 722 x 937 mm)<sup>11</sup>

### Installation Space (W x D)

Basic: 44-7/8" x 45-3/4" (1,138 x 1,162 mm)  
(Right Cover Open with Multi-purpose  
tray extended + Cassette Drawers Open)  
Fully Configured: 73-1/2" x 45-3/4" (1,866 mm x 1,162 mm)  
(Staple Finisher-AB2 or Paper Folding/  
Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold with the  
extension tray extended + Paper Deck  
Unit-F1 + Cassette Drawers open)

### Weight<sup>12</sup>

6870i: Approx. 205 lb. (93 kg)  
6860i: Approx. 200.6 lb. (91 kg)  
6855i: Approx. 200.6 lb. (91 kg)

## Print Specifications

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL6, Adobe PS 3

### Supported File Types

PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS,<sup>13</sup> XPS

### Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Universal Print by Microsoft®, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.

### Fonts

PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional Chinese),<sup>14</sup>  
Barcode Fonts<sup>15</sup>  
PS: 136 Roman

### Operating System<sup>16</sup>

UFR II: Windows® 8.1/10/11/Server 2012/Server  
2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server  
2022, Mac OS X (10.11 or later)  
PCL: Windows® 8.1/10/11/Server 2012/Server  
2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server  
2022 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019  
PS: Windows® 8.1/10/11/Server 2012/Server  
2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server  
2022, Mac OS X (10.11 or later)  
PPD: Windows® 8.1/10/11, Mac OS X (10.11 or later)

## Copy Specifications

### First-Copy-Out Time

6870i: Approx. 2.7 Seconds or Less  
6860i: Approx. 2.9 Seconds or Less  
6855i: Approx. 2.9 Seconds or Less

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Multiple Copies

Up to 9,999

### Magnification

25%-400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions/Enlargements

25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%,  
200%, 400%

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17"

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

Single-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)  
Double-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

### Pull Scan

Color Network Supported OS: ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
Windows® 8.1/10/11/Server2012/  
Server2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/  
Server 2022

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Scan for Copy: 600 x 600  
Scan for Send: (Push) 600 x 600 (SMB/FTP/WebDAV/  
IFAX), (Pull) 600 x 600  
Scan for Fax: 600 x 600

### Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to compatible mobile devices and certain cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

### Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)

Single-sided Scanning: 135/135 (300 dpi), 80/80 (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning: 270/270 (300 dpi), 160/90 (600 dpi)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Standard: E-mail/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB3.0, FTP,  
WebDAV, Mail Box  
Optional: Super G3 FAX, IP Fax

### Address Book

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

Push: Up to 600 x 600  
Pull: Up to 600 x 600

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP(TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV  
Email: SMTP, POP3

### File Format

Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Encrypted, Compact,  
Searchable, Apply Policy, Optimize for  
Web, User Signature, PDF A/1-b, Limited  
Color, Device Signature, User Signature),  
XPS (Compact, Searchable, Device Signature,  
User Signature), Office Open XML  
(PowerPoint, Word)

## Fax Specifications (Optional)

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

### Sending/Recording Size

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

### Fax Memory

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs)

### Speed Dials

Max. 200

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 199 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 256 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

## Store Specifications

### Mail Box (Number Supported)

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs) Stored

### Advanced Box

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV Supported

Client PC: Windows (Windows 8.1/10)  
Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64  
WebDAV: 3

### Advanced Box Available Disc Space

Approx. 16 GB (Standard HDD)  
Approx. 480 GB (With Optional 1 TB HDD)

## Security Specifications

### Authentication and Access Control

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express<sup>17</sup> (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

### Document Security

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>18</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax Inbox Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle<sup>®</sup> Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Box Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

### Network Security

TLS 1.3, IPSec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), WPA3 support (Wi-Fi), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN, Prohibit the execution of files stored in Advanced Box in the MFP, Scan and Send -Virus Concerns for Email Reception

### Device Security

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFD Software Integrity, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection)

### Device Management and Auditing

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86° F  
Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (Relative Humidity)

### Power Requirements

110-127V, 60Hz, 12A

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1,800 W  
Standby: Approx. 48.4 W<sup>19</sup>  
Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>20</sup>  
Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating:<sup>21</sup>  
6870i: 0.89 kWh  
6860i: 0.74 kWh  
6855i: 0.68 kWh

### Standards

ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Certified<sup>22</sup>  
Rated EPEAT<sup>®</sup> Gold<sup>23</sup>

## Consumables

### Toner

GPR-63 Toner BK

### Toner Yield (Estimated @ 6% Coverage)

GPR-63 Toner: 71,500 Pages

- <sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service providers' Terms and Conditions.
- <sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.
- <sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.
- <sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.
- <sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).
- <sup>6</sup> Finishing capabilities vary depending on the options connected.
- <sup>7</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment (standard) is required.
- <sup>8</sup> Time from device power-on, until copy ready (not print reservation).
- <sup>9</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.
- <sup>10</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.
- <sup>11</sup> Includes main unit and standard ADF.
- <sup>12</sup> Includes main unit, consumables, and Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1.
- <sup>13</sup> EPS can be printed directly only from the Remote User Interface.
- <sup>14</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.
- <sup>15</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.
- <sup>16</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix may be supported. Some of these solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.
- <sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.
- <sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.
- <sup>19</sup> Reference Value (measured one unit).
- <sup>20</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.
- <sup>21</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.
- <sup>22</sup> ENERGY STAR, TEC Values, and EPEAT is based off of ENERGY STAR version 3.0.
- <sup>23</sup> imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6855i is pending EPEAT certification.

As an ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in the US and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Product shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.  
©2022 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

# Canon

[usa.canon.com](http://usa.canon.com)



Trellix

CANON  
GENUINE  
TONER, CARTRIDGE  
& PARTS



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit  
[usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C3900 Series

Color  
Low- to Mid-volume  
Multifunction

Print up to 35 ppm (BW/color)

Scan up to 270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" x 18"

2,300-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- A large, 10.1" responsive and intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability, making operation clear and virtually seamless.
- Consistent interface across the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX product line, allowing work to proceed effortlessly and with a minimal learning curve.
- A unique, customized experience that can be tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\*<sup>2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at setup. Includes automatic recovery of boot process for self resiliency.
- McAfee Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes whitelisting to help protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security settings can be established at once by selecting the environment type in Recommended Security Settings. Security policy settings can be configured from a central location and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images, thanks to Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications that help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability. This includes the 2022-2024 BLI Most Reliable A3 Brand Award from Keypoint Intelligence.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.

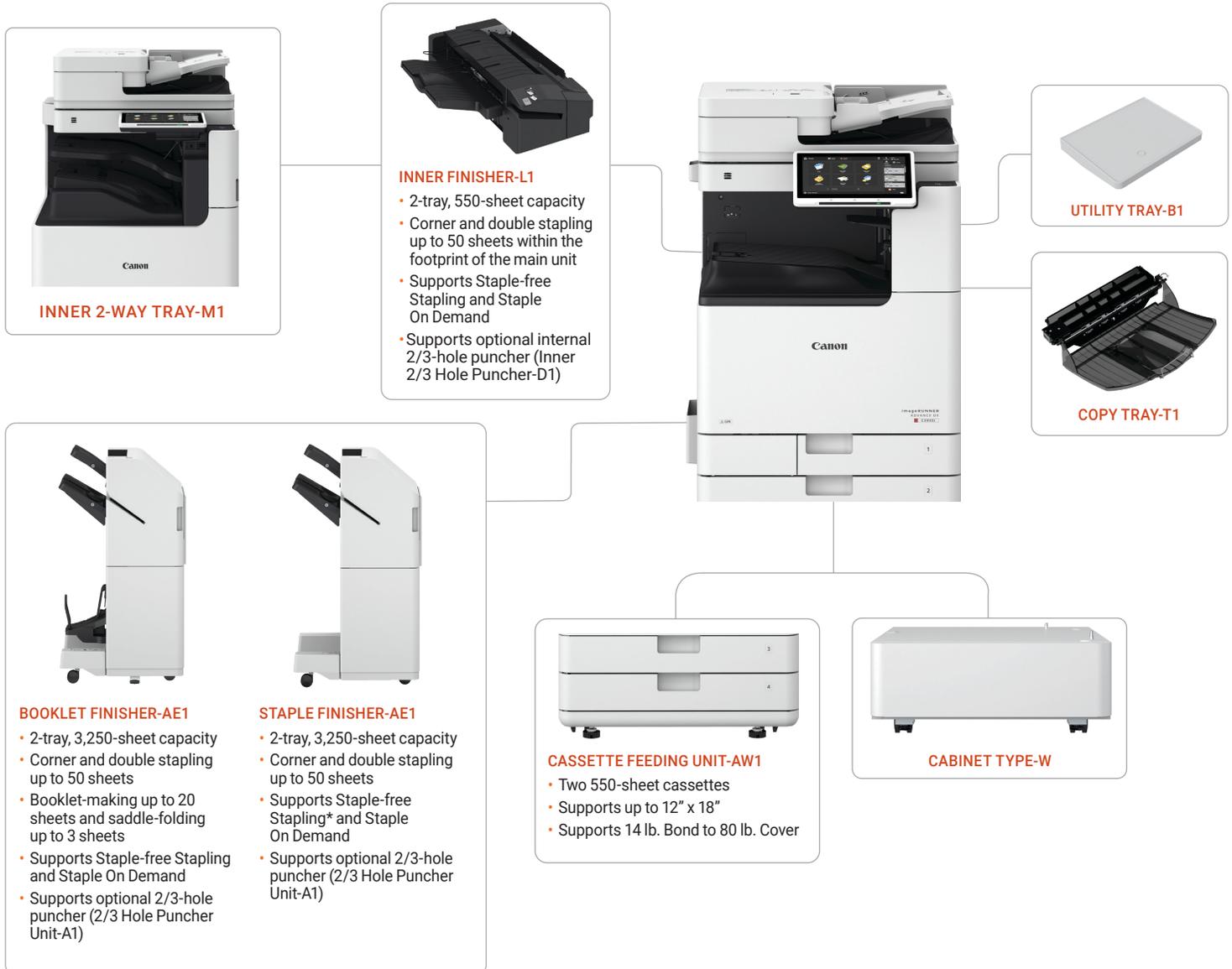


## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and lower-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Environmentally friendly packaging utilizes recyclable cardboard.
- Drum covers are constructed of regrind plastic, helping to lower environmental impact.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and rated EPEAT® Gold.<sup>5</sup>

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C3900 Series



\* Staple-Free stapling, up to 10 pages of 17 lb. Bond.

## Main Unit

### Type

Color Laser Multifunctional

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax

### Processor

1.8 GHz Dual Core Processor

### Control Panel

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Touch-panel

### Memory

3.5 GB RAM

### Solid State Drive

Standard: 256 GB/Maximum: 1 TB

### Interface Connection

Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,

Optional: Wireless LAN Board F-1

### Others

Standard: USB 2.0 x1 (Host), USB 3.0 x1 (Host),  
USB 2.0 x1 (Device)

Optional: Copy Control Interface, Serial Interface

### Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 1,200 Sheets

Maximum: 2,300 Sheets

### Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Multipurpose Tray

Optional: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Feeding Unit-AW1)

### Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250 Sheets

Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with Staple Finisher-AE1/Booklet  
Finisher-AE1 and Copy Tray-T1)

### Finishing Capabilities

Standard: Collate, Group

With Finishers: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch,  
Hole Punch, Eco Staple, Staple On Demand

### Supported Media Types

Multi-purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Heavy, Recycled, Coated,  
Color, Tracing, Bond, Transparency,  
Label, Pre-punched, Envelope,  
Postcard, Letterhead

Upper Cassette: Thin, Plain, Heavy, Recycled, Color,  
Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Pre-  
punched, Envelope, Postcard, Letterhead

Lower Cassette: Thin, Plain, Heavy, Recycled, Color,  
Bond, Transparency, Pre-punched,  
Envelope<sup>5</sup>, Postcard, Letterhead

### Supported Media Sizes

Multi-purpose Tray: 12"x18", 11"x17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R  
Custom Size/Free Size: 4" x 5-7/8" to  
12" x 18", Envelopes (COM10 No.10,  
Monarch, ISO-C5, DL), Envelope Custom  
Size ( 3-7/8" x 3-7/8" to 12-5/8" x 18")

Upper Cassette: Letter, Executive, Statement-R  
Custom Size (4-1/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x  
8-1/2"), Envelopes (ISO-C5)

Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Custom Size  
(4-1/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18"), Envelopes<sup>5</sup>  
(COM10 No.10, Monarch, DL)

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

Multipurpose Tray: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Tray:

Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)

C3935i: Up to 35 ppm (Letter); Up to 23 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 17 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")

C3930i: Up to 30 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")

C3926i: Up to 26 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")

### Warm-up Time

From Power On: Approx. 10 Seconds<sup>7</sup>

From Sleep Mode: Approx. 10 Seconds<sup>8</sup>

Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>9</sup>

## Print Specifications

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 600, 1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL<sup>®</sup>6, Adobe<sup>®</sup> PS<sup>®</sup> 3

### Supported File Types

PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS, XPS

### Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-  
based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Universal  
Print by Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW  
Online) are available to provide printing from mobile  
devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based  
services depending on your requirements. Please contact  
your sales representative for further information.

### Fonts

PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional  
Chinese),<sup>13</sup> Barcode Fonts<sup>14</sup>

PS: 136 Roman

### Operating System<sup>15</sup>

UFR/II/PS: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022,  
macOS (10.13 or later)

PCL: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022

PS: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022,  
macOS (10.13 or later)

PPD: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11, macOS (10.13 or later)

## Copy Specifications

### First-Copy-Out Time (LTR)

C3935i: Approx. 5.5 seconds (BW)/  
7.4 seconds (Color)

C3930i/ C3926i: Approx. 6.1 seconds (BW)/  
8.4 seconds (Color)

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Multiple Copies

Up to 999

### Magnification

25%-400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reduction/Enlargement

25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%, 200%,  
400%

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder<sup>16</sup>

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17" (69.9 mm x 139.7  
mm to 304.8 mm x 431.8 mm)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

BW/Color 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to

Original: 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

### Platen Maximum Scanning Size

Up to 11-3/4" x 17" (297.0 mm x 431.8 mm)

### Pull Scan

Color Network ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA

Supported OS: Windows<sup>®</sup> 8.1/10/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Scan for Copy: 600 x 600

Scan for Send: Push (600 x 600), SMB/FTP/WebDAV,

Pull (600 x 600)

Scan for Fax: 600 x 600

### Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to  
mobile devices and cloud-based services depending on  
your requirements.

### Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)

Single-sided 135 ipm (300 dpi)/80 ipm (600 dpi)

Scanning:

Double-sided 270 ipm (300 dpi)/160/90 ipm (600 dpi)

Scanning:

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Standard: E-mail/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB 3.0,

FTP, WebDAV, Mail Box

Optional: Pull (600 x 600), Super G3 FAX, IP Fax

### Address Book

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

Push: Up to 600 x 600 dpi

Pull: Up to 600 x 600 dpi

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP (TCP/IP), SMB 3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV

Email: SMTP, POP3

### File Format

TIFF, JPEG, PDF(Compact, Searchable, Apply Policy,  
Optimize for Web, PDF/A-1b, Trace & Smooth, Encrypted,  
Device Signature, User Signature), XPS (Compact,  
Searchable, Device Signature, User Signature), Office  
Open XML (PowerPoint, Word)

## Fax Specifications

### Maximum Number of Connection Lines

2

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps

G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

### Sending/Receiving Size

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

### Fax Memory

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 Jobs)

### Speed Dials

Max. 200

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 199 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 256 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

## Store Specifications

### Box (Number Supported)

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 10,000 Pages (2,000 Jobs Stored)

### Advanced Box

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV Supported

Client PC: Windows® 10/11

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3 (Active Sessions)

### Advanced Box Available Disc Space

Standard: 16 GB (With Option: max. 480 GB)

## Security Specifications

### Authentication and Access Control

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express<sup>17</sup> (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

### Document Security

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>18</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax Inbox Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle® Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Space Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

### Network Security

TLS 1.3, IPSec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), WPA3 support (Wi-Fi), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), Communication Line Separation (G3 FAX, USB Port, Advanced Space, Scan and Send-Virus Concerns for E-mail Reception)

### Device Security

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFP Software Integrity, Automatic Recovery, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection)

### Device Management and Auditing

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F

Humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (Relative Humidity)

### Power Requirements

110V-127V, 60Hz, 8.5A

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1,500 W

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>19</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>20</sup>

C3935i: 0.33 kWh

C3930i: 0.29 kWh

C3926i: 0.26 kWh

### Standards

ENERGY STAR® Certified

Rated EPEAT® Gold<sup>5</sup>

## Consumables

### Toner<sup>21</sup>

GPR-66 Toner BK/C/M/Y

GPR-66L Toner C/M/Y

### Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)

GPR-66 Toner

BK: 38,000 pages

GPR-66 Toner

C/M/Y: 25,500 pages

GPR-66L Toner

C/M/Y: 11,000 pages

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service providers' Terms and Conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.

<sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.

<sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.

<sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>6</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment A (standard) is required.

<sup>7</sup> Time from device power-on until copy ready (not print reservation).

<sup>8</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.

<sup>9</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.

<sup>10</sup> Includes Single Pass DADF.

<sup>11</sup> With right cover open + Multi-purpose tray extension extended + paper cassette open.

<sup>12</sup> Includes Staple Finisher-AE1/Booklet Finisher-AE1 + Copy Tray-T1 extension extended + paper cassette open.

<sup>13</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>14</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>15</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix, may be supported. Some solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>16</sup> Detect Feeder Multi Sheet Feed is supported.

<sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.

<sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>19</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>20</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

<sup>21</sup> GPR-66L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y).

Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 11,000 images.

USA.CANON.COM/SIMPLYADVANCED



As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Some security features may impact functionality/performance; you may want to test these settings in your environment. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in the US and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All printer output images are simulated. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Products shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2023 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.

04/23-0345-8064



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit [usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).

### imageCLASS X MF1440

Black-and-white  
Compact  
Multifunction

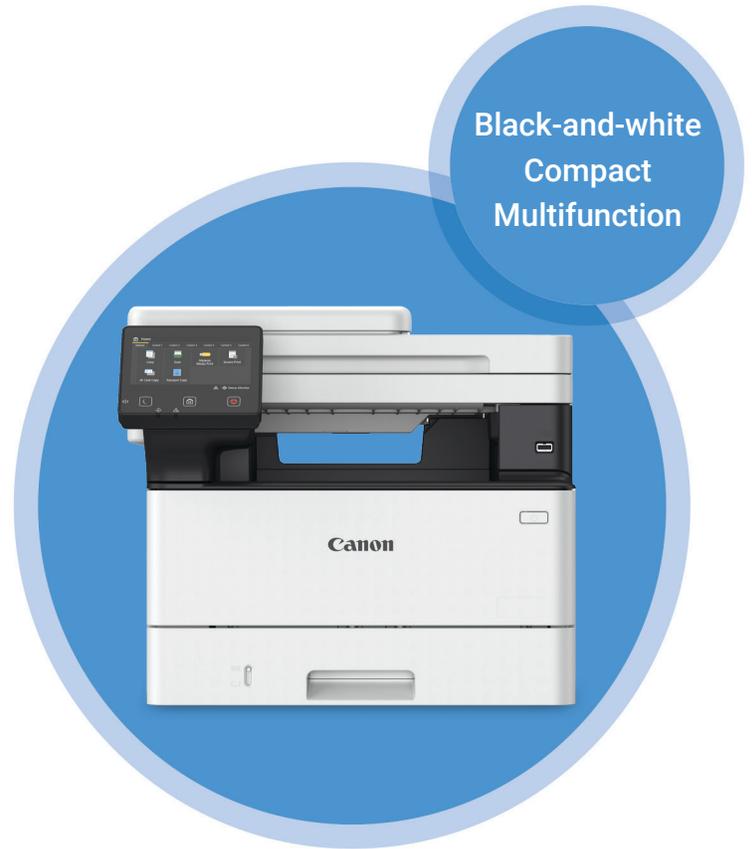
Print up to 42 ppm (BW)

Print up to 8-1/2" x 14"

900-sheet maximum paper capacity

Supports uniFLOW and uniFLOW Online

Designed for small workgroups within an office or home environments used as part of an organization's extended print fleet, the Canon imageCLASS X MF1440 printer offers speedy performance, minimal maintenance, and an extra paper tray option. Delivering an intuitive user experience, the 5" color touchscreen can be customized to simplify many daily tasks.



#### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 5" intuitive color touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- UI customization allows users to drag and drop frequently used icons.
- New Application Library features create a unique, customized device experience, and ease of use.
- Supports certain compatible mobile solutions for printing and scanning.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files through a single-pass, duplex document feeder.
- Designed for small print jobs with first-print-out time as fast as 5.3 seconds.
- Provides consistency with the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX Series.



#### SECURITY FEATURES

- Helps reduce the risk of confidential information loss, since documents are only stored in short-term memory.
- Remotely control device access and set rules via optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online.
- Limit document distribution by implementing Send-to-Myself-only.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at setup. Includes automatic recovery of boot process for self resiliency.
- With imageWARE Enterprise Management Console Device Configuration Manager Plug-in, security settings can be captured and exported to other devices on the same network.<sup>2</sup>



#### COST MANAGEMENT

- Leverage optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online for full accounting and reporting for Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, and job routing.
- Service parts are designed for machine's life cycle to help minimize the need for proactive maintenance and potentially reduce service calls.
- High-capacity, all-in-one cartridge helps reduce overall supply costs.
- Out-of-the-box, standard, two-sided printing plus the ability to print multiple pages onto one sheet help to reduce paper consumption.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics for rapid service response.
- Easily monitor device status and consumable levels, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security settings.



## QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

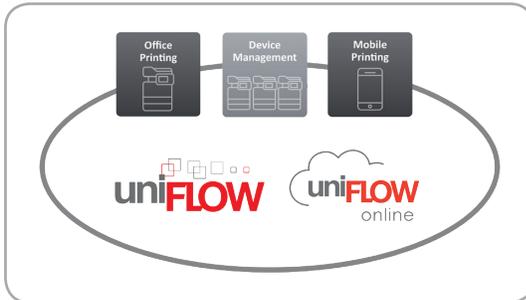
- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished.
- Intuitive maintenance videos for common tasks like consumables replacement.



## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve lower energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally conscious work practices by providing multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and currently rated EPEAT® Silver.<sup>3</sup>

### KEY FEATURES



## MANAGE OUTPUT WITH uniFLOW SOFTWARE

The optional uniFLOW portfolio offers an on-premise or cloud solution that imageCLASS X devices can utilize with flexible authentication. With either card-based or PIN-code-based authentication, imageCLASS X devices can help secure output management, track costs with reporting, and operate mobile printing—one platform for your print, scan, and device management.



## FLEET MANAGEMENT TOOLS

imageWARE Enterprise Management Console can be used by a device administrator to centrally manage the Canon printer fleet, including consumables, status notifications, meters, and configuration settings. imageWARE Remote software allows for the service provider to manage devices proactively, including remote diagnosis and reporting. Local Content Delivery System facilitates remote firmware download at the device level.



## FAST, SINGLE-PASS DUPLEX SCANNING

The imageCLASS X MF1440 model leverages a single-pass document feeder for two-sided scanning at up to 100 images per minute (ipm) in black-and-white or up to 80 ipm in color. Easily scan directly to PC, USB, email, or the network. Scanned files can be converted into multiple file formats, including Hi-Compression PDF and Searchable PDF (OCR).



Single-Pass 2-Sided Scan



## EASY TO USE WITH APPLICATION LIBRARY

Unique to the Canon product line, the Application Library platform allows for one-touch button creation of key functions: Print Template, Standby Slide (screen saver), Scan-to-Preset Destination, ID Card Copy, Consumables Information, Copy (Eco), Copy (Bleed Reduce), Passport Copy, Fax and Store, Name and Scan, Copy (Enhanced Text), Language, Print Client Faxes, Fax to Preset Destination, Template Email, Standby Slide from Server, and Print File from Server.



APPLICATION LIBRARY

## Main Unit

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Fax

### Processor

Canon Custom Processor

### Control Panel

5" Color Touch Panel

### Memory

1 GB

### Standard Interface Connection

USB 2.0 x2 (Host), USB 2.0 x1 (Device) High-Speed,  
10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet (Network), Wi-Fi  
802.11b/g/n, Wi-Fi® Direct Connection

### Paper Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 900 Sheets

### Paper Sources (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250-sheet Paper Cassette, 100-sheet  
Multipurpose Tray  
Optional: 550-sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Unit-AH1)

### Paper Output Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 150 Sheets

### Supported Media Types

Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled,  
Coated, Pre-punched, Letterhead  
Multipurpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled,  
Coated, Label, Pre-punched, Letterhead,  
PostCard, Envelope

### Supported Media Sizes

Cassettes: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive  
Custom (Min. 4.1" x 5.8" to Max. 8.5" x 14")  
Multipurpose Tray: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive  
Envelope: COM10, Monarch, C5, DL  
Custom (Min. 3" x 5" to Max. 8.5" x 14")

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 16 lb. Bond to 44.4 Cover (60 to 120 gsm)  
Multipurpose Tray: 16 lb. Bond to 73.6 lb. Cover (60 to 199 gsm)

### Warm-Up Time

From Power On: 14 Seconds or Less  
From Sleep Mode: 4 Seconds or Less

### Dimensions (W x D x H)

Standard (Desktop): 16.5" x 18.1" x 14.7"  
(420 x 460 x 375 mm)

### Installation Space (W x D)

Fully Configured: 16.5" x 34.8"  
(420 mm x 881 mm)

### Weight<sup>4</sup>

Unit: Approx. 34.4 lb. (15.6 kg)

### Supported OS

UFR II: Windows® 10/11, Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022,  
MAC OS (10.13 or later)

PCL: Windows® 10/11, Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022

PS: Windows® 10/11, Windows® Server 2012/  
Server 2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/  
Server 2022, MAC OS (10.13 or later)

PPD: Windows® 10/11, MAC OS (10.13 or later)

## Print Specifications

### Printing Method

Laser Beam Printing

### Print Speed<sup>5</sup>

Up to 42 ppm (Letter)

### First-Print-Out Time

Approx. 4.9 Seconds

### Recommended Monthly Page Volume

750 - 4,000 Pages

### Print Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL®6, PCL®5, Adobe PostScript 3®

### Double-Sided Printing

Automatic (Standard)

### Direct Print

Available from USB Memory (JPEG, TIFF, PDF)

### Printing from Mobile and Cloud-based Services<sup>1</sup>

Apple® AirPrint®, Canon Print Business, Mopria™,  
Canon Print Service, uniFLOW Online, Universal Print®

### Fonts

PCL: 93 Fonts  
PS: 136 Fonts

### Print Features

Secure Watermark, Header/Footer, Page Layout,  
Two-sided Printing, Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations,  
Toner Reduction, Poster Printing, Print Date

## Copy Specifications

### Copy Speed

Up to 42 ppm (Letter)

### First-Copy-Out Time (Letter)

Approx. 6.0 Seconds

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

Up to 600 x 600

### Copy Size

Platen: Up to Letter  
ADF: Up to Legal

### Multiple Copies

Up to 999 Copies

### Magnification

25% - 400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions

25%, 50%, 64%, 78%

### Preset Enlargements

129%, 200%, 400%

### Copy Features

Preset R/E Ratios by Area, Two-Sided, Density Adjustment,  
Original Type Selection, Two-sided Original, Sort, N-on-1,  
Different Size Originals, Sharpness, Erase Frame, Copy ID  
Card, Copy Passport, Reserved Copy

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

50 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

Legal, Letter, Statement

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

Single and Double-sided scanning: 14-28 lb. Bond  
(50-105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book

### Pull Scan

ScanGear MF for TWAIN, WIA, and ICA

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Up to 600 x 600

### Scan-to-Mobile Devices

Canon PRINT Business

### Scan Speed (Letter)

Single-sided: 40/50 ipm (300 x 300 dpi) (Color/BW)  
Double-sided: 80/100 ipm (300 x 300 dpi) (Color/BW)

### Memory Media

Standard USB Memory (JPEG, TIFF, PDF)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Email/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB, FTP

### Address Book

LDAP (50)/Local (300)/Speed Dial (281)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600 (Pull Scan), 192 x 204 (iFax), 300 x 300 (Other)

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP (TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP)  
Email/iFax: SMTP (Send), POP3 (Receive)

### File Format

Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Compact, Searchable)  
Optional: PDF (Encrypted, Digital Signature)

## Fax Specifications

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

### Sending/Recording Size

Statement to Legal

### Fax Memory

Up to 512 Pages

### Speed Dials

Max. 281 Dials

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 299 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 310 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

### Fax Features

Sender's Name (TTI), Direct Send, Preview,  
TX Report, Sequential Broadcasting

## Security Specifications

### Authentication

Standard: Embedded Universal Login Manager,  
Department ID Authentication  
Optional: uniFLOW Online Express

### Device

Standard: Standard Storage Initialize, Job Log  
Conceal Function, Protecting MFP  
Software Integrity, Verify System at  
Startup with Automatic Recovery

### Network

Standard: TLS 1.3, IPsec, IEEE802.1X  
authentication, SNMPv3, Firewall  
Functionality (IP/MAC Address  
Filtering), Enabling/Disabling (Network  
Applications, Remote UI, USB Interface),  
G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port  
separation from LAN

### Document

Standard: Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted  
Secure Print, uniFLOW Secure Print®),  
Scan Security<sup>7</sup> (Encrypted PDF, Device  
Signature PDF/XPS), Send Data Security  
(Restricted Email/File send functions,  
Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict  
Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict  
Sending from History)  
Optional: uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW  
PDF Security-E1

### Wi-Fi Authentication Methods

Wi-Fi: 128(104)/64(40)bit WEP,  
Infrastructure WPA-PSK(TKIP/AES-CCMP),  
Mode: WPA2-PSK(TKIP/AES-CCMP),  
WPA-EAP(AES-CCMP),  
WPA2-EAP(AES-CCMP)

Wi-Fi Access Point: WPA2-PSK(AES-CCMP)

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F  
Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (No Condensation)

### Power Requirements

AC 120-127 V: 6.0 A, 60 Hz

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1250 W  
Standby: Approx. 8.0 W  
Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.9 W  
Typical: 0.33 kWh

Electricity Consumption  
(TEC) Rating:

### Standards

ENERGY STAR® Qualified, Currently Rated EPEAT Silver<sup>3</sup>



**OPTIONAL CASSETTE-AH1**

- 550-Sheet Capacity
- 44.4 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover
- Support Letter

**Accessories**

**Card Readers<sup>5</sup>**

**MiCard Readers<sup>9</sup>**  
Proximity card reader designed to be used with uniFLOW for card authentication.

**Copy Card Reader-F1**  
Department ID authentication with Canon magnetic stripe cards.

**Print Accessories**

**Barcode Print Kit-E1**  
Installs bar code fonts for bar code printing.

**Send PDF Security Kit-E1**  
Send encrypted PDFs and add digital device signatures.

**Control Interface Kit-C1**  
Connects third-party card reader or coin operator system to device.

**Extended Service Packs**

**Canon eCarePAK**  
Canon Extended Service Plans offer coverage beyond the standard one-year limited warranty<sup>10</sup> up to four years.

**GENUINE<sup>®</sup> CONSUMABLES**



**Toner T13**  
(Yield up to 10,600 Pages)

Use of Canon GENUINE toner cartridges helps provide longer equipment life, high yields, reliable performance, high-quality output, and minimal jamming or issues.

*Toner yielding 2,700 pages is included in the box.*

<sup>1</sup> Canon PRINT Business is a free app available on the App Store<sup>®</sup> and Google Play<sup>™</sup> Store. For more information, including compatibility, please visit <https://www.usa.canon.com/mobile-app>. Please see the respective websites for Apple AirPrint and Mopria Print Service for compatibility and additional information.

<sup>2</sup> Please reference user manuals for details on settings available to export.

<sup>3</sup> For latest EPEAT ratings (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>4</sup> Includes consumables.

<sup>5</sup> Print speed is based on internal testing. Print speed may vary, depending on the number of copies selected as well as the settings for size, type, and orientation of paper.

<sup>6</sup> Requires optional uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>7</sup> Requires optional PDF SECURITY-E1.

<sup>8</sup> Attachment kit required.

<sup>9</sup> Ask Dealer for reader compatibility information.

<sup>10</sup> Limited warranty program is subject to certain conditions and restrictions. See warranty card for details.



usa.canon.com



As an ENERGY STAR partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has qualified this model as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageCLASS X, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. uniFLOW is a registered trademark of NT-ware Systemprogrammierung GmbH. Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Android and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc. iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, and the App Store are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Mopria and the Mopria logo are trademarks of the Mopria Alliance, Inc. Windows and Windows Server are trademarks of Microsoft Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of these features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2023 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

11/23-1178-8627





**HEMINGFORD ELEMENTARY**

**CANON IR ADV DX6855**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>55 COPIES PER MIN</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>4 PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>STAPLER/SORTER FINISHING</i>

**HEMINGFORD SUPERINTENDENTS OFFICE**

**CANON imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C3926i**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>26 COPIES PER MIN B&amp;W</i>
<i>26 COPIES PER MIN COLOR</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>3- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>FAX UNIT</i>	

**HEMINGFORD SCHOOLS FRONT OFFICE**

**CANON imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5860**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>60 COPIES PER MIN B&amp;W</i>
<i>60 COPIES PER MIN COLOR</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>6- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>BOOKLET FINISHER WITH TRI-FOLD</i>	<i>2/3 HOLE PUNCH UNIT</i>



**HEMINGFORD HIGH SCHOOL**

**CANON IR ADV DX6855**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>55 COPIES PER MIN</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>4 PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>STAPLER/SORTER FINISHING</i>

**THROUGHOUT THE DISTRICT**

**4 CANON imageCLASS X MF1440**

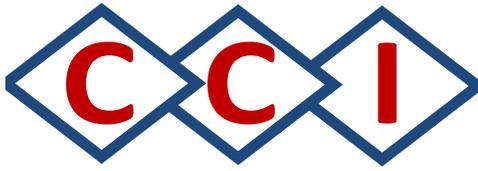
**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING AUTOMATIC DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>WI-FI ENABLED</i>
<i>42 BLACK &amp; WHITE COPIES PER MIN</i>	<i>2- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	

48 MONTHS ..... \$1,208.88 PER MONTH  
This includes all 8 copiers, set up, delivery and training for the term of the contract.

**SERVICE AGREEMENT**

INCLUDES ALL PARTS, LABOR, DRUMS, AND TONER.  
\$235.00 per month plus \$.045 per copy for color copies. Black & white overages will be billed at \$.0047 per copy over 600,000 per year.



**Canon**  
**SAVIN.**

- *OVER 40 YEARS OF EXPERIENCE IN THE INDUSTRY*
- *LOCAL REFERENCES AVAILABLE*
- *MULTIPLE LOCAL TECHNICIANS AVAILABLE*
- *EXCELLENT CUSTOMER SERVICE*
- *SUPPORTS THE LOCAL ECONOMY*

***COPIER CONNECTION, INC.***

# ***PROPOSAL***

Presented to: ***HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS***

***CANON DIGITAL COPIER'S***  
***1 IRA-DXC5860, 2 IRA-DX 6855, 4 Imageclass xMF-***  
***1333C, 1 IRA-DXC 3926***

For any further information please contact:

**Rick Forsstrom**

Office: (308) 632-5520 ext. 108

Email: [sbsales@sbcopiers.com](mailto:sbsales@sbcopiers.com)

Cell: (308) 641-3019

**1912 Broadway Scottsbluff, NE - Phone (308) 632-5520 - Fax (308) 632-2895**

A division of: **ConnectingPoint**



imageRUNNER  
ADVANCE DX  
C5870i/C5860i  
C5850i/C5840i

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series

Color  
Mid-volume  
Multifunction

Print up to 70 ppm (BW/color)

Scan up to 270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" × 18"

6,350-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 10.1" intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- A unique, customized experience tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Hot Folders allow users to drag and drop a file into a hot folder and automatically print with pre-defined settings such as number of copies and finishing requirements.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\*<sup>2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at startup. McAfee Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes a whitelist to protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security policy settings can be controlled with a dedicated password, configured from a central location, and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features, using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images, thanks to Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications that help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability.

\* Security Information and Event Management.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.



## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and rated EPEAT® Gold<sup>5</sup>

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series



### STAPLE FINISHER-AB2\*

- 2-tray, 3,250-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)



### BOOKLET FINISHER-A1 WITH TRI-FOLD\*

- 2-tray, 3,250-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets
- Booklet-making up to 20 sheets and saddle-folding up to 3 sheets
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)
- Built in C-Fold up to 5 sheets



### INNER FINISHER-L1

- 2-tray, 550-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets within the footprint of the main unit
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (Inner 2/3 Hole Puncher-D1)



### INNER 2-WAY TRAY-M1



### BUFFER PASS UNIT-P2



### HIGH CAPACITY CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-C1

- 2,450-sheet capacity
- Supports up to Letter
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index



### CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-AQ1

- Two 550-sheet cassettes
- Supports up to 12" x 18"
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index



### CABINET TYPE-V



### INNER TRAY\*



### COPY TRAY KIT



### PAPER DECK UNIT-F1

- 2,700-sheet capacity
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index
- Supports Letter



### PAPER FOLDING UNIT-L1\*\*

- Offers Z-Fold



### imagePASS-R1

- Delivers fast processing speed, outstanding image quality, and time-saving workflow
- Personalized printing with the built-in, entry-level Fiery FreeForm™ or with the supported variable data printing (VDP) formats

\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2.  
 \* Required when Staple Finisher-AB2/Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Inner Finisher-L1 is not installed.  
 \*\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2 and either Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Staple Finisher-AB2.

**Main Unit****Type**

Color Laser Multifunctional

**Core Functions**Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax**Control Panel**

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Flat-panel

**Memory**

5.0 GB RAM

**Solid State Drive**Standard: 256 GB  
Optional: 1 TB**Interface Connection**Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)  
Optional: Bluetooth Low Energy**Others**Standard: USB 2.0 (Host) x1, USB 3.0 (Host) x1,  
USB 2.0 (Device) x1  
Optional: Copy Control Interface**Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with Staple Finisher-AB2 or Booklet Finisher-A1  
with Tri-Fold and 3rd Copy Tray Kit-A1)**Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Stack Bypass  
Optional: Dual 550-Sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Feeding Unit-AM1), 2,450-Sheet  
High Capacity Paper Cassette (High  
Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1),  
2,700-Sheet Paper Deck  
(Paper Deck Unit-F1)**Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 6,350 Sheets**Finishing Capabilities**Standard: Collate, Group  
With Options: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch,  
Hole Punch, Staple Free Stapling, Staple On  
Demand<sup>6</sup>**Supported Media Types**Multi-Purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Coated,  
Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Label,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Tab, Envelope  
Paper Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Bond,  
Transparency, Pre-punched, Letterhead,  
Envelope<sup>7</sup>**Supported Media Sizes**Upper Cassette: Letter, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x  
8-1/2")  
Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18")  
Multi-Purpose Tray: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R,  
Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL,  
ISO-C5], Envelope Custom Size (3-7/8" x  
3-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18"), Custom Size/  
Free Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18")**Supported Media Weights**Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Stack Bypass: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)**Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)**C5870i: Up to 70 ppm (Letter); Up to 42 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 40 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 35 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5860i: Up to 60 ppm (Letter); Up to 36 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 34 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 32 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5850i: Up to 50 ppm (Letter); Up to 30 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 29 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 27 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5840i: Up to 40 ppm (Letter); Up to 24 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 23 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 21 ppm (11" x 17")**Warm-up Time**From Power On: Approx. 6 Seconds<sup>8</sup>  
From Sleep Mode<sup>9</sup>  
C5870i: Approx. 7 Seconds  
C5860i/ C5850i/ C5840i: Approx. 6 Seconds  
Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>10</sup>**Dimensions (W x D x H)**24-3/8" x 28-1/2" x 36-7/8" (620 x 722 x 937 mm)<sup>11</sup>**Installation Space (W x D)**Basic: 44-7/8" x 45-3/4" (1,138 x 1,162 mm)  
(Right Cover Open with Multi-purpose  
tray extended + Cassette Drawers Open)  
Fully Configured: 73-1/2" x 45-3/4" (1,866 x 1,162 mm)  
(Staple Finisher-AB1 or Booklet Finisher-AB1  
with the extension tray extended + Paper  
Deck Unit-F1 + Cassette Drawers open)**Weight<sup>12</sup>**C5870i: Approx. 238.1 lb. (108 kg)  
C5860i/ C5850i: Approx. 231.5 lb. (105 kg)  
C5840i: Approx. 229.3 lb. (104 kg)**Print Specifications****Print Resolution (dpi)**

1200 x 1200

**Standard Page Description Languages**

UFR II, PCL6, Adobe PS 3

**Supported File Types**PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS,<sup>13</sup> XPS**Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Universal Print by Microsoft®, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.

**Fonts**PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional Chinese),<sup>14</sup>  
Barcode Fonts<sup>15</sup>  
PS: 136 Roman**Operating System<sup>16</sup>**UFR II/PS: Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server2008/  
Server2008 R2/Server2012/Server2012  
R2/Server2016/Server2019, Mac OS X  
(10.11 or later)  
PCL: Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server2008/  
Server2008 R2/Server2012/Server2012  
R2/Server2016/Server2019  
PPD: Windows® 7/8.1/10, Mac OS X(10.10 or later)**Copy Specifications****First-Copy-Out Time**C5870i: As fast as 2.7 seconds (BW)/  
3.7 seconds (Color)  
C5860i: As fast as 2.9 seconds (BW)/  
4.2 seconds (Color)  
C5850i: As fast as 3.3 seconds (BW)/  
4.9 seconds (Color)  
C5840i: As fast as 4.1 seconds (BW)/  
6.1 seconds (Color)**Copy Resolution (dpi)**

600 x 600

**Multiple Copies**

Up to 999

**Magnification**

25%-400% (1% Increments)

**Preset Reductions/Enlargements**25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%,  
200%, 400%**Scan Specifications****Type**

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

**Document Feeder Paper Capacity**

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

**Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes**11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17"**Document Feeder Supported Media Weights**Single-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)  
Double-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)**Platen Acceptable Originals**

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

**Pull Scan**Color Network Supported OS: ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server 2008/  
Server 2008 R2/Server 2012/  
Server 2012 R2/Server 2016**Scan Resolution (dpi)**Scan for Copy: 600 x 600  
Scan for Send: (Push) 600 x 600 (SMB/FTP/WebDAV/  
iFAX), (Pull) 600 x 600  
Scan for Fax: 600 x 600**Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to compatible mobile devices and certain cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

**Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)**Single-sided Scanning: 135/135 (300 dpi), 80/80 (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning: 270/270 (300 dpi), 160/90 (600 dpi)**Send Specifications****Destination**Standard: E-mail/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB3.0, FTP,  
WebDAV, Mail Box  
Optional: Super G3 FAX, IP Fax**Address Book**

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

**Send Resolution (dpi)**Push: Up to 600 x 600  
Pull: Up to 600 x 600**Communication Protocol**File: FTP(TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV  
Email: SMTP, POP3**File Format**Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Encrypted, Compact,  
Searchable, Apply Policy, Optimize for  
Web, User Signature, PDF A/1-b, Limited  
Color, Device Signature, User Signature),  
XPS (Compact, Searchable, Device Signature,  
User Signature), Office Open XML  
(PowerPoint, Word)**Fax Specifications (Optional)****Modem Speed**Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps**Compression Method**

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

**Resolution (dpi)**

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

**Sending/Recording Size**

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

**Fax Memory**

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs)

**Speed Dials**

Max. 200

**Group Dials/Destinations**

Max. 199 Dials

**Sequential Broadcast**

Max. 256 Addresses

**Memory Backup**

Yes

**Store Specifications**

**Mail Box (Number Supported)**

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 10,000 Pages (2,000 jobs) Stored

**Advanced Box**

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV

Supported

Client PC: Windows (Windows 8.1/10)

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3

**Advanced Box Available Disc Space**

Approx. 16 GB (Standard HDD)

Approx. 480 GB (With Optional 1 TB HDD)

**Security Specifications**

**Authentication and Access Control**

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express<sup>17</sup> (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

**Document Security**

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>18</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax In-box Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle<sup>®</sup> Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Box Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

**Network Security**

TLS 1.3, IPSec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN, Prohibit the execution of files stored in Advanced Box in the MFP, Scan and Send-Virus Concerns for E-mail Reception

**Device Security**

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFD Software Integrity, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection)

**Device Management and Auditing**

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

**Environmental Specifications**

**Operating Environment**

Temperature: 50 to 86°F

Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (Relative Humidity)

**Power Requirements**

C5870i/ C5860i/ 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 12 A

C5850i: 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 10 A

C5840i: 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 10 A

**Power Consumption**

Maximum: Approx. 1,800 W

Standby: Approx. 56.1 W<sup>19</sup>

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>20</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>21</sup>

C5870i: 0.86 kWh

C5860i: 0.71 kWh

C5850i: 0.57 kWh

C5840i: 0.47 kWh

**Standards**

ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Certified

Rated EPEAT<sup>®</sup> Gold

**Consumables**

**Toner<sup>22</sup>**

GPR-61L Toner BK/C/M/Y

GPR-61L Toner C/M/Y

**Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)**

GPR-61L Toner

BK: 71,000 Pages

GPR-61L Toner

C/M/Y: 60,000 Pages

GPR-61L Toner

C/M/Y: 26,000 Pages

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service provider's Terms and Conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.

<sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.

<sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.

<sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>6</sup> Finishing capabilities vary depending on the options connected.

<sup>7</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment (standard) is required.

<sup>8</sup> Time from device power-on, until copy ready (not print reservation).

<sup>9</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.

<sup>10</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.

<sup>11</sup> Includes main unit and either Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1, High Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1, or Cabinet Type-V.

<sup>12</sup> Includes main unit, consumables, and Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1.

<sup>13</sup> EPS can be printed directly only from the Remote User Interface.

<sup>14</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>15</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>16</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix may be supported. Some of these solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.

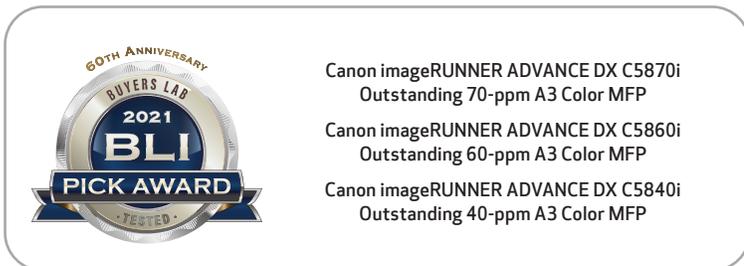
<sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>19</sup> Reference Value (measured one unit).

<sup>20</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>21</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

<sup>22</sup> GPR-61L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y). Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 26,000 images.



As an ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in the US and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Product shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors. ©2022 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.



[usa.canon.com](http://usa.canon.com)



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit [usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6800 Series

Print up to 70 ppm (BW)

Scan up to 270/270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" × 18"

6,350-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.

Black-and-white  
Mid- to High-volume  
Multifunction



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 10.1" intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- A unique, customized experience tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Hot Folders allow users to drag and drop a file into a hot folder, and automatically print with predefined settings such as number of copies and finishing requirements.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\*<sup>2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at startup. McAfee Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes a whitelist to protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security policy settings can be controlled with a dedicated password, configured from a central location, and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features, using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for crisp text and consistent images in rich black-and-white tones.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability.

\* Security Information and Event Management



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.

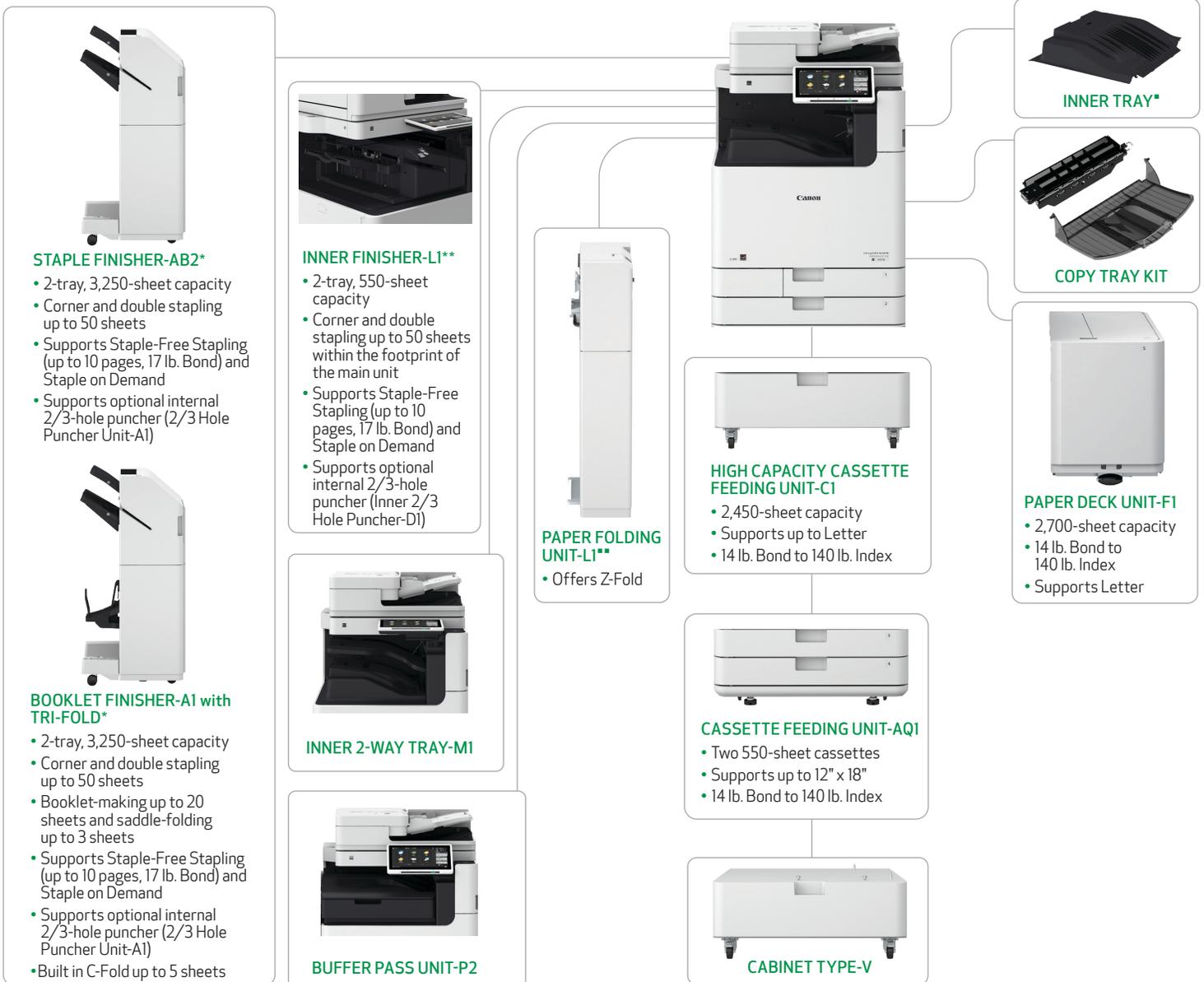


## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally-conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6800 Series



\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2.  
 \*\* Inner Finisher-L1 not available on imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6870i.  
 \* Required when Staple Finisher-AB2/Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Inner Finisher-L1 is not installed.  
 \*\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2 and either Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Staple Finisher-AB2.

## Main Unit

### Type

Monochrome Laser Multifunctional

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax

### Control Panel

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Flat-panel

### Memory

5.0 GB RAM

### Solid State Drive

Standard: 256 GB  
Optional: 1 TB

### Interface Connection

Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)

Optional:  
Others Bluetooth Low Energy

Standard: USB 2.0 (Host) x1, USB 3.0 (Host) x1,  
USB 2.0 (Device) x1  
Optional: Copy Control Interface

### Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 200 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with Staple Finisher-AB2 or Paper Folding/Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold and third Copy Tray Kit-A1)

### Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Stack Bypass  
Optional: Dual 550-Sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Feeding Unit-AM1), 2,450-Sheet  
High Capacity Paper Cassette (High  
Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1),  
2,700-Sheet Paper Deck  
(Paper Deck Unit-F1)

### Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 6,350 Sheets

### Finishing Capabilities

Standard: Collate, Group  
With Options: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch,  
Hole Punch, Staple Free Stapling, Staple On  
Demand<sup>6</sup>

### Supported Media Types

Multi-Purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Coated,  
Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Label,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Tab, Envelope  
Paper: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Bond,  
Cassettes: Transparency, Pre-punched, Letterhead,  
Envelope<sup>7</sup>

### Supported Media Sizes

Upper Cassette: Letter, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x  
8-1/2")  
Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18")  
Multi-Purpose Tray: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R,  
Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL,  
ISO-C5], Envelope Custom Size (3-7/8" x  
3-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18"), Custom Size/  
Free Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18")

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Stack Bypass: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Print/Copy Speed (BW)

6870i: Up to 70 ppm (Letter), up to 42 ppm  
(Letter-R), up to 40 ppm (Legal), up to  
35 ppm (11" x 17")  
6860i: Up to 60 ppm (Letter), up to 36 ppm  
(Letter-R), up to 34 ppm (Legal), up to  
32 ppm (11" x 17")  
6855i: Up to 55 ppm (Letter), up to 36 ppm  
(Letter-R), up to 32 ppm (Legal), up to 29  
ppm (11" x 17")

### Warm-up Time

From Power On: Approx. 6 Seconds<sup>8</sup>  
From Sleep Mode<sup>9</sup>  
6870i: 7 Seconds or Less  
6860i: 6 Seconds or Less  
6855i: 6 Seconds or Less  
Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>10</sup>

### Dimensions (W x D x H)

24-3/8" x 28-1/2" x 36-7/8" (620 x 722 x 937 mm)<sup>11</sup>

### Installation Space (W x D)

Basic: 44-7/8" x 45-3/4" (1,138 x 1,162 mm)  
(Right Cover Open with Multi-purpose  
tray extended + Cassette Drawers Open)  
Fully Configured: 73-1/2" x 45-3/4" (1,866 mm x 1,162 mm)  
(Staple Finisher-AB2 or Paper Folding/  
Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold with the  
extension tray extended + Paper Deck  
Unit-F1 + Cassette Drawers open)

### Weight<sup>12</sup>

6870i: Approx. 205 lb. (93 kg)  
6860i: Approx. 200.6 lb. (91 kg)  
6855i: Approx. 200.6 lb. (91 kg)

## Print Specifications

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL6, Adobe PS 3

### Supported File Types

PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS,<sup>13</sup> XPS

### Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Universal Print by Microsoft®, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.

### Fonts

PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional Chinese),<sup>14</sup>  
Barcode Fonts<sup>15</sup>  
PS: 136 Roman

### Operating System<sup>16</sup>

UFR II: Windows® 8.1/10/11/Server 2012/Server  
2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server  
2022, Mac OS X (10.11 or later)  
PCL: Windows® 8.1/10/11/Server 2012/Server  
2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server  
2022 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019  
PS: Windows® 8.1/10/11/Server 2012/Server  
2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server  
2022, Mac OS X (10.11 or later)  
PPD: Windows® 8.1/10/11, Mac OS X (10.11 or later)

## Copy Specifications

### First-Copy-Out Time

6870i: Approx. 2.7 Seconds or Less  
6860i: Approx. 2.9 Seconds or Less  
6855i: Approx. 2.9 Seconds or Less

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Multiple Copies

Up to 9,999

### Magnification

25%-400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions/Enlargements

25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%,  
200%, 400%

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17"

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

Single-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)  
Double-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

### Pull Scan

Color Network Supported OS: ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
Windows® 8.1/10/11/Server2012/  
Server2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/  
Server 2022

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Scan for Copy: 600 x 600  
Scan for Send: (Push) 600 x 600 (SMB/FTP/WebDAV/  
IFAX), (Pull) 600 x 600  
Scan for Fax: 600 x 600

### Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to compatible mobile devices and certain cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

### Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)

Single-sided Scanning: 135/135 (300 dpi), 80/80 (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning: 270/270 (300 dpi), 160/90 (600 dpi)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Standard: E-mail/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB3.0, FTP,  
WebDAV, Mail Box  
Optional: Super G3 FAX, IP Fax

### Address Book

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

Push: Up to 600 x 600  
Pull: Up to 600 x 600

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP(TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV  
Email: SMTP, POP3

### File Format

Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Encrypted, Compact,  
Searchable, Apply Policy, Optimize for  
Web, User Signature, PDF A/1-b, Limited  
Color, Device Signature, User Signature),  
XPS (Compact, Searchable, Device Signature,  
User Signature), Office Open XML  
(PowerPoint, Word)

## Fax Specifications (Optional)

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

### Sending/Recording Size

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

### Fax Memory

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs)

### Speed Dials

Max. 200

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 199 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 256 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

## Store Specifications

### Mail Box (Number Supported)

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs) Stored

### Advanced Box

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV

Supported

Client PC: Windows (Windows 8.1/10)

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3

### Advanced Box Available Disc Space

Approx. 16 GB (Standard HDD)

Approx. 480 GB (With Optional 1 TB HDD)

## Security Specifications

### Authentication and Access Control

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express<sup>17</sup> (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

### Document Security

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>18</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax Inbox Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle<sup>®</sup> Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Box Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

### Network Security

TLS 1.3, IPSec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), WPA3 support (Wi-Fi), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN, Prohibit the execution of files stored in Advanced Box in the MFP, Scan and Send -Virus Concerns for Email Reception

### Device Security

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFD Software Integrity, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection)

### Device Management and Auditing

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86° F

Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (Relative Humidity)

### Power Requirements

110-127V, 60Hz, 12A

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1,800 W

Standby: Approx. 48.4 W<sup>19</sup>

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>20</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating:<sup>21</sup>

6870i: 0.89 kWh

6860i: 0.74 kWh

6855i: 0.68 kWh

### Standards

ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Certified<sup>22</sup>

Rated EPEAT<sup>®</sup> Gold<sup>22, 23</sup>

## Consumables

### Toner

GPR-63 Toner BK

### Toner Yield (Estimated @ 6% Coverage)

GPR-63 Toner: 71,500 Pages

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service providers' Terms and Conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.

<sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.

<sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.

<sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>6</sup> Finishing capabilities vary depending on the options connected.

<sup>7</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment (standard) is required.

<sup>8</sup> Time from device power-on, until copy ready (not print reservation).

<sup>9</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.

<sup>10</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.

<sup>11</sup> Includes main unit and standard ADF.

<sup>12</sup> Includes main unit, consumables, and Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1.

<sup>13</sup> EPS can be printed directly only from the Remote User Interface.

<sup>14</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>15</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>16</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix may be supported. Some of these solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.

<sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>19</sup> Reference Value (measured one unit).

<sup>20</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>21</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

<sup>22</sup> ENERGY STAR, TEC Values, and EPEAT is based off of ENERGY STAR version 3.0.

<sup>23</sup> imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6855i is pending EPEAT certification.

As an ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in the US and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Product shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.  
©2022 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

# Canon

[usa.canon.com](http://usa.canon.com)



Trellix

CANON  
GENUINE  
TONER, CARTRIDGE  
& PARTS



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit  
[usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C3900 Series

Color  
Low- to Mid-volume  
Multifunction

Print up to 35 ppm (BW/color)

Scan up to 270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" x 18"

2,300-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- A large, 10.1" responsive and intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability, making operation clear and virtually seamless.
- Consistent interface across the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX product line, allowing work to proceed effortlessly and with a minimal learning curve.
- A unique, customized experience that can be tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\*<sup>2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at setup. Includes automatic recovery of boot process for self resiliency.
- McAfee Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes whitelisting to help protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security settings can be established at once by selecting the environment type in Recommended Security Settings. Security policy settings can be configured from a central location and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images, thanks to Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications that help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability. This includes the 2022-2024 BLI Most Reliable A3 Brand Award from Keypoint Intelligence.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.

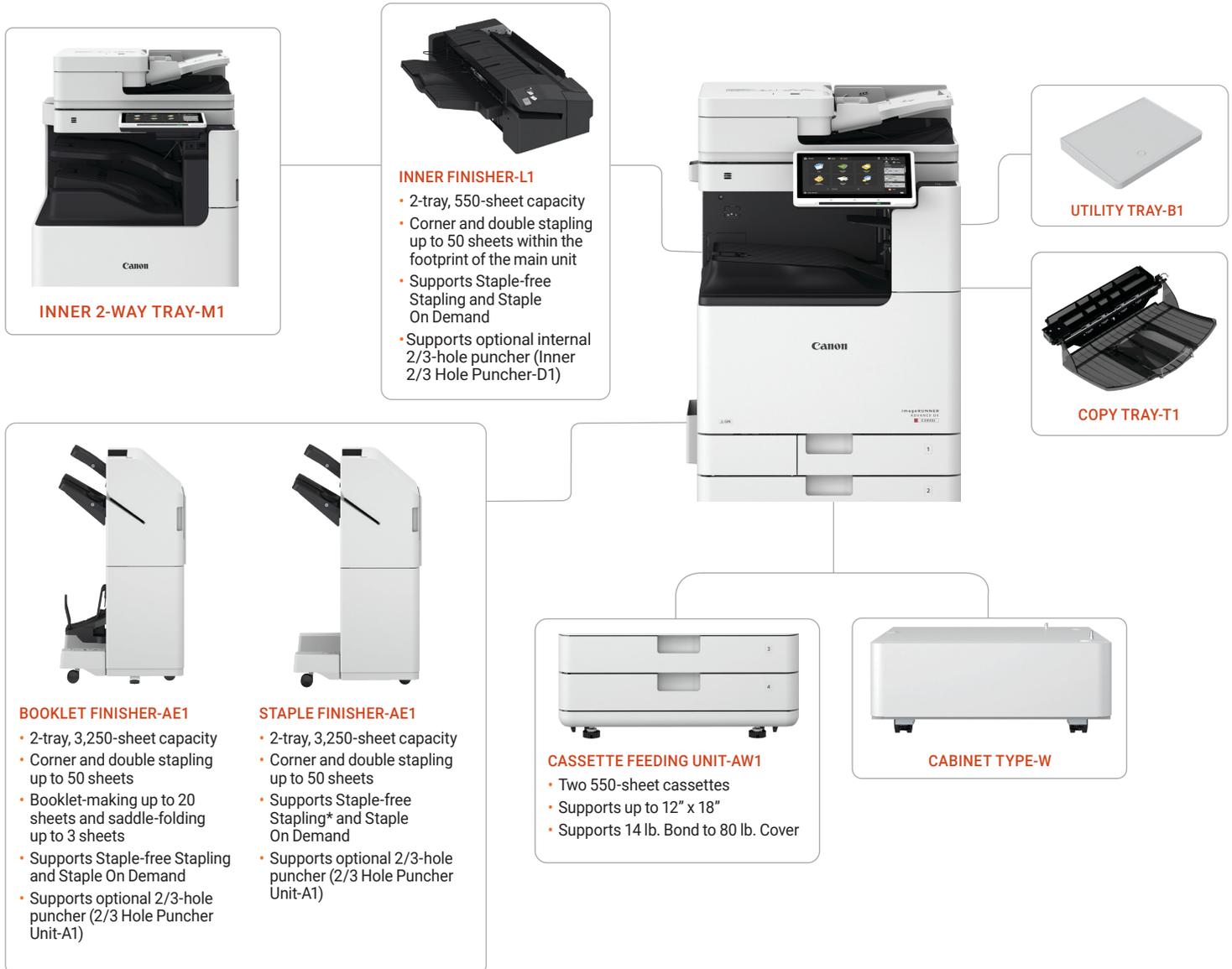


## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and lower-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Environmentally friendly packaging utilizes recyclable cardboard.
- Drum covers are constructed of regrind plastic, helping to lower environmental impact.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and rated EPEAT® Gold.<sup>5</sup>

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C3900 Series



\* Staple-Free stapling, up to 10 pages of 17 lb. Bond.

## Main Unit

### Type

Color Laser Multifunctional

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax

### Processor

1.8 GHz Dual Core Processor

### Control Panel

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Touch-panel

### Memory

3.5 GB RAM

### Solid State Drive

Standard: 256 GB/Maximum: 1 TB

### Interface Connection

Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Optional: Wireless LAN Board F-1  
Others

Standard: USB 2.0 x1 (Host), USB 3.0 x1 (Host),  
USB 2.0 x1 (Device)

Optional: Copy Control Interface, Serial Interface

### Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 2,300 Sheets

### Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Multipurpose Tray

Optional: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Feeding Unit-AW1)

### Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with Staple Finisher-AE1/Booklet  
Finisher-AE1 and Copy Tray-T1)

### Finishing Capabilities

Standard: Collate, Group  
With Finishers: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch,  
Hole Punch, Eco Staple, Staple On Demand

### Supported Media Types

Multi-purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Heavy, Recycled, Coated,  
Color, Tracing, Bond, Transparency,  
Label, Pre-punched, Envelope,  
Postcard, Letterhead

Upper Cassette: Thin, Plain, Heavy, Recycled, Color,  
Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Pre-  
punched, Envelope, Postcard, Letterhead

Lower Cassette: Thin, Plain, Heavy, Recycled, Color,  
Bond, Transparency, Pre-punched,  
Envelope<sup>5</sup>, Postcard, Letterhead

### Supported Media Sizes

Multi-purpose Tray: 12"x18", 11"x17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R  
Custom Size/Free Size: 4" x 5-7/8" to  
12" x 18", Envelopes (COM10 No.10,  
Monarch, ISO-C5, DL), Envelope Custom  
Size (3-7/8" x 3-7/8" to 12-5/8" x 18")

Upper Cassette: Letter, Executive, Statement-R  
Custom Size (4-1/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x  
8-1/2"), Envelopes (ISO-C5)

Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Custom Size  
(4-1/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18"), Envelopes<sup>5</sup>  
(COM10 No.10, Monarch, DL)

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Multipurpose Tray: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)

C3935i: Up to 35 ppm (Letter); Up to 23 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 17 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")

C3930i: Up to 30 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")

C3926i: Up to 26 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal/11" x 17")

### Warm-up Time

From Power On: Approx. 10 Seconds<sup>7</sup>

From Sleep Mode: Approx. 10 Seconds<sup>8</sup>

Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>9</sup>

### Dimensions (W x D x H)

22-1/4" x 28-1/2" x 35-3/8" (565 mm x 722 mm x 897 mm)<sup>10</sup>

### Installation Space (W x D)

Basic: 38-1/2" x 44-1/8" (978 mm x 1119 mm)<sup>11</sup>

Fully Configured: 65" x 44-1/8" (1651 mm x 1119 mm)<sup>12</sup>

### Weight

Approx. 187.4 lb. (85 kg) including toner

## Print Specifications

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 600, 1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL<sup>®</sup>6, Adobe<sup>®</sup> PS<sup>®</sup> 3

### Supported File Types

PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS, XPS

### Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Universal Print by Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.

### Fonts

PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional  
Chinese),<sup>13</sup> Barcode Fonts<sup>14</sup>

PS: 136 Roman

### Operating System<sup>15</sup>

UFR/II/PS: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022,  
macOS (10.13 or later)

PCL: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022

PS: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022,  
macOS (10.13 or later)

PPD: Windows<sup>®</sup> 10/11, macOS (10.13 or later)

## Copy Specifications

### First-Copy-Out Time (LTR)

C3935i: Approx. 5.5 seconds (BW)/  
7.4 seconds (Color)

C3930i/ C3926i: Approx. 6.1 seconds (BW)/  
8.4 seconds (Color)

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Multiple Copies

Up to 999

### Magnification

25%-400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reduction/Enlargement

25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%, 200%,  
400%

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder<sup>16</sup>

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17" (69.9 mm x 139.7  
mm to 304.8 mm x 431.8 mm)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

BW/Color: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to  
Original: 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

### Platen Maximum Scanning Size

Up to 11-3/4" x 17" (297.0 mm x 431.8 mm)

### Pull Scan

Color Network ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
Supported OS: Windows<sup>®</sup> 8.1/10/Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Scan for Copy: 600 x 600

Scan for Send: Push (600 x 600), SMB/FTP/WebDAV,  
Pull (600 x 600)

Scan for Fax: 600 x 600

### Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to mobile devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

### Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)

Single-sided: 135 ipm (300 dpi)/80 ipm (600 dpi)

Scanning:

Double-sided: 270 ipm (300 dpi)/160/90 ipm (600 dpi)

Scanning:

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Standard: E-mail/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB 3.0,  
FTP, WebDAV, Mail Box

Optional: Super G3 FAX, IP Fax

### Address Book

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

Push: Up to 600 x 600 dpi

Pull: Up to 600 x 600 dpi

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP (TCP/IP), SMB 3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV

Email: SMTP, POP3

### File Format

TIFF, JPEG, PDF(Compact, Searchable, Apply Policy,  
Optimize for Web, PDF/A-1b, Trace & Smooth, Encrypted,  
Device Signature, User Signature), XPS (Compact,  
Searchable, Device Signature, User Signature), Office  
Open XML (PowerPoint, Word)

## Fax Specifications

### Maximum Number of Connection Lines

2

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps

G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

### Sending/Receiving Size

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

### Fax Memory

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 Jobs)

### Speed Dials

Max. 200

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 199 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 256 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

## Store Specifications

### Box (Number Supported)

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 10,000 Pages (2,000 Jobs Stored)

### Advanced Box

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV Supported

Client PC: Windows® 10/11

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3 (Active Sessions)

### Advanced Box Available Disc Space

Standard: 16 GB (With Option: max. 480 GB)

## Security Specifications

### Authentication and Access Control

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express<sup>17</sup> (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

### Document Security

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>18</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax Inbox Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle® Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Space Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

### Network Security

TLS 1.3, IPSec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), WPA3 support (Wi-Fi), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), Communication Line Separation (G3 FAX, USB Port, Advanced Space, Scan and Send-Virus Concerns for E-mail Reception)

### Device Security

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFP Software Integrity, Automatic Recovery, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection)

### Device Management and Auditing

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F

Humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (Relative Humidity)

### Power Requirements

110V-127V, 60Hz, 8.5A

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1,500 W

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>19</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>20</sup>

C3935i: 0.33 kWh

C3930i: 0.29 kWh

C3926i: 0.26 kWh

### Standards

ENERGY STAR® Certified

Rated EPEAT® Gold<sup>5</sup>

## Consumables

### Toner<sup>21</sup>

GPR-66 Toner BK/C/M/Y

GPR-66L Toner C/M/Y

### Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)

GPR-66 Toner

BK: 38,000 pages

GPR-66 Toner

C/M/Y: 25,500 pages

GPR-66L Toner

C/M/Y: 11,000 pages

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service providers' Terms and Conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.

<sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.

<sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.

<sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>6</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment A (standard) is required.

<sup>7</sup> Time from device power-on until copy ready (not print reservation).

<sup>8</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.

<sup>9</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.

<sup>10</sup> Includes Single Pass DADF.

<sup>11</sup> With right cover open + Multi-purpose tray extension extended + paper cassette open.

<sup>12</sup> Includes Staple Finisher-AE1/Booklet Finisher-AE1 + Copy Tray-T1 extension extended + paper cassette open.

<sup>13</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>14</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>15</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix, may be supported. Some solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>16</sup> Detect Feeder Multi Sheet Feed is supported.

<sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.

<sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>19</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>20</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

<sup>21</sup> GPR-66L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y).

Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 11,000 images.

USA.CANON.COM/SIMPLYADVANCED



As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Some security features may impact functionality/performance; you may want to test these settings in your environment. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in the US and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All printer output images are simulated. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Products shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2023 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.

04/23-0345-8064



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit [usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).

## Color imageCLASS X MF1333C

Print up to 35 ppm (Color)

Print up to 8-1/2" x 14"

850-sheet maximum paper capacity

Supports uniFLOW and uniFLOW Online

Designed for small workgroups within an office or home environments used as part of an organization's extended print fleet, the Canon Color imageCLASS X MF1333C offers feature-rich capabilities with high-quality imaging and minimal maintenance. Print, copy, scan, and fax capabilities help you accomplish necessary tasks with just one machine. A 5" color touchscreen delivers an intuitive user experience and can be customized by a device administrator to simplify many daily tasks.

Color  
Compact  
Multifunction  
Printer



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 5" intuitive color touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- UI customization allows users to drag and drop frequently used icons.
- New Application Library features create a unique, customized device experience, and ease of use.
- Supports certain compatible mobile solutions for printing and scanning.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files through a single-pass, duplex document feeder.
- Designed for small print jobs with first-print-out time as fast as 7 seconds.
- Provides consistency with the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX Series.



### SECURITY FEATURES

- Helps reduce the risk of confidential information loss, since documents are only stored in short-term memory.
- Remotely control device access and set rules via optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online.
- Limit document distribution by implementing Send-to-Myself-only.
- Verify System at Startup is a process to help verify the validity of the device firmware and Application Library from unauthorized modifications.
- With imageWARE Enterprise Management Console Device Configuration Manager Plug-in, security settings can be captured and exported to other devices on the same network.<sup>2</sup>



### COST MANAGEMENT

- Leverage optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online for full accounting and reporting, pull printing, and job routing.
- Service parts are designed for machine's life cycle to help minimize the need for proactive maintenance and potentially reduce service calls.
- High-capacity, all-in-one cartridge helps reduce overall supply costs.
- Out-of-the-box, standard, two-sided printing plus the ability to print multiple pages onto one sheet help to reduce paper consumption.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics for rapid service response.
- Easily monitor device status and consumable levels, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security settings.



## QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

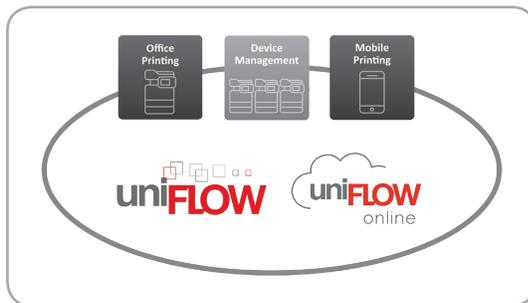
- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished.
- Intuitive maintenance videos for common tasks like consumables replacement.



## SUSTAINABILITY

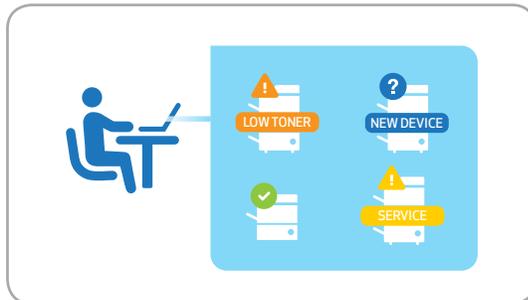
- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve lower energy consumption.
- Encourages environmentally conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and currently rated EPEAT® Silver.<sup>3</sup>

### KEY FEATURES



## MANAGE OUTPUT WITH uniFLOW SOFTWARE

The optional uniFLOW portfolio offers an on-premise or cloud solution that imageCLASS devices can utilize with flexible authentication. With either card-based or PIN-code-based authentication, imageCLASS devices can help secure output management, track costs with reporting, and operate mobile printing—one platform for your print, scan, and device management.



## FLEET MANAGEMENT TOOLS

imageWARE Enterprise Management Console can be used by a device administrator to centrally manage the Canon printer fleet, including consumables, status notifications, meters, and configuration settings. imageWARE Remote software allows for the service provider to manage devices proactively, including remote diagnosis and reporting. Local Content Delivery System facilitates remote firmware download at the device level.



## FAST, SINGLE-PASS DUPLEX SCANNING

The Color imageCLASS X MF1333C model leverages a single-pass document feeder for two-sided scanning at up to 80 images per minute (ipm) in black-and-white or up to 40 ipm in color. Easily scan directly to PC, USB, email, or the network. Scanned files can be converted into multiple file formats, including Hi-Compression PDF and Searchable PDF (OCR).



Single-Pass 2-Sided Scan



## EASY TO USE WITH APPLICATION LIBRARY

Unique to the Canon product line, the Application Library platform allows for one-touch button creation of key functions: Print Template, Standby Slide (screen saver), Scan-to-Preset Destination, ID Card Copy, Consumables Information, Copy (Eco), Copy (Bleed Reduce), Passport Copy, Fax and Store, Name and Scan, Copy (Enhanced Text), Language, Print Client Faxes, Fax to Preset Destination, Template Email, Standby Slide from Server, and Print File from Server.



APPLICATION LIBRARY

### COLOR imageCLASS X MF1333C

## Main Unit

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Fax

### Processor

Cortex-A9MPCore 1200 MHzx2

### Control Panel

5" Color Touch Panel

### Memory

1 GB RAM

### Standard Interface Connection

USB 2.0 x2 (Host), USB 2.0 x1 (Device) High-Speed, 10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet (Network), Wi-Fi 802.11b/g/n, Wi-Fi® Direct Connection

### Paper Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 300 Sheets  
Maximum: 850 Sheets

### Paper Sources (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250-sheet Paper Cassette,  
50-sheet Stack Bypass  
Optional: 550-sheet Paper Cassette  
(Paper Feeder PF-K1)

### Paper Output Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 75 Sheets

### Supported Media Types

Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled, Coated, Label, Pre-punched, Letterhead, PostCard, Envelope  
Stack Bypass: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled, Coated, Label, Pre-punched, Letterhead, PostCard, Envelope

### Supported Media Sizes

Cassettes: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Index Card, Envelope: [No. 10 (COM10), Monarch, ISO-C5, DL], Custom (Min. 3.9" x 5.8" to Max. 8.5" x 14")  
Stack Bypass: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Index Card, Envelope: [No. 10 (COM10), Monarch, ISO-C5, DL], Custom (Min. 3" x 5" to Max. 8.5" x 14")

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 16 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover (60 to 200 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
16 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover  
Stack Bypass: (60 to 200 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Warm-Up Time

From Power On: 14 Seconds or Less  
From Sleep Mode: 5.3 Seconds or Less

### Dimensions (W x D)

Standard: 16.7" x 18.1"  
(Desktop): (425 mm x 461 mm)

### Installation Space (W x D)

Fully Configured: 16.7" x 36.1"  
(425 mm x 917 mm)

### Weight<sup>4</sup>

Main Unit: Approx. 48.5 lb. (22 kg)  
(Standard):

### Supported OS

Windows® 8.1/10/11, Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022, MAC OS (10.12 or later)

## Print Specifications

### Printing Method

Laser Beam Printing

### Print Speed (Color)<sup>5</sup>

Up to 35 ppm (1-Sided Letter); Up to 31 ppm (2-Sided Letter)

### First-Print-Out Time

Approx. 7 Seconds

### Recommended Monthly Page Volume

750 - 4,000 Pages

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL®6, PCL®5, Adobe PostScript® 3™

### Double-Sided Printing

Automatic (Standard)

### Direct Print

Available from USB memory  
Supported file types: TIFF, JPEG, PDF and XPS

### Printing from Mobile and Cloud-based Services<sup>1</sup>

Apple® AirPrint® Canon PRINT Business, Mopria™ Print Service, Canon Print Service, uniFLOW Online

### Fonts

PCL: 93 Fonts  
PS: 136 Fonts

### Print Features

Secure Watermark, Header/Footer, Page Layout, Two-sided Printing, Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations, Toner Reduction, Poster Printing, Print Date

## Copy Specifications

### Copy Speed

Up to 35 ppm (1-Sided Letter); Up to 31 ppm (2-Sided Letter)

### First-Copy-Out Time (Letter)

Platen: 8.1 seconds/9.2 seconds (BW/Color)  
ADF: 7.4 seconds/8.6 seconds (BW/Color)

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Copy Size

Platen: Up to Letter  
ADF: Up to Legal

### Multiple Copies

Up to 999 Copies

### Magnification

25% - 400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions

25%, 50%, 64%, 78%

### Preset Enlargements

129%, 200%, 400%

### Copy Features

Preset R/E Ratios by Area, Two-Sided, Density Adjustment, Original Type Selection, Two-sided Original, Sort, N-on-1, Different Size Originals, Sharpness, Erase Frame, Copy ID Card, Copy Passport, Color Mode, Reserved Copy

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

50 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

Legal, Letter, Statement

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

14-28 lb. Bond (50-105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book

### Pull Scan

ScanGear MF for TWAIN, and WIA

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Push Scan: Up to 300 x 600  
Pull Scan: Up to 600 x 600

### Scan Speed (Letter)

Single-sided: 20/40 ipm (300 x 600 dpi) (Color/BW)  
Double-sided: 40/80 ipm (300 x 600 dpi) (Color/BW)

### Memory Media

Standard USB Memory (JPEG, TIFF, PDF)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Email/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB, FTP

### Address Book

LDAP (50)/Local (300)/Speed Dial (281)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

Pull: Max. 9600 x 9600  
Push: 192 x 204 (iFax), 300 x 300 (email/SMB/FTP)

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP (TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP)  
Email/iFax: SMTP (Send), POP3 (Receive)

### File Format

Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Compact, Searchable)  
Optional: PDF (Encrypted, Digital Signature)

## Fax Specifications

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

Up to 400 x 400

### Sending/Recording Size

Statement to Legal

### Fax Memory

Up to 512 Pages

### Speed Dials

Max. 281

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 299 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 310 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

### Fax Features

Sender's Name (TTI), Direct Send, Preview, TX Report, Sequential Broadcasting

## Security Specifications

### Authentication

Standard: Department ID Authentication, Embedded Universal Login Manager  
Optional: uniFLOW, uniFLOW Online

### Data

Standard: Verify System at Startup

### Network

Standard: TLS 1.3, IPsec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMPv3, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Enabling/Disabling (Network Applications, Remote UI, USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN

### Document

Standard: Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>6</sup>), Scan Security<sup>7</sup> (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS), Send Data Security (Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History)

### Wi-Fi Authentication Methods

Wi-Fi: 128(104)/64(40)bit WEP, WPA-PSK  
Infrastructure (TKIP/AES-CCMP), WPA2-PSK  
Mode: (TKIP/AES-CCMP), WPA-EAP (AES-CCMP), WPA2-EAP(AES-CCMP)

Wi-Fi Access Point: WPA2-PSK(AES-CCMP)

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F  
Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (No Condensation)

### Power Requirements

AC110-127V: 6.6A, 60Hz

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1610 W or less  
Standby: Approx. 24.0 W  
Sleep Mode: Approx. 1.0 W  
Typical: 0.34 kWh  
Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating:

### Standards

ENERGY STAR® Qualified, Currently Rated EPEAT Silver<sup>3</sup>



**PAPER FEEDER PF-K1**

- 550-Sheet Capacity
- 16 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover
- Supports Letter

**Accessories**

**Card Readers<sup>8</sup>**

**MiCard Attachment Kit-B1<sup>9</sup>**  
Proximity card reader designed to be used with uniFLOW for card authentication.

**Copy Card Reader-F1<sup>10</sup>**  
Department ID authentication with Canon magnetic stripe cards.

**Copy Control Interface Kit C-1**  
Connects third-party reader or coin operator system to device.

**Print/Scan Accessories**

**Barcode Print Kit-E1**  
Installs bar code fonts for bar code printing.

**Send PDF Security Feature Set-E1**  
Send encrypted PDFs and add digital device signatures.

**Extended Service Packs**

**Canon eCarePAK**  
Canon Extended Service Plans offer coverage beyond the standard one-year limited warranty<sup>11</sup> up to four years.

**GENUINE CONSUMABLES**

Always look for the Canon anti-counterfeiting hologram on your Canon GENUINE product packaging.



Toner T12 Black	Yields 1,600 Impressions
Toner T12 Cyan	Yields 1,600 Impressions
Toner T12 Magenta	Yields 1,600 Impressions
Toner T12 Yellow	Yields 1,600 Impressions

Use of Canon GENUINE toner cartridges helps provide longer equipment life, high yields, reliable performance, high-quality output, and minimal jamming or issues. Black Toner (yielding 1,600 pages) and C/M/Y Toners (yielding 1,600 pages each) are included in the box.

<sup>1</sup> Canon PRINT Business is a free app available on the App Store® and Google Play™ Store. For more information, including compatibility, please visit <https://www.usa.canon.com/mobile-app>. Please see the respective websites for Apple AirPrint and Mopria Print Service for compatibility and additional information.

<sup>2</sup> Please reference user manuals for details on settings available to export.

<sup>3</sup> For latest EPEAT ratings (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>4</sup> Includes consumables.

<sup>5</sup> Print speed is based on internal testing. Print speed may vary, depending on the number of copies selected as well as the settings for size, type, and orientation of paper.

<sup>6</sup> Requires optional uniFLOW Online / uniFLOW.

<sup>7</sup> Requires optional PDF SECURITY-E1.

<sup>8</sup> Attachment kit required.

<sup>9</sup> Contact your Canon representative for information on reader compatibility.

<sup>10</sup> Copy Card Reader Attachment-J1 Required.

<sup>11</sup> Limited warranty program is subject to certain conditions and restrictions. See warranty card for details.



usa.canon.com



As an ENERGY STAR partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has qualified this model as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageCLASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. uniFLOW is a registered trademark of NT-ware Systemprogrammierung GmbH. Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Android and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc. iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, and the App Store are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Mopria and the Mopria logo are trademarks of the Mopria Alliance, Inc. Windows and Windows Server are trademarks of Microsoft Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of these features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2023 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

3/23-0486-7967





**HEMINGFORD ELEMENTARY**

**CANON IR ADV DX6855**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>55 COPIES PER MIN</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>4 PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>STAPLER/SORTER FINISHING</i>

**HEMINGFORD SUPERINTENDENTS OFFICE**

**CANON imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C3926i**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>26 COPIES PER MIN B&amp;W</i>
<i>26 COPIES PER MIN COLOR</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>3- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>FAX UNIT</i>	

**HEMINGFORD SCHOOLS FRONT OFFICE**

**CANON imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5860**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>60 COPIES PER MIN B&amp;W</i>
<i>60 COPIES PER MIN COLOR</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>6- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>BOOKLET FINISHER WITH TRI-FOLD</i>	<i>2/3 HOLE PUNCH UNIT</i>



**HEMINGFORD HIGH SCHOOL**

**CANON IR ADV DX6855**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>55 COPIES PER MIN</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>4 PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>STAPLER/SORTER FINISHING</i>

**THROUGHOUT THE DISTRICT**

**4 CANON imageCLASS X MF1333C**

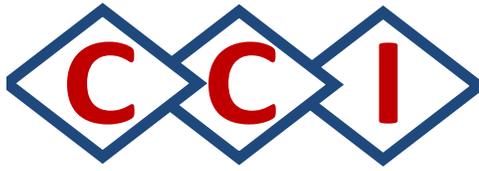
**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING AUTOMATIC DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>35 BLACK &amp; WHITE/COLOR COPIES PER MIN</i>	<i>2- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>NETWORK SCANNER/PRINTER</i>	
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	

48 MONTHS ..... \$1,241.58 PER MONTH  
This includes all 8 copiers, set up, delivery and training for the term of the contract.

**SERVICE AGREEMENT**

INCLUDES ALL PARTS, LABOR, DRUMS, AND TONER.  
\$235.00 per month plus \$.045 per copy for color copies. Black & white overages will be billed at \$.0047 per copy over 600,000 per year.



**Canon**  
**SAVIN.**

- *OVER 40 YEARS OF EXPERIENCE IN THE INDUSTRY*
- *LOCAL REFERENCES AVAILABLE*
- *MULTIPLE LOCAL TECHNICIANS AVAILABLE*
- *EXCELLENT CUSTOMER SERVICE*
- *SUPPORTS THE LOCAL ECONOMY*

***COPIER CONNECTION, INC.***

# ***PROPOSAL***

Presented to: ***HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS***

***CANON DIGITAL COPIER'S***  
***1 IRA-DXC5860, 4 Imageclass xMF-1440, 1***  
***REMANUFACTURED IRA C 3525, 2 IRA-6755's***

For any further information please contact:

**Rick Forsstrom**

Office: (308) 632-5520 ext. 108

Email: [sbsales@sbcopiers.com](mailto:sbsales@sbcopiers.com)

Cell: (308) 641-3019

**1912 Broadway Scottsbluff, NE - Phone (308) 632-5520 - Fax (308) 632-2895**

A division of: **ConnectingPoint**



imageRUNNER  
ADVANCE DX  
C5870i/C5860i  
C5850i/C5840i

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series

Color  
Mid-volume  
Multifunction

Print up to 70 ppm (BW/color)

Scan up to 270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" × 18"

6,350-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 10.1" intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- A unique, customized experience tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Hot Folders allow users to drag and drop a file into a hot folder and automatically print with pre-defined settings such as number of copies and finishing requirements.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\*<sup>2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at startup. McAfee Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes a whitelist to protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security policy settings can be controlled with a dedicated password, configured from a central location, and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features, using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images, thanks to Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications that help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability.

\* Security Information and Event Management.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.



## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and rated EPEAT® Gold<sup>5</sup>

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series



### STAPLE FINISHER-AB2\*

- 2-tray, 3,250-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)



### BOOKLET FINISHER-A1 WITH TRI-FOLD\*

- 2-tray, 3,250-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets
- Booklet-making up to 20 sheets and saddle-folding up to 3 sheets
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)
- Built in C-Fold up to 5 sheets



### INNER FINISHER-L1

- 2-tray, 550-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets within the footprint of the main unit
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (Inner 2/3 Hole Puncher-D1)



### INNER 2-WAY TRAY-M1



### BUFFER PASS UNIT-P2



### HIGH CAPACITY CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-C1

- 2,450-sheet capacity
- Supports up to Letter
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index



### CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-AQ1

- Two 550-sheet cassettes
- Supports up to 12" x 18"
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index



### CABINET TYPE-V



### INNER TRAY\*



### COPY TRAY KIT



### PAPER DECK UNIT-F1

- 2,700-sheet capacity
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index
- Supports Letter



### PAPER FOLDING UNIT-L1\*\*

- Offers Z-Fold



### imagePASS-R1

- Delivers fast processing speed, outstanding image quality, and time-saving workflow
- Personalized printing with the built-in, entry-level Fiery FreeForm™ or with the supported variable data printing (VDP) formats

\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2.  
 \* Required when Staple Finisher-AB2/Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Inner Finisher-L1 is not installed.  
 \*\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2 and either Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Staple Finisher-AB2.

**Main Unit****Type**

Color Laser Multifunctional

**Core Functions**Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax**Control Panel**

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Flat-panel

**Memory**

5.0 GB RAM

**Solid State Drive**Standard: 256 GB  
Optional: 1 TB**Interface Connection**Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)  
Optional: Bluetooth Low Energy**Others**Standard: USB 2.0 (Host) x1, USB 3.0 (Host) x1,  
USB 2.0 (Device) x1  
Optional: Copy Control Interface**Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with Staple Finisher-AB2 or Booklet Finisher-A1  
with Tri-Fold and 3rd Copy Tray Kit-A1)**Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Stack Bypass  
Optional: Dual 550-Sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Feeding Unit-AM1), 2,450-Sheet  
High Capacity Paper Cassette (High  
Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1),  
2,700-Sheet Paper Deck  
(Paper Deck Unit-F1)**Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 6,350 Sheets**Finishing Capabilities**Standard: Collate, Group  
With Options: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch,  
Hole Punch, Staple Free Stapling, Staple On  
Demand<sup>6</sup>**Supported Media Types**Multi-Purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Coated,  
Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Label,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Tab, Envelope  
Paper Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Bond,  
Transparency, Pre-punched, Letterhead,  
Envelope<sup>7</sup>**Supported Media Sizes**Upper Cassette: Letter, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x  
8-1/2")  
Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18")  
Multi-Purpose Tray: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R,  
Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL,  
ISO-C5], Envelope Custom Size (3-7/8" x  
3-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18"), Custom Size/  
Free Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18")**Supported Media Weights**Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Stack Bypass: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)**Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)**C5870i: Up to 70 ppm (Letter); Up to 42 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 40 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 35 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5860i: Up to 60 ppm (Letter); Up to 36 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 34 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 32 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5850i: Up to 50 ppm (Letter); Up to 30 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 29 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 27 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5840i: Up to 40 ppm (Letter); Up to 24 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 23 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 21 ppm (11" x 17")**Warm-up Time**From Power On: Approx. 6 Seconds<sup>8</sup>  
From Sleep Mode<sup>9</sup>  
C5870i: Approx. 7 Seconds  
C5860i/ C5850i/ C5840i: Approx. 6 Seconds  
Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>10</sup>**Dimensions (W x D x H)**24-3/8" x 28-1/2" x 36-7/8" (620 x 722 x 937 mm)<sup>11</sup>**Installation Space (W x D)**Basic: 44-7/8" x 45-3/4" (1,138 x 1,162 mm)  
(Right Cover Open with Multi-purpose  
tray extended + Cassette Drawers Open)  
Fully Configured: 73-1/2" x 45-3/4" (1,866 x 1,162 mm)  
(Staple Finisher-AB1 or Booklet Finisher-AB1  
with the extension tray extended + Paper  
Deck Unit-F1 + Cassette Drawers open)**Weight<sup>12</sup>**C5870i: Approx. 238.1 lb. (108 kg)  
C5860i/ C5850i: Approx. 231.5 lb. (105 kg)  
C5840i: Approx. 229.3 lb. (104 kg)**Print Specifications****Print Resolution (dpi)**

1200 x 1200

**Standard Page Description Languages**

UFR II, PCL6, Adobe PS 3

**Supported File Types**PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS,<sup>13</sup> XPS**Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Universal Print by Microsoft®, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.

**Fonts**PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional Chinese),<sup>14</sup>  
Barcode Fonts<sup>15</sup>  
PS: 136 Roman**Operating System<sup>16</sup>**UFR II/PS: Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server2008/  
Server2008 R2/Server2012/Server2012  
R2/Server2016/Server2019, Mac OS X  
(10.11 or later)  
PCL: Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server2008/  
Server2008 R2/Server2012/Server2012  
R2/Server2016/Server2019  
PPD: Windows® 7/8.1/10, Mac OS X(10.10 or later)**Copy Specifications****First-Copy-Out Time**C5870i: As fast as 2.7 seconds (BW)/  
3.7 seconds (Color)  
C5860i: As fast as 2.9 seconds (BW)/  
4.2 seconds (Color)  
C5850i: As fast as 3.3 seconds (BW)/  
4.9 seconds (Color)  
C5840i: As fast as 4.1 seconds (BW)/  
6.1 seconds (Color)**Copy Resolution (dpi)**

600 x 600

**Multiple Copies**

Up to 999

**Magnification**

25%-400% (1% Increments)

**Preset Reductions/Enlargements**25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%,  
200%, 400%**Scan Specifications****Type**

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

**Document Feeder Paper Capacity**

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

**Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes**11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17"**Document Feeder Supported Media Weights**Single-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)  
Double-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)**Platen Acceptable Originals**

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

**Pull Scan**Color Network Supported OS: ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server 2008/  
Server 2008 R2/Server 2012/  
Server 2012 R2/Server 2016**Scan Resolution (dpi)**Scan for Copy: 600 x 600  
Scan for Send: (Push) 600 x 600 (SMB/FTP/WebDAV/  
iFAX), (Pull) 600 x 600  
Scan for Fax: 600 x 600**Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to compatible mobile devices and certain cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

**Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)**Single-sided Scanning: 135/135 (300 dpi), 80/80 (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning: 270/270 (300 dpi), 160/90 (600 dpi)**Send Specifications****Destination**Standard: E-mail/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB3.0, FTP,  
WebDAV, Mail Box  
Optional: Super G3 FAX, IP Fax**Address Book**

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

**Send Resolution (dpi)**Push: Up to 600 x 600  
Pull: Up to 600 x 600**Communication Protocol**File: FTP(TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV  
Email: SMTP, POP3**File Format**Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Encrypted, Compact,  
Searchable, Apply Policy, Optimize for  
Web, User Signature, PDF A/1-b, Limited  
Color, Device Signature, User Signature),  
XPS (Compact, Searchable, Device Signature,  
User Signature), Office Open XML  
(PowerPoint, Word)**Fax Specifications (Optional)****Modem Speed**Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps**Compression Method**

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

**Resolution (dpi)**

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

**Sending/Recording Size**

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

**Fax Memory**

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs)

**Speed Dials**

Max. 200

**Group Dials/Destinations**

Max. 199 Dials

**Sequential Broadcast**

Max. 256 Addresses

**Memory Backup**

Yes

**Store Specifications**

**Mail Box (Number Supported)**

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 10,000 Pages (2,000 jobs) Stored

**Advanced Box**

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV

Supported

Client PC: Windows (Windows 8.1/10)

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3

**Advanced Box Available Disc Space**

Approx. 16 GB (Standard HDD)

Approx. 480 GB (With Optional 1 TB HDD)

**Security Specifications**

**Authentication and Access Control**

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express<sup>17</sup> (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

**Document Security**

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>18</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax In-box Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle<sup>®</sup> Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Box Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

**Network Security**

TLS 1.3, IPSec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN, Prohibit the execution of files stored in Advanced Box in the MFP, Scan and Send-Virus Concerns for E-mail Reception

**Device Security**

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFD Software Integrity, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection)

**Device Management and Auditing**

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

**Environmental Specifications**

**Operating Environment**

Temperature: 50 to 86°F

Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (Relative Humidity)

**Power Requirements**

C5870i/ C5860i/ 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 12 A

C5850i: 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 10 A

C5840i: 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 10 A

**Power Consumption**

Maximum: Approx. 1,800 W

Standby: Approx. 56.1 W<sup>19</sup>

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>20</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>21</sup>

C5870i: 0.86 kWh

C5860i: 0.71 kWh

C5850i: 0.57 kWh

C5840i: 0.47 kWh

**Standards**

ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Certified

Rated EPEAT<sup>®</sup> Gold

**Consumables**

**Toner<sup>22</sup>**

GPR-61L Toner BK/C/M/Y

GPR-61L Toner C/M/Y

**Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)**

GPR-61L Toner

BK: 71,000 Pages

GPR-61L Toner

C/M/Y: 60,000 Pages

GPR-61L Toner

C/M/Y: 26,000 Pages

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service provider's Terms and Conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.

<sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.

<sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.

<sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>6</sup> Finishing capabilities vary depending on the options connected.

<sup>7</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment (standard) is required.

<sup>8</sup> Time from device power-on, until copy ready (not print reservation).

<sup>9</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.

<sup>10</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.

<sup>11</sup> Includes main unit and either Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1, High Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1, or Cabinet Type-V.

<sup>12</sup> Includes main unit, consumables, and Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1.

<sup>13</sup> EPS can be printed directly only from the Remote User Interface.

<sup>14</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>15</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>16</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix may be supported. Some of these solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.

<sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>19</sup> Reference Value (measured one unit).

<sup>20</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>21</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

<sup>22</sup> GPR-61L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y). Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 26,000 images.



Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5870i  
Outstanding 70-ppm A3 Color MFP

Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5860i  
Outstanding 60-ppm A3 Color MFP

Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5840i  
Outstanding 40-ppm A3 Color MFP

As an ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in the US and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Product shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.  
©2022 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.



[usa.canon.com](http://usa.canon.com)



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit [usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).

# OUTSTANDING RELIABILITY, IMPRESSIVE COLOR QUALITY, EFFICIENT DESIGN

The imageRUNNER ADVANCE C3500 Series is designed to deliver reliable color performance with a compact and efficient design. These intelligent systems work seamlessly with Canon's integrated software and services, making it an outstanding choice for small to medium-size businesses and departments within large organizations.

Print up to 30 ppm (BW/Color)

Scan up to 160 ipm (300 dpi) (BW, color, duplex)

Print up to 12" x 18"

2,300-sheet maximum paper capacity



## Workflow Efficiency

- An intuitive user interface with a large, responsive, color touchscreen with smartphone-like usability helps make it easy to carry out tasks.
- My ADVANCE enables users to have a unique, customized experience that's tailored to their specific workflow needs. Settings, such as display language, initial log-in screen, and accessibility options, can be synchronized across multiple devices for consistency.
- Canon's MEAP platform supports a range of integrated solutions designed to help simplify workflow and achieve a holistic business solution.
- Scalable support for mobile and flexible work styles can help increase efficiency by allowing workers to capture or print documents and access certain cloud applications.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to Searchable PDF, Microsoft® Word, and Microsoft PowerPoint® files through a single-pass, duplexing document feeder that holds up to 150 originals.
- Intelligent features, such as motion sensor technology to wake the device from Sleep mode and the ability to remove blank pages when scanning, can help maximize productivity.

## Security<sup>2</sup>

- Control device access by using the standard Universal Login Manager application for authentication.
- Help limit unauthorized distribution of sensitive information with an array of standard and optional document security features.
- Help facilitate information privacy and security by controlling access with IPsec, port filtering capabilities, and SSL technology.

## Cost Management

- The ability to apply print policies, monitor output, and restrict usage by user can help reduce unnecessary printing, enable cost recovery, and help save money on paper and toner.
- Tight integration with a variety of output management solutions, such as optional uniFLOW, provides the ability to carry out detailed tracking, reporting, and cost analysis.
- Quality and reliability, combined with remote diagnostics, contribute to maximizing uptime and can help reduce time spent by IT to resolve issues.
- Consistent user operation, paired with remote and centralized fleet management, can help simplify IT management of a single device or a fleet of devices.



## Device and Fleet Management

- The ability to preconfigure devices makes installation easy, and fleet management is simplified with the ability to synchronize settings across multiple compatible devices.
- Canon's device management tools provide a centralized point of control across a fleet of devices, including the ability to check device status and consumables, turn off devices remotely, capture meter readings, and manage address books and printer drivers.
- Standard genuine Adobe® PostScript® and PCL® support integration with enterprise applications and legacy systems to help streamline business processes.

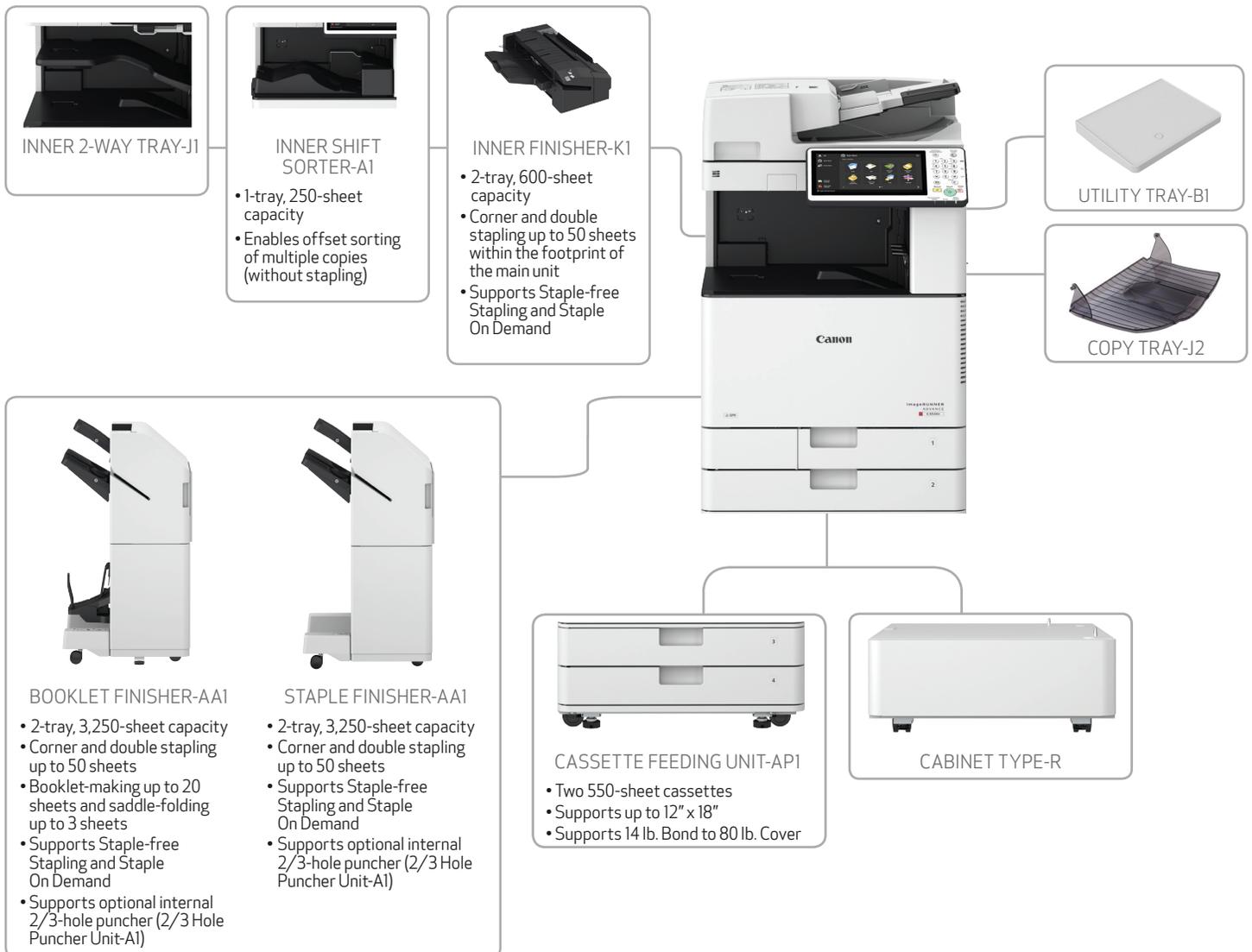
## Quality and Reliability

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies contribute to high-quality output to help meet the needs of busy departments.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images using Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile and 1200-dpi print resolution.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished, intuitive user maintenance videos, and automatic job rerouting (with optional solutions).

## Sustainability

- Fusing technologies, pQ toner, and selectable Sleep mode settings help achieve low energy consumption.
- Help minimize waste with default two-sided printing, the Secure Print feature, and the ability to hold print jobs, preview them, and change print settings at the device so you can achieve the results you want the first time.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and rated EPEAT® Gold.<sup>3</sup>

## Configuration



## Main Unit

### Type

Color Laser Multifunctional

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax

### Processor

Canon Dual Custom Processor (Shared)

### Control Panel

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Flat-panel

### Memory

3.0 GB RAM

### Hard Disk Drive

Standard: 250 GB

### Interface Connection

Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)

### Others

Standard: USB 2.0 x1 (Host), USB 3.0 x1 (Host),  
USB 2.0 x1 (Device)

Optional: Serial Interface, Copy Control Interface

### Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 2,300 Sheets

### Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Stack Bypass

Optional: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes  
(CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-API),

### Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with External Finisher and Copy Tray)

### Finishing Capabilities

Standard: Collate, Group  
With Inner Shift Sorter: Collate, Group, Offset  
With Inner Finisher: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Staple-Free  
With External Finishers: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Booklet,  
Staple-Free Staple, Staple On Demand,  
Hole Punch (Optional)

### Supported Media Types

Paper: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy,  
Cassettes: Pre-punched, Bond, Transparency,  
(1/2): Envelope  
Stack Bypass: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy,  
Pre-punched, Labels, Bond, Coated,  
Transparency, Tracing, Envelope

Cassette Feeding Unit-API: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy,  
Pre-punched, Bond, Transparency

### Supported Media Sizes

Paper: Letter, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
Cassette 1: [No.10 (COM10), DL, ISO-C5], Custom Size  
(5-1/2" x 7-1/8" to 11-3/4" x 8-1/2")

Paper: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Cassette 2: Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL], Custom  
Size (5-1/2" x 7-1/8" to 12" x 18")

Stack Bypass: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R,  
Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch,  
DL, ISO-C5], Envelope Custom Size  
(3-7/8" x 3-7/8" to 12-5/8" x 18"),  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2" to  
12-5/8" x 18"), Free Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2"  
to 12-5/8" x 18")

Cassette Feeding Unit-API: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Custom Size  
(5-1/2" x 7-1/8" to 12" x 18")

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Stack Bypass: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)

C3530i: Up to 30 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 15 ppm (11" x 17")  
C3525i: Up to 25 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 15 ppm (11" x 17")

### Warm-up Time

From Power On: 34 Seconds  
From Sleep Mode: 10 Seconds  
Quick Startup Mode: 10 Seconds<sup>4</sup>

### Dimensions (W x D x H)

22-1/4" x 29-1/4" x 45-1/5" (565 mm x 742 mm x 1148 mm)<sup>5</sup>

### Installation Space (W x D)

Basic: Stack Bypass + Cassette drawers open:  
38-1/2" x 44-1/4" (978 mm x 1123 mm)<sup>6</sup>

### Fully Configured:

63-3/4" x 44-1/4" (1620 mm x 1123 mm)<sup>6</sup>

### Weight

Approx. 213.9 lb. (97 kg)<sup>7</sup>

## Print Specifications

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL<sup>®</sup>6, Adobe<sup>®</sup> PS<sup>®</sup>3

### Direct Print

Available from USB, Advanced Box, Remote UI,  
and Web Access<sup>8</sup>

### Supported File Types

PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS, XPS

### Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of software and MEAP-based solutions are available to provide printing from mobile devices or Internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

### Fonts

PCL fonts: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional  
Chinese),<sup>9</sup> Barcode Fonts<sup>10</sup>

PS fonts: 136 Roman

### Operating System<sup>11</sup>

UFR II/PS: Server 2003/Server 2003 R2/Windows  
Vista<sup>®</sup>/Server 2008/Windows<sup>®</sup> 7/Server  
2008 R2/Windows 8/Server 2012/  
Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2/Windows  
10/Server 2016, MAC OS X (10.7 or later)  
PCL: Server 2003/Server 2003 R2/Windows  
Vista/Server 2008/Windows 7/Server  
2008 R2/Windows 8/Server 2012/  
Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2/Windows  
10/Server 2016

## Copy Specifications

### First-Copy-Out Time (LTR)

As fast as 5.9 seconds (BW)/8.2 seconds (Color)

### Multiple Copies

Up to 999 copies

### Magnification

25%-400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions

25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%

### Preset Enlargements

121%, 129%, 200%, 400%

### Basic Copy Features

Preset Reduction/Enlargement Ratios by Area, Paper  
Setting, Previous Settings, Favorite Settings, Finishing,  
Two-Sided, Density Adjustment, Original Type Selection,  
Interrupt Mode, Setting Confirmation/Cancel

### Special Copy Features

Book to Two Pages, Two-Sided Original, Finishing,  
Booklet, Job Build, N on 1, Add Cover, Insert Sheets,  
Different-Size Originals, Density Adjustment, Original  
Type Selection, Transparency Cover Sheets, Page  
Numbering, Copy Set Numbering, Sharpness, Erase  
Frame, Secure Watermark, Print Date, Shift, Gutter,  
Print & Check, Negative/Positive, Repeat Images,  
Job Done Notice, Mirror Image, Copy ID Card, Multi Sheet  
Feed Detection, Free Size Original, Adjust One-Touch  
Color, Color Balance, Area Designation

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

150 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

BW Original: 13 lb. Bond to 58 lb. Cover (50 to 157 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
CL Original: 17 lb. Bond to 58 lb. Cover (64 to 157 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects [Up to 4.4 lb. (2 kg)]

### Pull Scan

Color Network ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA

Supported OS: Windows Vista/7/8/8.1/10/  
Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/  
Server 2012/Server 2012 R2

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600, 400 x 400, 300 x 300, 200 x 400, 200 x 200,  
200 x 100, 150 x 150, 100 x 100

### Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to  
mobile devices and cloud-based services depending on  
your requirements.

### Scan Speed (LTR)

Single-sided Scanning (BW/Color):  
80 ipm (300 dpi)/51 ipm (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning (BW/Color):  
160 ipm (300 dpi)/51 ipm (600 dpi)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Email/Internet Fax (SMTP), SMB, FTP, WebDAV, Mail  
Box, Super G3 Fax (Optional), IP Fax (Optional)

### Address Book

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600, 400 x 400, 300 x 300, 200 x 400, 200 x 200,  
200 x 100, 150 x 150, 100 x 100

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP, SMB, WebDAV  
Email/I-Fax: SMTP, POP3, I-Fax (Simple, Full)

### File Format

Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Compact, Searchable,  
Apply policy, Optimize for Web, PDF  
A/1-b), XPS (Compact, Searchable),  
Office Open XML (PowerPoint<sup>®</sup>, Word)  
Optional: PDF (Trace & Smooth, Encrypted),  
PDF/XPS (Digital Signature)

### Universal Send Features

Original Type Selection, Two-Sided Original, Book to Two  
Pages, Different-Size Originals, Density Adjustment,  
Sharpness, Copy Ratio, Erase Frame, Job Build, Delayed  
Send, Preview, Finished Stamp, Job Done Notice, File  
Name, Subject/Message, Reply-To, Email Priority, TX  
Report, Original Content Orientation, Skip Blank Originals,  
Multi Sheet Feed Detection

## Fax Specifications

### Maximum Number of Connection Lines

2

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

## Sending/Recording Size

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

## Fax Memory

Up to 30,000 Pages

## Speed Dials

Max. 200

## Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 199 Dials

## Sequential Broadcast

Max. 256 Addresses

## Memory Backup

Yes

## Fax Features

Original Type Selection, Two-Sided Original, Book to Two Pages, Different-Size Originals, Density for Scanning, Sharpness, Copy Ratio, Erase Frame, Job Build, Specifying the Sender's Name (when sending fax), Sender's Name (TTI), Select Line, Selecting the Telephone Line (when sending fax), Direct Send, Delayed Send, Preview, Finished Stamp, Job Done Notice, TX Report, Multi Sheet Feed Detection

## Store Specifications

### Mail Box Simple (Number Supported)

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, 30,000 Maximum Pages Stored

### Advanced Box

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV

Supported

Client PC: Windows (Windows Vista/7/8/8.1/10)

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3 (Active Sessions)

### Advanced Box Available Disc Space

Approx. 16 GB

### Advanced Box Features:

Disabling Advanced Box, Storage Filtering, Authentication for Advanced Box Log-in, Search Function, Sort Function, Printing a PDF File with a Password, imageWARE Secure Audit Manager Support

### Memory Media

Standard: USB

## Security Specifications

### Authentication

Standard: Universal Login Manager, User Authentication, Department ID Authentication, Access Management System, Device and Function Level Log-in

Optional: uniFLOW

### Data

Standard: Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Hard Disk Password Lock, Hard Disk Drive Erase, Mail Box Password Protection, Hard Disk Drive Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated)

Optional: Hard Disk Drive Removal, IEEE 2600.2 Common Criteria Certification, Data Loss Prevention (Requires uniFLOW)

### Network

Standard: IP/Mac Address Filtering, IPsec, TLS Encrypted Communication, SNMP V3.0, IEEE 802.1X, IPv6, SMTP Authentication, POP Authentication before SMTP

### Document

Standard: Secure Print, Adobe LiveCycle® Rights Management ES2.5 Integration

Optional: Encrypted PDF, Encrypted Secure Print, User and Device Signatures, Secure Watermarks, Document Scan Locking

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F

Humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (no condensation)

### Power Requirements

C3530i/C3525i: 120-127V AC 60 Hz, 7.5 A

### Plug (Main Unit)

C3530i/C3525i: NEMA 5-15P

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1.5 kWh

Standby: Approx. 44.1 W

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>12</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating:

1.2 kWh (C3530i)

1.0 kWh (C3525i)

### Standards

ENERGY STAR® Certified

Rated EPEAT® Gold<sup>3</sup>

## Consumables

### Toner

GPR-53 Toner<sup>13</sup>

### Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)

Black: 36,000 Images

Color (C,M,Y):<sup>13</sup> 19,000 Images

## Footnotes

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service providers' terms and conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance.

<sup>3</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>4</sup> Time from device power-on to when copy jobs can be programmed.

<sup>5</sup> Includes main unit and either Cassette Feeding Unit-API, or Cabinet Type-R.

<sup>6</sup> Includes main unit and either Cassette Feeding Unit-API or Cabinet Type-R and Staple/Booklet Finisher-AA1.

<sup>7</sup> Includes main unit, ADF consumables, and Cassette Feeding Unit-API.

<sup>8</sup> PDF print from Web sites is supported.

<sup>9</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>10</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>11</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux and Citrix, may be supported. Some solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>12</sup> 0.8 W sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>13</sup> GPR-53L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y). Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 8,500 images.

USA.CANON.COM



As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered trademarks owned by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Google Cloud Print™ is either a registered trademark or trademark of Google Inc. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Canon, imageRUNNER, imageWARE, MEAP, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. iF Design Award 2017 is for third generation imageRUNNER ADVANCE Multifunction office systems. uniFLOW is a registered trademark of NT-ware Systemprogrammierung GmbH. Adobe® and PostScript® 3™ are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries. Microsoft® and PowerPoint® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Products shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors. ©2017 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.





**imageRUNNER**  
ADVANCE DX  
**6780i / 6765i**  
**6755i**

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6700 Series

Print up to 80 ppm (BW)

Scan up to 270/270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/colour, duplex)

Print up to 11" × 17"

8,020-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology; better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs; and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.

Black-and-white  
Mid- to High-volume  
Multifunction



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 10.1" intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- A unique, customized experience tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Hot Folders allow users to drag and drop a file into a hot folder, and automatically print with predefined settings such as number of copies and finishing requirements.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\* systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at startup. McAfee Embedded Control<sup>2</sup> utilizes a whitelist to protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security policy settings can be controlled with a dedicated password, configured from a central location, and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features, using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>3</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for crisp text and consistent images in rich black-and-white tones.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability.

\* Security Information and Event Management



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.



## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally-conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS



### STAPLE FINISHER-AC1

- 3-tray, 3,500-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 65 sheets
- Supports Staple-free Stapling and Staple On Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)



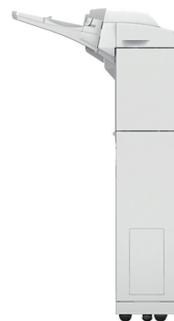
### BOOKLET FINISHER-AC1

- 3-tray, 3,500-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 65 sheets
- Booklet-making up to 20 sheets and saddle-folding up to 3 sheets
- Supports Staple-free Stapling and Staple On Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)



### DOCUMENT INSERTION/ FOLDING UNIT-J1

- Insert pre-printed sheets
- Up to 11" x 17"
- 1-tray, 100-sheet capacity
- Z-fold, C-fold



### DOCUMENT INSERTION UNIT-P1

- Insert pre-printed sheets
- Up to 11" x 17"
- 1-tray, 100-sheet capacity



### COPY TRAY-R2



### UPRIGHT CONTROL PANEL-J1



### UTILITY TRAY-B1



### POD DECK LITE-C1

- 3,660-sheet capacity
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index
- Supports up to 11" x 17"
- User adjustable



### imagePASS-Y3 v1.1

- Delivers fast processing speed, outstanding image quality, and time-saving workflow
- Integrates print production workflows with EFI™ management information systems, Web-to-Print systems, and popular prepress workflows for end-to-end automation
- Communicates with the full suite of optional uniFLOW modules



### PAPER DECK UNIT-E1

- 3,660-sheet capacity
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index
- Supports LTR

# SPECIFICATIONS

## Main Unit

**Type**  
Monochrome Laser Multifunctional

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax

### Processor

1.75GHz Dual Core Processor

### Control Panel

Standard: 10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Colour Flat Touch-panel  
Optional: 10.4" TFT LCD SVGA Colour Upright Touch-panel

### Memory

3.0 GB RAM

### Hard Disk Drive

Standard: 250 GB  
Maximum: 1 TB

### Interface Connection

**Network**  
Standard: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)  
Optional: NFC, Bluetooth Low Energy  
**Others**  
Standard: USB 2.0 x1 (Host), USB 3.0 x1 (Host),  
USB 2.0 x1 (Device)  
Optional: Copy Control Interface

### Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 4,360 Sheets  
Maximum: 8,020 Sheets

### Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: Dual 1,560-sheet Paper Drawers, Dual  
570-sheet Paper Cassettes, 100-sheet  
Multipurpose Tray  
Optional: 3,660-sheet Paper Deck  
(Paper Deck Unit-E1 or POD Deck Lite-C1)

### Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

With Copy Tray: 250 Sheets  
With External Finishers: 3,500 Sheets (with Staple Finisher-AC1 or  
Booklet Finisher-AC1)

### Finishing Capabilities

With External Finishers: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple,  
Saddle Stitch, Hole Punch, Eco Staple,  
Staple On Demand, Document Insertion,  
Z-fold, C-fold

### Supported Media Types

Paper Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Colour, Heavy, Bond,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Tab<sup>4</sup>  
Multipurpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Colour, Heavy, Tracing,<sup>5</sup>  
Bond, Transparency, Label, Pre-punched,  
Letterhead, Tab  
Paper Decks: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Colour, Heavy,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Bond,  
Transparency, Labels, Tab

### Supported Media Sizes

Multipurpose Tray: 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Executive,  
Statement-R, Custom Size/Free Size  
(4" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x 19-1/4")  
Paper Decks: Letter  
Paper Cassettes: 11"x17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Executive,  
Statement-R, Custom size (5-1/2" x 7-1/8" to  
11-3/4" x 19-1/4")

### Supported Media Weights

Paper Decks: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Paper Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Multipurpose Tray: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Print/Copy Speed

6780i: Up to 80 ppm (Letter)  
Up to 61 ppm (Letter-R)  
Up to 48 ppm (Legal)  
Up to 40 ppm (11" x 17")  
6765i: Up to 65 ppm (Letter)  
Up to 50 ppm (Letter-R)  
Up to 39 ppm (Legal)  
Up to 32 ppm (11" x 17")  
6755i: Up to 55 ppm (Letter)  
Up to 43 ppm (Letter-R)  
Up to 39 ppm (Legal)  
Up to 32 ppm (11" x 17")

### Warm-up Time

From Power On: Approx. 30 Seconds<sup>6</sup>  
From Sleep Mode: Approx. 30 Seconds<sup>7</sup>  
Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>8</sup>

### Dimensions (W x D x H)

26-3/8" x 30-3/8" x 46-5/8" (670 x 770 x 1,185 mm)

### Installation Space (W x D)

Basic: 60-3/8" x 53-1/4" (1,533 mm x 1,353 mm)  
(with Multi-purpose Tray/upper-right cover  
open + front cover open + Copy Tray)  
Fully Configured: 95-7/8" x 53-1/4" (2,436 mm x 1,353 mm)  
(with POD Deck Lite-C1 + Document  
Insertion/Folding Unit-J1 + Booklet Finisher-  
AC1/Staple Finisher-AC1 + Main unit front  
cover open)

### Weight

Approx. 491.6 lb (223 kg)<sup>9</sup>

## Print Specifications

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL<sup>®</sup>6, Adobe<sup>®</sup> PS<sup>®</sup>3

### Supported File Types

PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS,<sup>10</sup> XPS

### Printing from Mobile and Cloud

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Google Cloud Print, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.

### Fonts

PCL Fonts: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR  
fonts, Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional Chinese),<sup>11</sup>  
Barcode Fonts<sup>12</sup>  
PS Fonts: 136 Roman

### Operating System<sup>13</sup>

UFRII/PS: Windows<sup>®</sup>7/8.1/10/Server 2008/Server  
2008 R2/Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/  
Server 2016/Server 2019, MAC OS X  
(10.10 or later)  
PCL: Windows<sup>®</sup>7/8.1/10/Server 2008/Server  
2008 R2/Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/  
Server 2016/Server 2019  
PPD: Windows<sup>®</sup>7/8.1/10, MAC OS X (10.9 or later)

## Copy Specifications

### First-Copy-Out Time (Letter)

6780i: As fast as 3.1 seconds  
6765i/6755i: As fast as 3.3 seconds

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Multiple Copies

Up to 9,999 Copies

### Magnification

25%-400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions/Enlargements

25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100%(1:1), 121%,  
129%, 200%, 400%

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17"

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

Single-sided/Double-sided scanning:  
13.3 lb bond to 80 lb. cover (50 to 220 gsm)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

### Max. Platen Scanning Size:

Up to 11-3/4" x 17" (297 mm x 431.8 mm)

### Pull Scan

Colour Network ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
Supported OS: Windows 7/8.1/10  
Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/Server 2012/  
Server 2012 R2/Server 2016

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Scan for Copy: 600 x 600  
Scan for Send: (Push) 600 x 600 (SMB/FTP/WebDAV/IFAX),  
(Pull) 600 x 600  
Scan for Fax: 600 x 600

### Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to mobile devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

### Scan Speed (Letter)

Single-sided Scanning  
BW/Colour: 135 (300 dpi)/80 (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning  
BW/Colour: 270 (300 dpi)/160 (600 dpi)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Email/Internet Fax (SMTP), SMB, FTP, WebDAV, Mail Box,  
Super G3 Fax (Optional), IP Fax (Optional)

### Address Book

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed dial (200)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

Push: Up to 600 x 600  
Pull: Up to 600 x 600

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP, SMB v3.0, WebDAV  
Email: SMTP, POP3

### File Format

TIFF, JPEG, PDF(Compact, Searchable, Apply policy,  
Optimize for Web, PDF/A-1b, Trace & Smooth, Encrypted,  
Device Signature, User Signature), XPS(Compact,  
Searchable, Device Signature, User Signature), Office Open  
XML (PowerPoint, Word)

## Fax Specifications (Optional)

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

### Sending/Recording Size

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

### Fax Memory

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs)

### Speed Dials

Max. 200

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 199 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 256 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

## Store Specifications

### Mail Box (Number Supported)

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs) Stored

### Advanced Box

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV  
Supported Windows (Windows 8.1/10)  
Client PC:  
Concurrent Connections (Max.):  
SMB: 64  
WebDAV: 3 (Active Sessions)

### Advanced Box Available Disc Space

Approx. 16 GB (Standard HDD);  
480 GB (With Optional 1 TB HDD)

## Security Specifications

### Authentication

Standard: Universal Login Manager, uniFLOW Online Express,<sup>14</sup> User Authentication, Department ID Authentication, (Device and Function Level Log-in), Access Management System

Optional: uniFLOW

### Data

Standard: Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Hard Disk Password Lock, Hard Disk Drive Erase, Mail Box Password Protection, Hard Disk Drive Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), Verify System at Startup, McAfee Embedded Control<sup>2</sup>

Optional: Hard Disk Drive Mirroring, IEEE 2600.2 Common Criteria Certification, Data Loss Prevention (Requires uniFLOW)

### Network

Standard: Encrypted Secure Print, IP/Mac Address Filtering, IPsec, TLS Encrypted Communication (v1.0/1.1/1.2/1.3), SNMP V3.0, IEEE 802.1X, IPv6, SMTP Authentication, POP Authentication before SMTP, S/MIME, SIEM Integration

### Document

Standard: Secure Watermark, Secure Print, Adobe LiveCycle<sup>®</sup> Rights Management ES2.5 Integration, Encrypted PDF, Encrypted Secure Print, Device Signature, User Signature

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 10 to 30 °C  
Humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (Relative Humidity)

### Power Requirements

110-127 V AC, 60 Hz, 16 A

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 2,032 W  
Standby: Approx. 278 W<sup>15</sup>  
Sleep Mode: 0.9 W<sup>16</sup>  
Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>17</sup>  
6780i: 1.65 kWh

### Standards

ENERGY STAR Certified: 6780i

## Consumables

### Toner

GPR-38 Black Toner

### Toner Yield (Estimated @ 6% Coverage)

56,000 Pages

- <sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service provider's terms and conditions.
- <sup>2</sup> Requires Unified Firmware Platform v3.9 or greater.
- <sup>3</sup> Requires additional option.
- <sup>4</sup> Tab Feeding Attachment-B1 is required.
- <sup>5</sup> Some types of tracing paper cannot be used.
- <sup>6</sup> Time from device power-on, until copy ready (not print reservation).
- <sup>7</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.
- <sup>8</sup> Time from device power on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.
- <sup>9</sup> Including ADF, optional Upright Touch Panel and the toner bottle.
- <sup>10</sup> EPS can be printed directly only from the Remote User Interface.
- <sup>11</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.
- <sup>12</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.
- <sup>13</sup> Other operating systems and environments including AS/400, UNIX, Linux and Citrix may be supported. Some of these solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.
- <sup>14</sup> No charge for this solution; however activation is required.
- <sup>15</sup> Standby Reference Value: measured one unit.
- <sup>16</sup> 0.9 W sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.
- <sup>17</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

 WWW.CANON.CA





AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Canon, imageRUNNER, imageWARE, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in Canada and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in Canada and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All printer output images are simulated. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Products shown with optional accessories. Canon Canada does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2020 Canon Canada Inc. All rights reserved.

0220W599

 **McAfee**  
PROTECTED

 **GENUINE**  
TONER, CARTRIDGE  
& PARTS

To learn about Canon's many awards, visit  
[www.canon.ca/awards](http://www.canon.ca/awards).

### imageCLASS X MF1440

Black-and-white  
Compact  
Multifunction

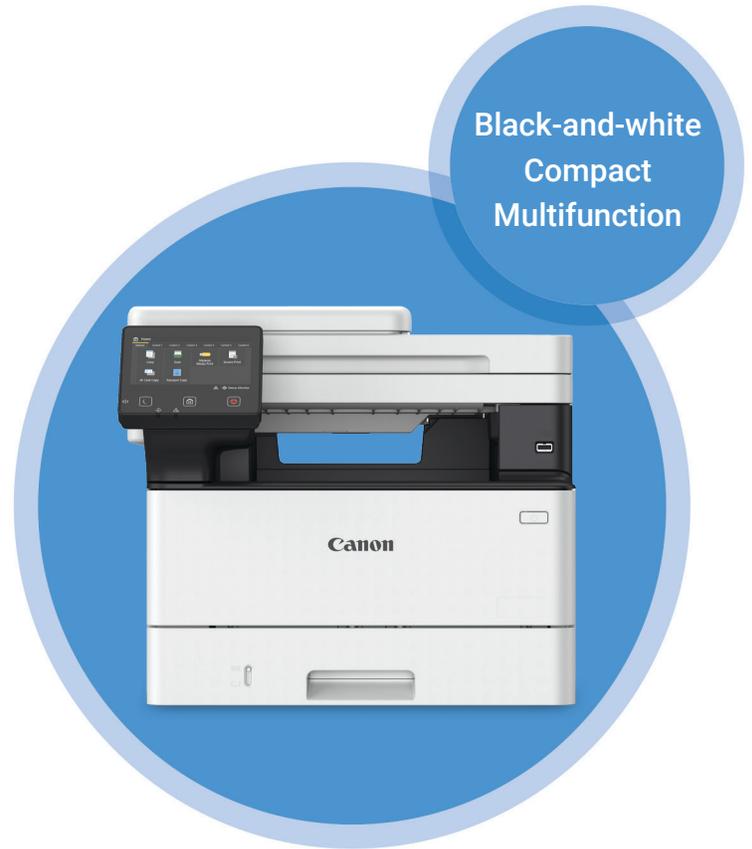
Print up to 42 ppm (BW)

Print up to 8-1/2" x 14"

900-sheet maximum paper capacity

Supports uniFLOW and uniFLOW Online

Designed for small workgroups within an office or home environments used as part of an organization's extended print fleet, the Canon imageCLASS X MF1440 printer offers speedy performance, minimal maintenance, and an extra paper tray option. Delivering an intuitive user experience, the 5" color touchscreen can be customized to simplify many daily tasks.



#### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 5" intuitive color touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- UI customization allows users to drag and drop frequently used icons.
- New Application Library features create a unique, customized device experience, and ease of use.
- Supports certain compatible mobile solutions for printing and scanning.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files through a single-pass, duplex document feeder.
- Designed for small print jobs with first-print-out time as fast as 5.3 seconds.
- Provides consistency with the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX Series.



#### SECURITY FEATURES

- Helps reduce the risk of confidential information loss, since documents are only stored in short-term memory.
- Remotely control device access and set rules via optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online.
- Limit document distribution by implementing Send-to-Myself-only.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at setup. Includes automatic recovery of boot process for self resiliency.
- With imageWARE Enterprise Management Console Device Configuration Manager Plug-in, security settings can be captured and exported to other devices on the same network.<sup>2</sup>



#### COST MANAGEMENT

- Leverage optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online for full accounting and reporting for Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, and job routing.
- Service parts are designed for machine's life cycle to help minimize the need for proactive maintenance and potentially reduce service calls.
- High-capacity, all-in-one cartridge helps reduce overall supply costs.
- Out-of-the-box, standard, two-sided printing plus the ability to print multiple pages onto one sheet help to reduce paper consumption.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics for rapid service response.
- Easily monitor device status and consumable levels, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security settings.



## QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

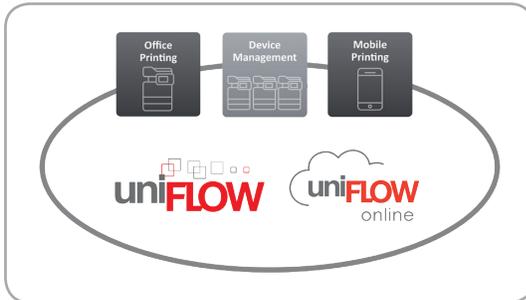
- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished.
- Intuitive maintenance videos for common tasks like consumables replacement.



## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve lower energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally conscious work practices by providing multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and currently rated EPEAT® Silver.<sup>3</sup>

### KEY FEATURES



### MANAGE OUTPUT WITH uniFLOW SOFTWARE

The optional uniFLOW portfolio offers an on-premise or cloud solution that imageCLASS X devices can utilize with flexible authentication. With either card-based or PIN-code-based authentication, imageCLASS X devices can help secure output management, track costs with reporting, and operate mobile printing—one platform for your print, scan, and device management.



### FLEET MANAGEMENT TOOLS

imageWARE Enterprise Management Console can be used by a device administrator to centrally manage the Canon printer fleet, including consumables, status notifications, meters, and configuration settings. imageWARE Remote software allows for the service provider to manage devices proactively, including remote diagnosis and reporting. Local Content Delivery System facilitates remote firmware download at the device level.



### FAST, SINGLE-PASS DUPLEX SCANNING

The imageCLASS X MF1440 model leverages a single-pass document feeder for two-sided scanning at up to 100 images per minute (ipm) in black-and-white or up to 80 ipm in color. Easily scan directly to PC, USB, email, or the network. Scanned files can be converted into multiple file formats, including Hi-Compression PDF and Searchable PDF (OCR).



Single-Pass 2-Sided Scan



### EASY TO USE WITH APPLICATION LIBRARY

Unique to the Canon product line, the Application Library platform allows for one-touch button creation of key functions: Print Template, Standby Slide (screen saver), Scan-to-Preset Destination, ID Card Copy, Consumables Information, Copy (Eco), Copy (Bleed Reduce), Passport Copy, Fax and Store, Name and Scan, Copy (Enhanced Text), Language, Print Client Faxes, Fax to Preset Destination, Template Email, Standby Slide from Server, and Print File from Server.



APPLICATION LIBRARY

## Main Unit

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Fax

### Processor

Canon Custom Processor

### Control Panel

5" Color Touch Panel

### Memory

1 GB

### Standard Interface Connection

USB 2.0 x2 (Host), USB 2.0 x1 (Device) High-Speed,  
10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet (Network), Wi-Fi  
802.11b/g/n, Wi-Fi® Direct Connection

### Paper Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 900 Sheets

### Paper Sources (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250-sheet Paper Cassette, 100-sheet  
Multipurpose Tray  
Optional: 550-sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Unit-AH1)

### Paper Output Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 150 Sheets

### Supported Media Types

Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled,  
Coated, Pre-punched, Letterhead  
Multipurpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled,  
Coated, Label, Pre-punched, Letterhead,  
PostCard, Envelope

### Supported Media Sizes

Cassettes: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive  
Custom (Min. 4.1" x 5.8" to Max. 8.5" x 14")  
Multipurpose Tray: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive  
Envelope: COM10, Monarch, C5, DL  
Custom (Min. 3" x 5" to Max. 8.5" x 14")

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 16 lb. Bond to 44.4 Cover (60 to 120 gsm)  
Multipurpose Tray: 16 lb. Bond to 73.6 lb. Cover (60 to 199 gsm)

### Warm-Up Time

From Power On: 14 Seconds or Less  
From Sleep Mode: 4 Seconds or Less

### Dimensions (W x D x H)

Standard (Desktop): 16.5" x 18.1" x 14.7"  
(420 x 460 x 375 mm)

### Installation Space (W x D)

Fully Configured: 16.5" x 34.8"  
(420 mm x 881 mm)

### Weight<sup>4</sup>

Unit: Approx. 34.4 lb. (15.6 kg)

### Supported OS

UFR II: Windows® 10/11, Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022,  
MAC OS (10.13 or later)

PCL: Windows® 10/11, Server 2012/Server 2012  
R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022

PS: Windows® 10/11, Windows® Server 2012/  
Server 2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/  
Server 2022, MAC OS (10.13 or later)

PPD: Windows® 10/11, MAC OS (10.13 or later)

## Print Specifications

### Printing Method

Laser Beam Printing

### Print Speed<sup>5</sup>

Up to 42 ppm (Letter)

### First-Print-Out Time

Approx. 4.9 Seconds

### Recommended Monthly Page Volume

750 - 4,000 Pages

### Print Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL®6, PCL®5, Adobe PostScript 3®

### Double-Sided Printing

Automatic (Standard)

### Direct Print

Available from USB Memory (JPEG, TIFF, PDF)

### Printing from Mobile and Cloud-based Services<sup>1</sup>

Apple® AirPrint®, Canon Print Business, Mopria™,  
Canon Print Service, uniFLOW Online, Universal Print®

### Fonts

PCL: 93 Fonts  
PS: 136 Fonts

### Print Features

Secure Watermark, Header/Footer, Page Layout,  
Two-sided Printing, Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations,  
Toner Reduction, Poster Printing, Print Date

## Copy Specifications

### Copy Speed

Up to 42 ppm (Letter)

### First-Copy-Out Time (Letter)

Approx. 6.0 Seconds

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

Up to 600 x 600

### Copy Size

Platen: Up to Letter  
ADF: Up to Legal

### Multiple Copies

Up to 999 Copies

### Magnification

25% - 400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions

25%, 50%, 64%, 78%

### Preset Enlargements

129%, 200%, 400%

### Copy Features

Preset R/E Ratios by Area, Two-Sided, Density Adjustment,  
Original Type Selection, Two-sided Original, Sort, N-on-1,  
Different Size Originals, Sharpness, Erase Frame, Copy ID  
Card, Copy Passport, Reserved Copy

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

50 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

Legal, Letter, Statement

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

Single and Double-sided scanning: 14-28 lb. Bond  
(50-105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book

### Pull Scan

ScanGear MF for TWAIN, WIA, and ICA

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Up to 600 x 600

### Scan-to-Mobile Devices

Canon PRINT Business

### Scan Speed (Letter)

Single-sided: 40/50 ipm (300 x 300 dpi) (Color/BW)  
Double-sided: 80/100 ipm (300 x 300 dpi) (Color/BW)

### Memory Media

Standard USB Memory (JPEG, TIFF, PDF)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Email/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB, FTP

### Address Book

LDAP (50)/Local (300)/Speed Dial (281)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600 (Pull Scan), 192 x 204 (iFax), 300 x 300 (Other)

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP (TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP)  
Email/iFax: SMTP (Send), POP3 (Receive)

### File Format

Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Compact, Searchable)  
Optional: PDF (Encrypted, Digital Signature)

## Fax Specifications

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

### Sending/Recording Size

Statement to Legal

### Fax Memory

Up to 512 Pages

### Speed Dials

Max. 281 Dials

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 299 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 310 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

### Fax Features

Sender's Name (TTI), Direct Send, Preview,  
TX Report, Sequential Broadcasting

## Security Specifications

### Authentication

Standard: Embedded Universal Login Manager,  
Department ID Authentication  
Optional: uniFLOW Online Express

### Device

Standard: Standard Storage Initialize, Job Log  
Conceal Function, Protecting MFP  
Software Integrity, Verify System at  
Startup with Automatic Recovery

### Network

Standard: TLS 1.3, IPsec, IEEE802.1X  
authentication, SNMPv3, Firewall  
Functionality (IP/MAC Address  
Filtering), Enabling/Disabling (Network  
Applications, Remote UI, USB Interface),  
G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port  
separation from LAN

### Document

Standard: Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted  
Secure Print, uniFLOW Secure Print®),  
Scan Security<sup>7</sup> (Encrypted PDF, Device  
Signature PDF/XPS), Send Data Security  
(Restricted Email/File send functions,  
Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict  
Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict  
Sending from History)  
Optional: uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW  
PDF Security-E1

### Wi-Fi Authentication Methods

Wi-Fi: 128(104)/64(40)bit WEP,  
Infrastructure WPA-PSK(TKIP/AES-CCMP),  
Mode: WPA2-PSK(TKIP/AES-CCMP),  
WPA-EAP(AES-CCMP),  
WPA2-EAP(AES-CCMP)

Wi-Fi Access Point: WPA2-PSK(AES-CCMP)

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F  
Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (No Condensation)

### Power Requirements

AC 120-127 V: 6.0 A, 60 Hz

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1250 W  
Standby: Approx. 8.0 W  
Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.9 W  
Typical: 0.33 kWh

Electricity Consumption  
(TEC) Rating:

### Standards

ENERGY STAR® Qualified, Currently Rated EPEAT Silver<sup>3</sup>



**OPTIONAL CASSETTE-AH1**

- 550-Sheet Capacity
- 44.4 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover
- Support Letter

**Accessories**

**Card Readers<sup>5</sup>**

**MiCard Readers<sup>9</sup>**  
Proximity card reader designed to be used with uniFLOW for card authentication.

**Copy Card Reader-F1**  
Department ID authentication with Canon magnetic stripe cards.

**Print Accessories**

**Barcode Print Kit-E1**  
Installs bar code fonts for bar code printing.

**Send PDF Security Kit-E1**  
Send encrypted PDFs and add digital device signatures.

**Control Interface Kit-C1**  
Connects third-party card reader or coin operator system to device.

**Extended Service Packs**

**Canon eCarePAK**  
Canon Extended Service Plans offer coverage beyond the standard one-year limited warranty<sup>10</sup> up to four years.

**GENUINE<sup>®</sup> CONSUMABLES**



**Toner T13**  
(Yield up to 10,600 Pages)

Use of Canon GENUINE toner cartridges helps provide longer equipment life, high yields, reliable performance, high-quality output, and minimal jamming or issues.

*Toner yielding 2,700 pages is included in the box.*

<sup>1</sup> Canon PRINT Business is a free app available on the App Store<sup>®</sup> and Google Play<sup>™</sup> Store. For more information, including compatibility, please visit <https://www.usa.canon.com/mobile-app>. Please see the respective websites for Apple AirPrint and Mopria Print Service for compatibility and additional information.

<sup>2</sup> Please reference user manuals for details on settings available to export.

<sup>3</sup> For latest EPEAT ratings (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>4</sup> Includes consumables.

<sup>5</sup> Print speed is based on internal testing. Print speed may vary, depending on the number of copies selected as well as the settings for size, type, and orientation of paper.

<sup>6</sup> Requires optional uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>7</sup> Requires optional PDF SECURITY-E1.

<sup>8</sup> Attachment kit required.

<sup>9</sup> Ask Dealer for reader compatibility information.

<sup>10</sup> Limited warranty program is subject to certain conditions and restrictions. See warranty card for details.



usa.canon.com



As an ENERGY STAR partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has qualified this model as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageCLASS X, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. uniFLOW is a registered trademark of NT-ware Systemprogrammierung GmbH. Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Android and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc. iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, and the App Store are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Mopria and the Mopria logo are trademarks of the Mopria Alliance, Inc. Windows and Windows Server are trademarks of Microsoft Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of these features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2023 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

11/23-1178-8627





**HEMINGFORD ELEMENTARY**

**REFURBISHED CANON IR ADV DX6755**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>55 COPIES PER MIN</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>5 PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>STAPLER/SORTER FINISHING</i>

**HEMINGFORD SUPERINTENDENTS OFFICE**

**CANON**

**REFURBISHED imageRUNNER ADVANCE C3525I**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>25COPIES PER MIN B &amp; W</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>25 COPIES PER MIN COLOR</i>
<i>5- PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>SORTING/STAPELING</i>
<i>NETWORK SCAN EMAIL/FILE</i>	<i>FAX UNIT</i>

**HEMINGFORD SCHOOLS FRONT OFFICE**

**CANON imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5860**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>60 COPIES PER MIN B&amp;W</i>
<i>60 COPIES PER MIN COLOR</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>6- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>BOOKLET FINISHER WITH TRI-FOLD</i>	<i>2/3 HOLE PUNCH UNIT</i>



**HEMINGFORD HIGH SCHOOL**

**REFURBISHED CANON IR ADV DX6755**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>55 COPIES PER MIN</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>5 PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>STAPLER/SORTER FINISHING</i>

**THROUGHOUT THE DISTRICT**

**4 CANON imageCLASS X MF1440**

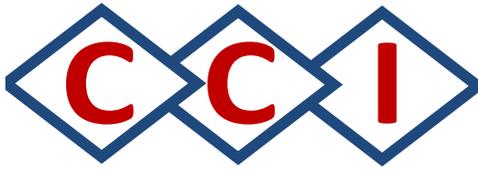
**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING AUTOMATIC DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>WI-FI ENABLED</i>
<i>42 BLACK &amp; WHITE COPIES PER MIN</i>	<i>2- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	

48 MONTHS ..... \$858.35 PER MONTH  
This includes all 8 copiers, set up, delivery and training for the term of the contract.

**SERVICE AGREEMENT**

INCLUDES ALL PARTS, LABOR, DRUMS, AND TONER.  
\$235.00 per month plus \$.045 per copy for color copies. Black & white overages will be billed at \$.0047 per copy over 600,000 per year.



**Canon**  
**SAVIN.**

- *OVER 40 YEARS OF EXPERIENCE IN THE INDUSTRY*
- *LOCAL REFERENCES AVAILABLE*
- *MULTIPLE LOCAL TECHNICIANS AVAILABLE*
- *EXCELLENT CUSTOMER SERVICE*
- *SUPPORTS THE LOCAL ECONOMY*

***COPIER CONNECTION, INC.***

# ***PROPOSAL***

Presented to: **HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS**

**CANON DIGITAL COPIER'S**  
**1 IRA-DXC5860, 4 Imageclass xMF-1333C, 1**  
**REMANUFACTURED IRA C 3525, 2 IRA-DX 6755's**

For any further information please contact:

**Rick Forsstrom**

Office: (308) 632-5520 ext. 108

Email: [sbsales@sbcopiers.com](mailto:sbsales@sbcopiers.com)

Cell: (308) 641-3019

**1912 Broadway Scottsbluff, NE - Phone (308) 632-5520 - Fax (308) 632-2895**

A division of: **ConnectingPoint**



imageRUNNER  
ADVANCE DX  
C5870i/C5860i  
C5850i/C5840i

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series

Color  
Mid-volume  
Multifunction

Print up to 70 ppm (BW/color)

Scan up to 270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/color, duplex)

Print up to 12" × 18"

6,350-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology, better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs, and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 10.1" intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- A unique, customized experience tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Hot Folders allow users to drag and drop a file into a hot folder and automatically print with pre-defined settings such as number of copies and finishing requirements.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\*<sup>2</sup> systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at startup. McAfee Embedded Control<sup>3</sup> utilizes a whitelist to protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security policy settings can be controlled with a dedicated password, configured from a central location, and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features, using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>4</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images, thanks to Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications that help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability.

\* Security Information and Event Management.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.



## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and rated EPEAT® Gold<sup>5</sup>

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5800 Series



### STAPLE FINISHER-AB2\*

- 2-tray, 3,250-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)



### BOOKLET FINISHER-A1 WITH TRI-FOLD\*

- 2-tray, 3,250-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets
- Booklet-making up to 20 sheets and saddle-folding up to 3 sheets
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)
- Built in C-Fold up to 5 sheets



### INNER FINISHER-L1

- 2-tray, 550-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 50 sheets within the footprint of the main unit
- Supports Staple-Free Stapling (up to 10 pages, 17 lb. Bond) and Staple on Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (Inner 2/3 Hole Puncher-D1)



### INNER 2-WAY TRAY-M1



### BUFFER PASS UNIT-P2



### HIGH CAPACITY CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-C1

- 2,450-sheet capacity
- Supports up to Letter
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index



### CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-AQ1

- Two 550-sheet cassettes
- Supports up to 12" x 18"
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index



### CABINET TYPE-V



### INNER TRAY\*



### COPY TRAY KIT



### PAPER DECK UNIT-F1

- 2,700-sheet capacity
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index
- Supports Letter



### PAPER FOLDING UNIT-L1\*\*

- Offers Z-Fold



### imagePASS-R1

- Delivers fast processing speed, outstanding image quality, and time-saving workflow
- Personalized printing with the built-in, entry-level Fiery FreeForm™ or with the supported variable data printing (VDP) formats

\* Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2.  
 • Required when Staple Finisher-AB2/Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Inner Finisher-L1 is not installed.  
 •• Requires Buffer Pass Unit-P2 and either Booklet Finisher-A1 with Tri-Fold or Staple Finisher-AB2.

**Main Unit****Type**

Color Laser Multifunctional

**Core Functions**Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax**Control Panel**

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Flat-panel

**Memory**

5.0 GB RAM

**Solid State Drive**Standard: 256 GB  
Optional: 1 TB**Interface Connection**Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)  
Optional: Bluetooth Low Energy**Others**Standard: USB 2.0 (Host) x1, USB 3.0 (Host) x1,  
USB 2.0 (Device) x1  
Optional: Copy Control Interface**Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with Staple Finisher-AB2 or Booklet Finisher-A1  
with Tri-Fold and 3rd Copy Tray Kit-A1)**Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Stack Bypass  
Optional: Dual 550-Sheet Paper Cassettes  
(Cassette Feeding Unit-AM1), 2,450-Sheet  
High Capacity Paper Cassette (High  
Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1),  
2,700-Sheet Paper Deck  
(Paper Deck Unit-F1)**Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)**Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 6,350 Sheets**Finishing Capabilities**Standard: Collate, Group  
With Options: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Saddle-Stitch,  
Hole Punch, Staple Free Stapling, Staple On  
Demand<sup>6</sup>**Supported Media Types**Multi-Purpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Coated,  
Tracing, Bond, Transparency, Label,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Tab, Envelope  
Paper Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy, Bond,  
Transparency, Pre-punched, Letterhead,  
Envelope<sup>7</sup>**Supported Media Sizes**Upper Cassette: Letter, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x  
8-1/2")  
Lower Cassette: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL, ISO-C5],  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-7/8" to 12" x 18")  
Multi-Purpose Tray: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R,  
Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL,  
ISO-C5], Envelope Custom Size (3-7/8" x  
3-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18"), Custom Size/  
Free Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2" to 12-5/8" x 18")**Supported Media Weights**Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Stack Bypass: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)**Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)**C5870i: Up to 70 ppm (Letter); Up to 42 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 40 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 35 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5860i: Up to 60 ppm (Letter); Up to 36 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 34 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 32 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5850i: Up to 50 ppm (Letter); Up to 30 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 29 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 27 ppm (11" x 17")  
C5840i: Up to 40 ppm (Letter); Up to 24 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 23 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 21 ppm (11" x 17")**Warm-up Time**From Power On: Approx. 6 Seconds<sup>8</sup>  
From Sleep Mode<sup>9</sup>  
C5870i: Approx. 7 Seconds  
C5860i/ C5850i/ C5840i: Approx. 6 Seconds  
Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>10</sup>**Dimensions (W x D x H)**24-3/8" x 28-1/2" x 36-7/8" (620 x 722 x 937 mm)<sup>11</sup>**Installation Space (W x D)**Basic: 44-7/8" x 45-3/4" (1,138 x 1,162 mm)  
(Right Cover Open with Multi-purpose  
tray extended + Cassette Drawers Open)  
Fully Configured: 73-1/2" x 45-3/4" (1,866 x 1,162 mm)  
(Staple Finisher-AB1 or Booklet Finisher-AB1  
with the extension tray extended + Paper  
Deck Unit-F1 + Cassette Drawers open)**Weight<sup>12</sup>**C5870i: Approx. 238.1 lb. (108 kg)  
C5860i/ C5850i: Approx. 231.5 lb. (105 kg)  
C5840i: Approx. 229.3 lb. (104 kg)**Print Specifications****Print Resolution (dpi)**

1200 x 1200

**Standard Page Description Languages**

UFR II, PCL6, Adobe PS 3

**Supported File Types**PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS,<sup>13</sup> XPS**Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Universal Print by Microsoft®, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.

**Fonts**PCL: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional Chinese),<sup>14</sup>  
Barcode Fonts<sup>15</sup>  
PS: 136 Roman**Operating System<sup>16</sup>**UFR II/PS: Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server2008/  
Server2008 R2/Server2012/Server2012  
R2/Server2016/Server2019, Mac OS X  
(10.11 or later)  
PCL: Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server2008/  
Server2008 R2/Server2012/Server2012  
R2/Server2016/Server2019  
PPD: Windows® 7/8.1/10, Mac OS X(10.10 or later)**Copy Specifications****First-Copy-Out Time**C5870i: As fast as 2.7 seconds (BW)/  
3.7 seconds (Color)  
C5860i: As fast as 2.9 seconds (BW)/  
4.2 seconds (Color)  
C5850i: As fast as 3.3 seconds (BW)/  
4.9 seconds (Color)  
C5840i: As fast as 4.1 seconds (BW)/  
6.1 seconds (Color)**Copy Resolution (dpi)**

600 x 600

**Multiple Copies**

Up to 999

**Magnification**

25%-400% (1% Increments)

**Preset Reductions/Enlargements**25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100% (1:1), 121%, 129%,  
200%, 400%**Scan Specifications****Type**

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

**Document Feeder Paper Capacity**

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

**Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes**11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom Size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17"**Document Feeder Supported Media Weights**Single-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)  
Double-Sided Scanning: 13.3 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (50 to 220 gsm)  
(BW, CL)**Platen Acceptable Originals**

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

**Pull Scan**Color Network Supported: ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
Windows® 7/8.1/10/Server 2008/  
OS: Server 2008 R2/Server 2012/  
Server 2012 R2/Server 2016**Scan Resolution (dpi)**Scan for Copy: 600 x 600  
Scan for Send: (Push) 600 x 600 (SMB/FTP/WebDAV/  
IFAX), (Pull) 600 x 600  
Scan for Fax: 600 x 600**Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services**

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to compatible mobile devices and certain cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

**Scan Speed (LTR) (BW/CL)**Single-sided Scanning: 135/135 (300 dpi), 80/80 (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning: 270/270 (300 dpi), 160/90 (600 dpi)**Send Specifications****Destination**Standard: E-mail/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB3.0, FTP,  
WebDAV, Mail Box  
Optional: Super G3 FAX, IP Fax**Address Book**

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

**Send Resolution (dpi)**Push: Up to 600 x 600  
Pull: Up to 600 x 600**Communication Protocol**File: FTP(TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP), WebDAV  
Email: SMTP, POP3**File Format**Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Encrypted, Compact,  
Searchable, Apply Policy, Optimize for  
Web, User Signature, PDF A/1-b, Limited  
Color, Device Signature, User Signature),  
XPS (Compact, Searchable, Device Signature,  
User Signature), Office Open XML  
(PowerPoint, Word)**Fax Specifications (Optional)****Modem Speed**Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps**Compression Method**

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

**Resolution (dpi)**

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

**Sending/Recording Size**

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

**Fax Memory**

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs)

**Speed Dials**

Max. 200

**Group Dials/Destinations**

Max. 199 Dials

**Sequential Broadcast**

Max. 256 Addresses

**Memory Backup**

Yes

**Store Specifications**

**Mail Box (Number Supported)**

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 10,000 Pages (2,000 jobs) Stored

**Advanced Box**

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV

Supported

Client PC: Windows (Windows 8.1/10)

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3

**Advanced Box Available Disc Space**

Approx. 16 GB (Standard HDD)

Approx. 480 GB (With Optional 1 TB HDD)

**Security Specifications**

**Authentication and Access Control**

User Authentication (Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Username and Password Login, Function Level Login, Mobile Login), Department ID Authentication (Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), uniFLOW Online Express<sup>17</sup> (PIN Login, Picture Login, Picture and PIN Login, Card Login, Card and PIN Login, Username and Password Login, Department ID and PIN Login, Function Level Login), Access Management System (Access Control)

**Document Security**

Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, Forced Hold Printing, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>18</sup>), Receive Data Security (Confidential Fax In-box Forwarding Received Documents Automatically), Scan Security (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS, User Signature PDF/XPS, Adobe LiveCycle<sup>®</sup> Rights Management ES2.5 Integration), BOX Security (Mail Box Password Protected, Advanced Box Access Control), Send Data Security (Setting for requesting password input per transmission, Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History, S/MIME Support), Document Tracking (Secure Watermark)

**Network Security**

TLS 1.3, IPSec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMP V3.0, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Dual Network Support (Wired LAN/Wireless LAN, Wired LAN/Wired LAN), Disabling Unused Functions (Enabling/Disabling Protocols/Applications, Enabling/Disabling Remote UI, Enabling/Disabling USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN, Prohibit the execution of files stored in Advanced Box in the MFP, Scan and Send-Virus Concerns for E-mail Reception

**Device Security**

Protecting SSD Data [SSD Data Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), SSD Lock], Standard SSD Initialize, Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Job Log Conceal Function, Protecting MFD Software Integrity, Checking MFD Software Integrity (Verify System at Startup, Runtime Intrusion Detection)

**Device Management and Auditing**

Administrator Password, Digital Certificate and Key Management, Audit Log, Cooperating with External Security Audit System (Security Information and Event Management), Image Data Logging, Security Policy Setting

**Environmental Specifications**

**Operating Environment**

Temperature: 50 to 86°F

Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (Relative Humidity)

**Power Requirements**

C5870i/ C5860i/ 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 12 A

C5850i:

C5840i: 110-127 V, 60 Hz, 10 A

**Power Consumption**

Maximum: Approx. 1,800 W

Standby: Approx. 56.1 W<sup>19</sup>

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>20</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>21</sup>

C5870i: 0.86 kWh

C5860i: 0.71 kWh

C5850i: 0.57 kWh

C5840i: 0.47 kWh

**Standards**

ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Certified

Rated EPEAT<sup>®</sup> Gold

**Consumables**

**Toner<sup>22</sup>**

GPR-61L Toner BK/C/M/Y

GPR-61L Toner C/M/Y

**Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)**

GPR-61L Toner

BK: 71,000 Pages

GPR-61L Toner

C/M/Y: 60,000 Pages

GPR-61L Toner

C/M/Y: 26,000 Pages

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service provider's Terms and Conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Third-party SIEM system required. Subject to third-party SIEM system's Terms and Conditions. Canon cannot ensure compatibility with all third-party SIEM systems.

<sup>3</sup> This feature is off by default and must be turned on by the user. Warm-up times are affected once turned on.

<sup>4</sup> Requires additional option.

<sup>5</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>6</sup> Finishing capabilities vary depending on the options connected.

<sup>7</sup> Envelope Feeder Attachment (standard) is required.

<sup>8</sup> Time from device power-on, until copy ready (not print reservation).

<sup>9</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.

<sup>10</sup> Time from device power-on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.

<sup>11</sup> Includes main unit and either Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1, High Capacity Cassette Feeding Unit-C1, or Cabinet Type-V.

<sup>12</sup> Includes main unit, consumables, and Cassette Feeding Unit-AQ1.

<sup>13</sup> EPS can be printed directly only from the Remote User Interface.

<sup>14</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>15</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>16</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux, and Citrix may be supported. Some of these solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>17</sup> No charge for this solution; however, activation is required.

<sup>18</sup> Requires uniFLOW Online/uniFLOW.

<sup>19</sup> Reference Value (measured one unit).

<sup>20</sup> 0.8 W Sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>21</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

<sup>22</sup> GPR-61L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y). Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 26,000 images.



Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5870i  
Outstanding 70-ppm A3 Color MFP

Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5860i  
Outstanding 60-ppm A3 Color MFP

Canon imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5840i  
Outstanding 40-ppm A3 Color MFP

As an ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageRUNNER, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in the US and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Product shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors. ©2022 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.



[usa.canon.com](http://usa.canon.com)



To learn about Canon's many awards, visit [usa.canon.com/awards](http://usa.canon.com/awards).

# OUTSTANDING RELIABILITY, IMPRESSIVE COLOR QUALITY, EFFICIENT DESIGN

The imageRUNNER ADVANCE C3500 Series is designed to deliver reliable color performance with a compact and efficient design. These intelligent systems work seamlessly with Canon's integrated software and services, making it an outstanding choice for small to medium-size businesses and departments within large organizations.

Print up to 30 ppm (BW/Color)

Scan up to 160 ipm (300 dpi) (BW, color, duplex)

Print up to 12" x 18"

2,300-sheet maximum paper capacity



## Workflow Efficiency

- An intuitive user interface with a large, responsive, color touchscreen with smartphone-like usability helps make it easy to carry out tasks.
- My ADVANCE enables users to have a unique, customized experience that's tailored to their specific workflow needs. Settings, such as display language, initial log-in screen, and accessibility options, can be synchronized across multiple devices for consistency.
- Canon's MEAP platform supports a range of integrated solutions designed to help simplify workflow and achieve a holistic business solution.
- Scalable support for mobile and flexible work styles can help increase efficiency by allowing workers to capture or print documents and access certain cloud applications.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to Searchable PDF, Microsoft® Word, and Microsoft PowerPoint® files through a single-pass, duplexing document feeder that holds up to 150 originals.
- Intelligent features, such as motion sensor technology to wake the device from Sleep mode and the ability to remove blank pages when scanning, can help maximize productivity.

## Security<sup>2</sup>

- Control device access by using the standard Universal Login Manager application for authentication.
- Help limit unauthorized distribution of sensitive information with an array of standard and optional document security features.
- Help facilitate information privacy and security by controlling access with IPsec, port filtering capabilities, and SSL technology.

## Cost Management

- The ability to apply print policies, monitor output, and restrict usage by user can help reduce unnecessary printing, enable cost recovery, and help save money on paper and toner.
- Tight integration with a variety of output management solutions, such as optional uniFLOW, provides the ability to carry out detailed tracking, reporting, and cost analysis.
- Quality and reliability, combined with remote diagnostics, contribute to maximizing uptime and can help reduce time spent by IT to resolve issues.
- Consistent user operation, paired with remote and centralized fleet management, can help simplify IT management of a single device or a fleet of devices.



## Device and Fleet Management

- The ability to preconfigure devices makes installation easy, and fleet management is simplified with the ability to synchronize settings across multiple compatible devices.
- Canon's device management tools provide a centralized point of control across a fleet of devices, including the ability to check device status and consumables, turn off devices remotely, capture meter readings, and manage address books and printer drivers.
- Standard genuine Adobe® PostScript® and PCL® support integration with enterprise applications and legacy systems to help streamline business processes.

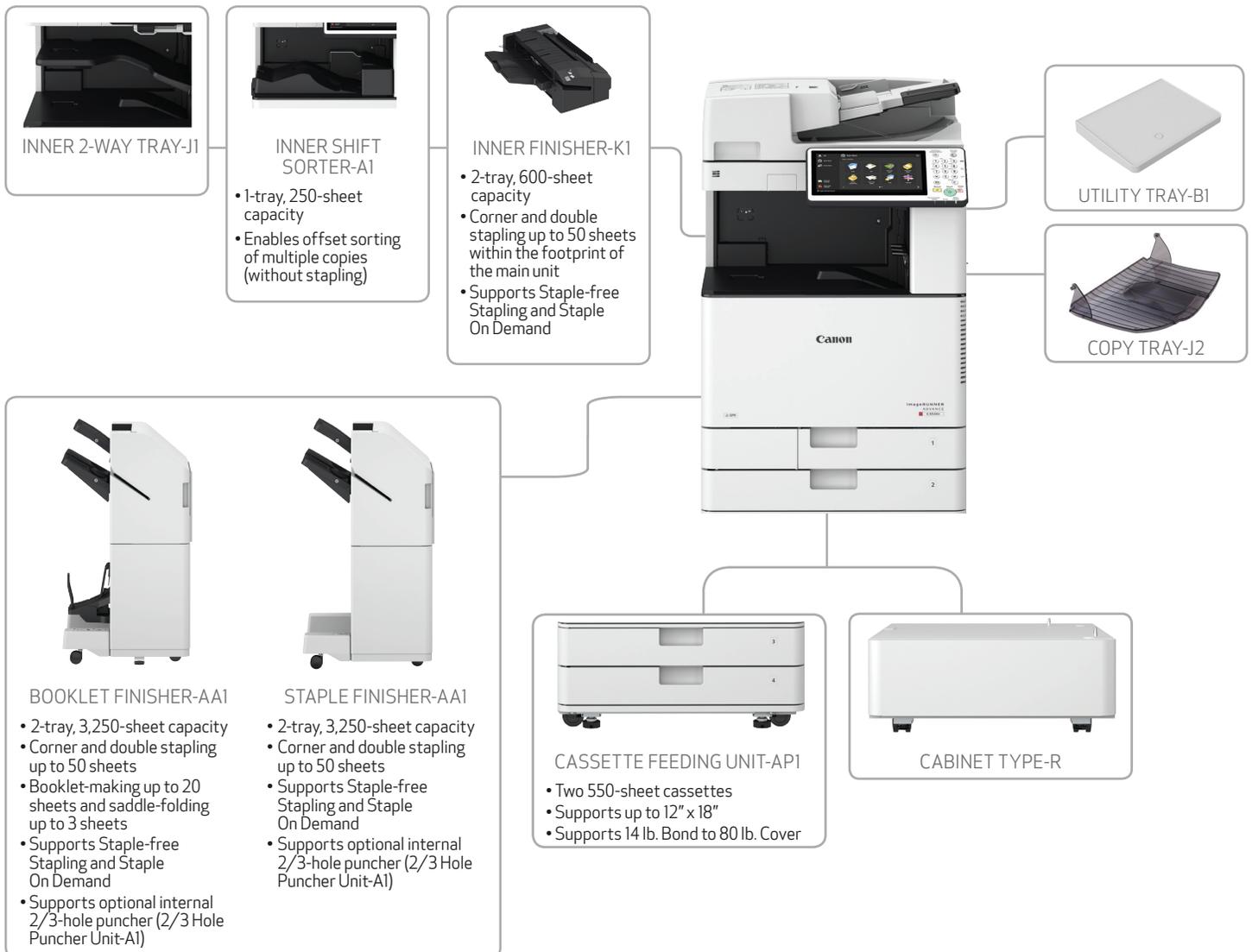
## Quality and Reliability

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies contribute to high-quality output to help meet the needs of busy departments.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for consistently striking images using Canon's V<sup>2</sup> color profile and 1200-dpi print resolution.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished, intuitive user maintenance videos, and automatic job rerouting (with optional solutions).

## Sustainability

- Fusing technologies, pQ toner, and selectable Sleep mode settings help achieve low energy consumption.
- Help minimize waste with default two-sided printing, the Secure Print feature, and the ability to hold print jobs, preview them, and change print settings at the device so you can achieve the results you want the first time.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and rated EPEAT® Gold.<sup>3</sup>

## Configuration



## Main Unit

### Type

Color Laser Multifunctional

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax

### Processor

Canon Dual Custom Processor (Shared)

### Control Panel

10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Color Flat-panel

### Memory

3.0 GB RAM

### Hard Disk Drive

Standard: 250 GB

### Interface Connection

Network: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)

### Others

Standard: USB 2.0 x1 (Host), USB 3.0 x1 (Host),  
USB 2.0 x1 (Device)

Optional: Serial Interface, Copy Control Interface

### Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 1,200 Sheets  
Maximum: 2,300 Sheets

### Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes,  
100-sheet Stack Bypass

Optional: Dual 550-sheet Paper Cassettes  
(CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT-API),

### Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250 Sheets  
Maximum: 3,450 Sheets  
(with External Finisher and Copy Tray)

### Finishing Capabilities

Standard: Collate, Group  
With Inner Shift Sorter: Collate, Group, Offset  
With Inner Finisher: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Staple-Free  
With External Finishers: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple, Booklet,  
Staple-Free Staple, Staple On Demand,  
Hole Punch (Optional)

### Supported Media Types

Paper: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy,  
Cassettes: Pre-punched, Bond, Transparency,  
(1/2): Envelope  
Stack Bypass: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy,  
Pre-punched, Labels, Bond, Coated,  
Transparency, Tracing, Envelope

Cassette Feeding Unit-API: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Color, Heavy,  
Pre-punched, Bond, Transparency

### Supported Media Sizes

Paper: Letter, Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
Cassette 1: [No.10 (COM10), DL, ISO-C5], Custom Size  
(5-1/2" x 7-1/8" to 11-3/4" x 8-1/2")

Paper: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Cassette 2: Executive, Statement-R, Envelope  
[No.10 (COM10), Monarch, DL], Custom  
Size (5-1/2" x 7-1/8" to 12" x 18")

Stack Bypass: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement, Statement-R,  
Envelope [No.10 (COM10), Monarch,  
DL, ISO-C5], Envelope Custom Size  
(3-7/8" x 3-7/8" to 12-5/8" x 18"),  
Custom Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2" to  
12-5/8" x 18"), Free Size (3-7/8" x 5-1/2"  
to 12-5/8" x 18")

Cassette Feeding Unit-API: 12" x 18", 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R,  
Executive, Statement-R, Custom Size  
(5-1/2" x 7-1/8" to 12" x 18")

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Stack Bypass: 14 lb. Bond to 110 lb. Cover (52 to 300 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Print/Copy Speed (BW and Color)

C3530i: Up to 30 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 15 ppm (11" x 17")  
C3525i: Up to 25 ppm (Letter); Up to 20 ppm  
(Letter-R); Up to 15 ppm (Legal);  
Up to 15 ppm (11" x 17")

### Warm-up Time

From Power On: 34 Seconds  
From Sleep Mode: 10 Seconds  
Quick Startup Mode: 10 Seconds<sup>4</sup>

### Dimensions (W x D x H)

22-1/4" x 29-1/4" x 45-1/5" (565 mm x 742 mm x 1148 mm)<sup>5</sup>

### Installation Space (W x D)

Basic: Stack Bypass + Cassette drawers open:  
38-1/2" x 44-1/4" (978 mm x 1123 mm)<sup>6</sup>

### Fully Configured:

63-3/4" x 44-1/4" (1620 mm x 1123 mm)<sup>6</sup>

### Weight

Approx. 213.9 lb. (97 kg)<sup>7</sup>

## Print Specifications

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL<sup>®</sup>6, Adobe<sup>®</sup> PS<sup>®</sup>3

### Direct Print

Available from USB, Advanced Box, Remote UI,  
and Web Access<sup>8</sup>

### Supported File Types

PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS, XPS

### Printing from Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of software and MEAP-based solutions are available to provide printing from mobile devices or Internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

### Fonts

PCL fonts: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts,  
Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional  
Chinese),<sup>9</sup> Barcode Fonts<sup>10</sup>

PS fonts: 136 Roman

### Operating System<sup>11</sup>

UFR II/PS: Server 2003/Server 2003 R2/Windows  
Vista<sup>®</sup>/Server 2008/Windows<sup>®</sup> 7/Server  
2008 R2/Windows 8/Server 2012/  
Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2/Windows  
10/Server 2016, MAC OS X (10.7 or later)  
PCL: Server 2003/Server 2003 R2/Windows  
Vista/Server 2008/Windows 7/Server  
2008 R2/Windows 8/Server 2012/  
Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2/Windows  
10/Server 2016

## Copy Specifications

### First-Copy-Out Time (LTR)

As fast as 5.9 seconds (BW)/8.2 seconds (Color)

### Multiple Copies

Up to 999 copies

### Magnification

25%-400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions

25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%

### Preset Enlargements

121%, 129%, 200%, 400%

### Basic Copy Features

Preset Reduction/Enlargement Ratios by Area, Paper  
Setting, Previous Settings, Favorite Settings, Finishing,  
Two-Sided, Density Adjustment, Original Type Selection,  
Interrupt Mode, Setting Confirmation/Cancel

### Special Copy Features

Book to Two Pages, Two-Sided Original, Finishing,  
Booklet, Job Build, N on 1, Add Cover, Insert Sheets,  
Different-Size Originals, Density Adjustment, Original  
Type Selection, Transparency Cover Sheets, Page  
Numbering, Copy Set Numbering, Sharpness, Erase  
Frame, Secure Watermark, Print Date, Shift, Gutter,  
Print & Check, Negative/Positive, Repeat Images,  
Job Done Notice, Mirror Image, Copy ID Card, Multi Sheet  
Feed Detection, Free Size Original, Adjust One-Touch  
Color, Color Balance, Area Designation

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

150 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

BW Original: 13 lb. Bond to 58 lb. Cover (50 to 157 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
CL Original: 17 lb. Bond to 58 lb. Cover (64 to 157 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects [Up to 4.4 lb. (2 kg)]

### Pull Scan

Color Network ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA

Supported OS: Windows Vista/7/8/8.1/10/  
Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/  
Server 2012/Server 2012 R2

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600, 400 x 400, 300 x 300, 200 x 400, 200 x 200,  
200 x 100, 150 x 150, 100 x 100

### Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to  
mobile devices and cloud-based services depending on  
your requirements.

### Scan Speed (LTR)

Single-sided Scanning (BW/Color):  
80 ipm (300 dpi)/51 ipm (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning (BW/Color):  
160 ipm (300 dpi)/51 ipm (600 dpi)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Email/Internet Fax (SMTP), SMB, FTP, WebDAV, Mail  
Box, Super G3 Fax (Optional), IP Fax (Optional)

### Address Book

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed Dial (200)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600, 400 x 400, 300 x 300, 200 x 400, 200 x 200,  
200 x 100, 150 x 150, 100 x 100

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP, SMB, WebDAV  
Email/I-Fax: SMTP, POP3, I-Fax (Simple, Full)

### File Format

Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Compact, Searchable,  
Apply policy, Optimize for Web, PDF  
A/1-b), XPS (Compact, Searchable),  
Office Open XML (PowerPoint<sup>®</sup>, Word)  
Optional: PDF (Trace & Smooth, Encrypted),  
PDF/XPS (Digital Signature)

### Universal Send Features

Original Type Selection, Two-Sided Original, Book to Two  
Pages, Different-Size Originals, Density Adjustment,  
Sharpness, Copy Ratio, Erase Frame, Job Build, Delayed  
Send, Preview, Finished Stamp, Job Done Notice, File  
Name, Subject/Message, Reply-To, Email Priority, TX  
Report, Original Content Orientation, Skip Blank Originals,  
Multi Sheet Feed Detection

## Fax Specifications

### Maximum Number of Connection Lines

2

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

## Sending/Recording Size

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

## Fax Memory

Up to 30,000 Pages

## Speed Dials

Max. 200

## Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 199 Dials

## Sequential Broadcast

Max. 256 Addresses

## Memory Backup

Yes

## Fax Features

Original Type Selection, Two-Sided Original, Book to Two Pages, Different-Size Originals, Density for Scanning, Sharpness, Copy Ratio, Erase Frame, Job Build, Specifying the Sender's Name (when sending fax), Sender's Name (TTI), Select Line, Selecting the Telephone Line (when sending fax), Direct Send, Delayed Send, Preview, Finished Stamp, Job Done Notice, TX Report, Multi Sheet Feed Detection

## Store Specifications

### Mail Box Simple (Number Supported)

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, 30,000 Maximum Pages Stored

### Advanced Box

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV

Supported

Client PC: Windows (Windows Vista/7/8/8.1/10)

Concurrent Connections (Max.)

SMB: 64

WebDAV: 3 (Active Sessions)

### Advanced Box Available Disc Space

Approx. 16 GB

### Advanced Box Features:

Disabling Advanced Box, Storage Filtering, Authentication for Advanced Box Log-in, Search Function, Sort Function, Printing a PDF File with a Password, imageWARE Secure Audit Manager Support

### Memory Media

Standard: USB

## Security Specifications

### Authentication

Standard: Universal Login Manager, User Authentication, Department ID Authentication, Access Management System, Device and Function Level Log-in

Optional: uniFLOW

### Data

Standard: Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Hard Disk Password Lock, Hard Disk Drive Erase, Mail Box Password Protection, Hard Disk Drive Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated)

Optional: Hard Disk Drive Removal, IEEE 2600.2 Common Criteria Certification, Data Loss Prevention (Requires uniFLOW)

### Network

Standard: IP/Mac Address Filtering, IPsec, TLS Encrypted Communication, SNMP V3.0, IEEE 802.1X, IPv6, SMTP Authentication, POP Authentication before SMTP

### Document

Standard: Secure Print, Adobe LiveCycle® Rights Management ES2.5 Integration

Optional: Encrypted PDF, Encrypted Secure Print, User and Device Signatures, Secure Watermarks, Document Scan Locking

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F

Humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (no condensation)

### Power Requirements

C3530i/C3525i: 120-127V AC 60 Hz, 7.5 A

### Plug (Main Unit)

C3530i/C3525i: NEMA 5-15P

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1.5 kWh

Standby: Approx. 44.1 W

Sleep Mode: Approx. 0.8 W<sup>12</sup>

Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating:

1.2 kWh (C3530i)

1.0 kWh (C3525i)

### Standards

ENERGY STAR® Certified

Rated EPEAT® Gold<sup>3</sup>

## Consumables

### Toner

GPR-53 Toner<sup>13</sup>

### Toner Yield (Estimated @ 5% Coverage)

Black: 36,000 Images

Color (C,M,Y):<sup>13</sup> 19,000 Images

## Footnotes

<sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service providers' terms and conditions.

<sup>2</sup> Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance.

<sup>3</sup> For current EPEAT rating (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>4</sup> Time from device power-on to when copy jobs can be programmed.

<sup>5</sup> Includes main unit and either Cassette Feeding Unit-API, or Cabinet Type-R.

<sup>6</sup> Includes main unit and either Cassette Feeding Unit-API or Cabinet Type-R and Staple/Booklet Finisher-AA1.

<sup>7</sup> Includes main unit, ADF consumables, and Cassette Feeding Unit-API.

<sup>8</sup> PDF print from Web sites is supported.

<sup>9</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.

<sup>10</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.

<sup>11</sup> Other operating systems and environments, including AS/400, UNIX, Linux and Citrix, may be supported. Some solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.

<sup>12</sup> 0.8 W sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.

<sup>13</sup> GPR-53L Toner also available for Color (C, M, Y). Yield (estimated @ 5% coverage) is 8,500 images.

USA.CANON.COM



As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has certified these models as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered trademarks owned by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Google Cloud Print™ is either a registered trademark or trademark of Google Inc. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Canon, imageRUNNER, imageWARE, MEAP, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. iF Design Award 2017 is for third generation imageRUNNER ADVANCE Multifunction office systems. uniFLOW is a registered trademark of NT-ware Systemprogrammierung GmbH. Adobe® and PostScript® 3™ are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries. Microsoft® and PowerPoint® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Products shown with optional accessories. Canon U.S.A. does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy, including without limitation, Sarbanes-Oxley, HIPAA, GLBA, Check 21 or the USA Patriot Act. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors. ©2017 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

Federal Law prohibits copying of certain documents. Violators may be subject to penalties. We suggest that you check with your own legal counsel. Canon U.S.A., Inc. and Canon Canada, Inc. intend to cooperate with Law Enforcement Agencies in connection with claims of unauthorized copying.





**imageRUNNER**  
ADVANCE DX  
**6780i / 6765i**  
**6755i**

## imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX 6700 Series

Print up to 80 ppm (BW)

Scan up to 270/270 ipm (300 dpi) (BW/colour, duplex)

Print up to 11" × 17"

8,020-sheet maximum paper capacity

Canon's comprehensive portfolio of imageRUNNER ADVANCE multifunction printers and integrated solutions can help **simplify** the end user experience and management of technology; better **control** sensitive information and print-related costs; and help ensure that technology investments proactively **evolve** with changing needs.

Black-and-white  
Mid- to High-volume  
Multifunction



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 10.1" intuitive touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- A unique, customized experience tailored to individual preferences using My ADVANCE.
- Supports mobile solutions and integration with many popular cloud services like Google Drive.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files in a variety of file formats.
- Integration with Canon and various third-party software with embedded application platform.
- Hot Folders allow users to drag and drop a file into a hot folder, and automatically print with predefined settings such as number of copies and finishing requirements.



### SECURITY

- Advanced standard security feature set to help safeguard sensitive information and assist in regulatory compliance.
- Integrates with existing, third-party SIEM\* systems to help provide real-time, comprehensive insights into potential threats to the network and printers.
- Technology to verify that the device boot process, firmware, and applications initialize without alteration at startup. McAfee Embedded Control<sup>2</sup> utilizes a whitelist to protect against malware and tampering of firmware and applications.
- Security policy settings can be controlled with a dedicated password, configured from a central location, and exported to other supported devices.
- Control access to the device and specific features, using a host of flexible authentication methods—PIN code, user name/password, or card access.<sup>3</sup>



### QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Outstanding imaging technologies and toner allow for crisp text and consistent images in rich black-and-white tones.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished and intuitive maintenance videos for consumables replacement.
- imageRUNNER ADVANCE models have received many awards and recognition from leading industry analysts, often referencing strong reliability.

\* Security Information and Event Management



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics and parts life management for proactive maintenance and rapid fixes.
- Easy and intuitive to monitor device status and consumable levels, turn off devices remotely, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security policies.
- Common firmware and regular updates with Unified Firmware Platform (UFP) for continuous improvements and consistency across a fleet.



## COST MANAGEMENT

- Track and assess print, copy, scan, and fax usage and allocate costs to departments or projects.
- Apply print policies and restrict usage by user to help reduce unnecessary printing and contribute to cost efficiency.
- Standard cloud-based solution provides a centralized dashboard with up-to-the-minute insights into printer activity.
- Upgrade to uniFLOW server or cloud-based solutions for full accounting and reporting for compatible Canon and third-party devices, pull printing, job routing, and powerful scan workflows.



## SUSTAINABILITY

- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve low energy consumption.
- Encourage environmentally-conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.

## CONFIGURATION OPTIONS



### STAPLE FINISHER-AC1

- 3-tray, 3,500-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 65 sheets
- Supports Staple-free Stapling and Staple On Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)



### BOOKLET FINISHER-AC1

- 3-tray, 3,500-sheet capacity
- Corner and double stapling up to 65 sheets
- Booklet-making up to 20 sheets and saddle-folding up to 3 sheets
- Supports Staple-free Stapling and Staple On Demand
- Supports optional internal 2/3-hole puncher (2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1)



### DOCUMENT INSERTION/ FOLDING UNIT-J1

- Insert pre-printed sheets
- Up to 11" x 17"
- 1-tray, 100-sheet capacity
- Z-fold, C-fold



### DOCUMENT INSERTION UNIT-P1

- Insert pre-printed sheets
- Up to 11" x 17"
- 1-tray, 100-sheet capacity



### COPY TRAY-R2



### UPRIGHT CONTROL PANEL-J1



### UTILITY TRAY-B1



### POD DECK LITE-C1

- 3,660-sheet capacity
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index
- Supports up to 11" x 17"
- User adjustable



### imagePASS-Y3 v1.1

- Delivers fast processing speed, outstanding image quality, and time-saving workflow
- Integrates print production workflows with EFI™ management information systems, Web-to-Print systems, and popular prepress workflows for end-to-end automation
- Communicates with the full suite of optional uniFLOW modules



### PAPER DECK UNIT-E1

- 3,660-sheet capacity
- 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index
- Supports LTR

# SPECIFICATIONS

## Main Unit

**Type**  
Monochrome Laser Multifunctional

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Send, Store  
Optional: Fax

### Processor

1.75GHz Dual Core Processor

### Control Panel

Standard: 10.1" TFT LCD WSVGA Colour Flat Touch-panel  
Optional: 10.4" TFT LCD SVGA Colour Upright Touch-panel

### Memory

3.0 GB RAM

### Hard Disk Drive

Standard: 250 GB  
Maximum: 1 TB

### Interface Connection

**Network**  
Standard: 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T,  
Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n)  
Optional: NFC, Bluetooth Low Energy  
**Others**  
Standard: USB 2.0 x1 (Host), USB 3.0 x1 (Host),  
USB 2.0 x1 (Device)  
Optional: Copy Control Interface

### Paper Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 4,360 Sheets  
Maximum: 8,020 Sheets

### Paper Sources (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: Dual 1,560-sheet Paper Drawers, Dual  
570-sheet Paper Cassettes, 100-sheet  
Multipurpose Tray  
Optional: 3,660-sheet Paper Deck  
(Paper Deck Unit-E1 or POD Deck Lite-C1)

### Paper Output Capacity (LTR, 20 lb. Bond)

With Copy Tray: 250 Sheets  
With External: 3,500 Sheets (with Staple Finisher-AC1 or  
Finishers: Booklet Finisher-AC1)

### Finishing Capabilities

With External: Collate, Group, Offset, Staple,  
Finishers: Saddle Stitch, Hole Punch, Eco Staple,  
Staple On Demand, Document Insertion,  
Z-fold, C-fold

### Supported Media Types

Paper Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Colour, Heavy, Bond,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Tab<sup>4</sup>  
Multipurpose Tray: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Colour, Heavy, Tracing,<sup>5</sup>  
Bond, Transparency, Label, Pre-punched,  
Letterhead, Tab  
Paper Decks: Thin, Plain, Recycled, Colour, Heavy,  
Pre-punched, Letterhead, Bond,  
Transparency, Labels, Tab

### Supported Media Sizes

Multipurpose Tray: 11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Executive,  
Statement-R, Custom Size/Free Size  
(4" x 5-7/8" to 11-3/4" x 19-1/4")  
Paper Decks: Letter  
Paper Cassettes: 11"x17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Executive,  
Statement-R, Custom size (5-1/2" x 7-1/8" to  
11-3/4" x 19-1/4")

### Supported Media Weights

Paper Decks: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Paper Cassettes: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Multipurpose Tray: 14 lb. Bond to 140 lb. Index (52 to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
Duplexing: 14 lb. Bond to 80 lb. Cover (52 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Print/Copy Speed

6780i: Up to 80 ppm (Letter)  
Up to 61 ppm (Letter-R)  
Up to 48 ppm (Legal)  
Up to 40 ppm (11" x 17")  
6765i: Up to 65 ppm (Letter)  
Up to 50 ppm (Letter-R)  
Up to 39 ppm (Legal)  
Up to 32 ppm (11" x 17")  
6755i: Up to 55 ppm (Letter)  
Up to 43 ppm (Letter-R)  
Up to 39 ppm (Legal)  
Up to 32 ppm (11" x 17")

### Warm-up Time

From Power On: Approx. 30 Seconds<sup>6</sup>  
From Sleep Mode: Approx. 30 Seconds<sup>7</sup>  
Quick Startup Mode: Approx. 4 Seconds<sup>8</sup>

### Dimensions (W x D x H)

26-3/8" x 30-3/8" x 46-5/8" (670 x 770 x 1,185 mm)

### Installation Space (W x D)

Basic: 60-3/8" x 53-1/4" (1,533 mm x 1,353 mm)  
(with Multi-purpose Tray/upper-right cover  
open + front cover open + Copy Tray)  
Fully Configured: 95-7/8" x 53-1/4" (2,436 mm x 1,353 mm)  
(with POD Deck Lite-C1 + Document  
Insertion/Folding Unit-J1 + Booklet Finisher-  
AC1/Staple Finisher-AC1 + Main unit front  
cover open)

### Weight

Approx. 491.6 lb (223 kg)<sup>9</sup>

## Print Specifications

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL<sup>®</sup>6, Adobe<sup>®</sup> PS<sup>®</sup>3

### Supported File Types

PDF, TIFF, JPEG, EPS,<sup>10</sup> XPS

### Printing from Mobile and Cloud

A range of standard and optional software and MEAP-based solutions (including AirPrint, Mopria, Google Cloud Print, Canon PRINT Business, and uniFLOW Online) are available to provide printing from mobile devices or internet-connected devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements. Please contact your sales representative for further information.

### Fonts

PCL Fonts: 93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR  
fonts, Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T (Japanese,  
Korean, Simplified and Traditional Chinese),<sup>11</sup>  
Barcode Fonts<sup>12</sup>  
PS Fonts: 136 Roman

### Operating System<sup>13</sup>

UFRII/PS: Windows<sup>®</sup>7/8.1/10/Server 2008/Server  
2008 R2/Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/  
Server 2016/Server 2019, MAC OS X  
(10.10 or later)  
PCL: Windows<sup>®</sup>7/8.1/10/Server 2008/Server  
2008 R2/Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/  
Server 2016/Server 2019  
PPD: Windows<sup>®</sup>7/8.1/10, MAC OS X (10.9 or later)

## Copy Specifications

### First-Copy-Out Time (Letter)

6780i: As fast as 3.1 seconds  
6765i/6755i: As fast as 3.3 seconds

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Multiple Copies

Up to 9,999 Copies

### Magnification

25%-400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions/Enlargements

25%, 50%, 64%, 73%, 78%, 100%(1:1), 121%,  
129%, 200%, 400%

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

Up to 200 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

11" x 17", Legal, Letter, Letter-R, Statement, Statement-R,  
Custom size: 2-3/4" x 5-1/2" to 12" x 17"

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

Single-sided/Double-sided scanning:  
13.3 lb bond to 80 lb. cover (50 to 220 gsm)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book, 3-Dimensional Objects

### Max. Platen Scanning Size:

Up to 11-3/4" x 17" (297 mm x 431.8 mm)

### Pull Scan

Colour Network ScanGear2 for both Twain and WIA  
Supported OS: Windows 7/8.1/10  
Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/Server 2012/  
Server 2012 R2/Server 2016

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Scan for Copy: 600 x 600  
Scan for Send: (Push) 600 x 600 (SMB/FTP/WebDAV/IFAX),  
(Pull) 600 x 600  
Scan for Fax: 600 x 600

### Scan to Mobile Devices and Cloud-based Services

A range of solutions is available to provide scanning to mobile devices and cloud-based services depending on your requirements.

### Scan Speed (Letter)

Single-sided Scanning  
BW/Colour: 135 (300 dpi)/80 (600 dpi)  
Double-sided Scanning  
BW/Colour: 270 (300 dpi)/160 (600 dpi)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Email/Internet Fax (SMTP), SMB, FTP, WebDAV, Mail Box,  
Super G3 Fax (Optional), IP Fax (Optional)

### Address Book

LDAP (2,000)/Local (1,600)/Speed dial (200)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

Push: Up to 600 x 600  
Pull: Up to 600 x 600

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP, SMB v3.0, WebDAV  
Email: SMTP, POP3

### File Format

TIFF, JPEG, PDF(Compact, Searchable, Apply policy,  
Optimize for Web, PDF/A-1b, Trace & Smooth, Encrypted,  
Device Signature, User Signature), XPS(Compact,  
Searchable, Device Signature, User Signature), Office Open  
XML (PowerPoint, Word)

## Fax Specifications (Optional)

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

400 x 400, 200 x 400, 200 x 200, 200 x 100

### Sending/Recording Size

Statement-R to 11" x 17"

### Fax Memory

Up to 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs)

### Speed Dials

Max. 200

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 199 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 256 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

## Store Specifications

### Mail Box (Number Supported)

100 User In-boxes, 1 Memory RX In-box, 50 Confidential Fax In-boxes, Maximum 30,000 Pages (2,000 jobs) Stored

### Advanced Box

Communication Protocol: SMB or WebDAV  
Supported Windows (Windows 8.1/10)  
Client PC:  
Concurrent Connections (Max.):  
SMB: 64  
WebDAV: 3 (Active Sessions)

### Advanced Box Available Disc Space

Approx. 16 GB (Standard HDD);  
480 GB (With Optional 1 TB HDD)

## Security Specifications

### Authentication

Standard: Universal Login Manager, uniFLOW Online Express,<sup>14</sup> User Authentication, Department ID Authentication, (Device and Function Level Log-in), Access Management System

Optional: uniFLOW

### Data

Standard: Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Hard Disk Password Lock, Hard Disk Drive Erase, Mail Box Password Protection, Hard Disk Drive Encryption (FIPS140-2 Validated), Verify System at Startup, McAfee Embedded Control<sup>2</sup>

Optional: Hard Disk Drive Mirroring, IEEE 2600.2 Common Criteria Certification, Data Loss Prevention (Requires uniFLOW)

### Network

Standard: Encrypted Secure Print, IP/Mac Address Filtering, IPsec, TLS Encrypted Communication (v1.0/1.1/1.2/1.3), SNMP V3.0, IEEE 802.1X, IPv6, SMTP Authentication, POP Authentication before SMTP, S/MIME, SIEM Integration

### Document

Standard: Secure Watermark, Secure Print, Adobe LiveCycle<sup>®</sup> Rights Management ES2.5 Integration, Encrypted PDF, Encrypted Secure Print, Device Signature, User Signature

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 10 to 30 °C  
Humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (Relative Humidity)

### Power Requirements

110-127 V AC, 60 Hz, 16 A

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 2,032 W  
Standby: Approx. 278 W<sup>15</sup>  
Sleep Mode: 0.9 W<sup>16</sup>  
Typical Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating<sup>17</sup>  
6780i: 1.65 kWh

### Standards

ENERGY STAR Certified: 6780i

## Consumables

### Toner

GPR-38 Black Toner

### Toner Yield (Estimated @ 6% Coverage)

56,000 Pages

- <sup>1</sup> Subscription to a third-party cloud service required. Subject to third-party cloud service provider's terms and conditions.
- <sup>2</sup> Requires Unified Firmware Platform v3.9 or greater.
- <sup>3</sup> Requires additional option.
- <sup>4</sup> Tab Feeding Attachment-B1 is required.
- <sup>5</sup> Some types of tracing paper cannot be used.
- <sup>6</sup> Time from device power-on, until copy ready (not print reservation).
- <sup>7</sup> Time from exiting Sleep mode to when printing is operational.
- <sup>8</sup> Time from device power on to when the copy icon appears and is enabled to operate on the touch panel display.
- <sup>9</sup> Including ADF, optional Upright Touch Panel and the toner bottle.
- <sup>10</sup> EPS can be printed directly only from the Remote User Interface.
- <sup>11</sup> Requires the optional PCL International Font Set-A1.
- <sup>12</sup> Requires the optional Barcode Printer Kit-D1.
- <sup>13</sup> Other operating systems and environments including AS/400, UNIX, Linux and Citrix may be supported. Some of these solutions are chargeable. SAP Device Types are available via the SAP Market Place. For more information, contact your sales representative.
- <sup>14</sup> No charge for this solution; however activation is required.
- <sup>15</sup> Standby Reference Value: measured one unit.
- <sup>16</sup> 0.9 W sleep mode not available in all circumstances due to certain settings.
- <sup>17</sup> Based on ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment Version 3.0.

 WWW.CANON.CA





AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Canon, imageRUNNER, imageWARE, imagePASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of Canon Inc. in Canada and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of its features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks of McAfee LLC in Canada and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. All printer output images are simulated. All features presented in this brochure may not apply to all Series and/or products and may be optional; please check with your Canon Authorized Dealer for details. Products shown with optional accessories. Canon Canada does not provide legal counsel or regulatory compliance consultancy. Each customer must have its own qualified counsel determine the advisability of a particular solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2020 Canon Canada Inc. All rights reserved.

0220W599

 **McAfee**  
PROTECTED

 **GENUINE**  
TONER, CARTRIDGE  
& PARTS

To learn about Canon's many awards, visit  
[www.canon.ca/awards](http://www.canon.ca/awards).

## Color imageCLASS X MF1333C

Print up to 35 ppm (Color)

Print up to 8-1/2" x 14"

850-sheet maximum paper capacity

Supports uniFLOW and uniFLOW Online

Designed for small workgroups within an office or home environments used as part of an organization's extended print fleet, the Canon Color imageCLASS X MF1333C offers feature-rich capabilities with high-quality imaging and minimal maintenance. Print, copy, scan, and fax capabilities help you accomplish necessary tasks with just one machine. A 5" color touchscreen delivers an intuitive user experience and can be customized by a device administrator to simplify many daily tasks.

Color  
Compact  
Multifunction  
Printer



### WORKFLOW EFFICIENCY

- 5" intuitive color touchscreen with smartphone-like usability.
- UI customization allows users to drag and drop frequently used icons.
- New Application Library features create a unique, customized device experience, and ease of use.
- Supports certain compatible mobile solutions for printing and scanning.<sup>1</sup>
- Scan and convert documents to searchable digital files through a single-pass, duplex document feeder.
- Designed for small print jobs with first-print-out time as fast as 7 seconds.
- Provides consistency with the imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX Series.



### SECURITY FEATURES

- Helps reduce the risk of confidential information loss, since documents are only stored in short-term memory.
- Remotely control device access and set rules via optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online.
- Limit document distribution by implementing Send-to-Myself-only.
- Verify System at Startup is a process to help verify the validity of the device firmware and Application Library from unauthorized modifications.
- With imageWARE Enterprise Management Console Device Configuration Manager Plug-in, security settings can be captured and exported to other devices on the same network.<sup>2</sup>



### COST MANAGEMENT

- Leverage optional uniFLOW or uniFLOW Online for full accounting and reporting, pull printing, and job routing.
- Service parts are designed for machine's life cycle to help minimize the need for proactive maintenance and potentially reduce service calls.
- High-capacity, all-in-one cartridge helps reduce overall supply costs.
- Out-of-the-box, standard, two-sided printing plus the ability to print multiple pages onto one sheet help to reduce paper consumption.



## DEVICE AND FLEET MANAGEMENT

- Designed for quick, easy deployment.
- Remote diagnostics for rapid service response.
- Easily monitor device status and consumable levels, observe meter readings, manage settings, and implement security settings.



## QUALITY AND RELIABILITY

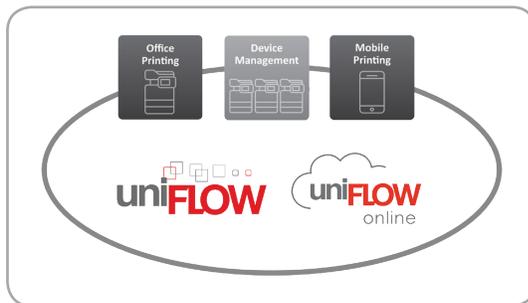
- Canon's signature reliability and engine technologies help keep productivity high and minimize the impact on support resources.
- Designed to achieve maximum uptime with status notifications to help keep supplies replenished.
- Intuitive maintenance videos for common tasks like consumables replacement.



## SUSTAINABILITY

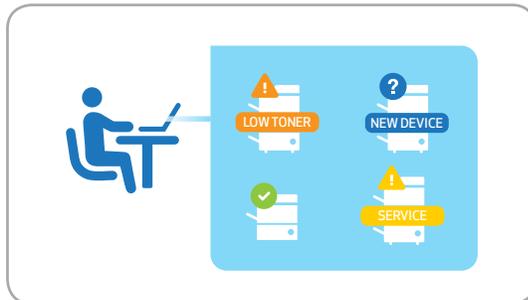
- A combination of fusing technologies and low-melting-point toner minimizes power requirements and helps achieve lower energy consumption.
- Encourages environmentally conscious work practices by enabling multiple settings that can help save paper and energy.
- ENERGY STAR® certified and currently rated EPEAT® Silver.<sup>3</sup>

KEY FEATURES



## MANAGE OUTPUT WITH uniFLOW SOFTWARE

The optional uniFLOW portfolio offers an on-premise or cloud solution that imageCLASS devices can utilize with flexible authentication. With either card-based or PIN-code-based authentication, imageCLASS devices can help secure output management, track costs with reporting, and operate mobile printing—one platform for your print, scan, and device management.



## FLEET MANAGEMENT TOOLS

imageWARE Enterprise Management Console can be used by a device administrator to centrally manage the Canon printer fleet, including consumables, status notifications, meters, and configuration settings. imageWARE Remote software allows for the service provider to manage devices proactively, including remote diagnosis and reporting. Local Content Delivery System facilitates remote firmware download at the device level.



## FAST, SINGLE-PASS DUPLEX SCANNING

The Color imageCLASS X MF1333C model leverages a single-pass document feeder for two-sided scanning at up to 80 images per minute (ipm) in black-and-white or up to 40 ipm in color. Easily scan directly to PC, USB, email, or the network. Scanned files can be converted into multiple file formats, including Hi-Compression PDF and Searchable PDF (OCR).



Single-Pass 2-Sided Scan



## EASY TO USE WITH APPLICATION LIBRARY

Unique to the Canon product line, the Application Library platform allows for one-touch button creation of key functions: Print Template, Standby Slide (screen saver), Scan-to-Preset Destination, ID Card Copy, Consumables Information, Copy (Eco), Copy (Bleed Reduce), Passport Copy, Fax and Store, Name and Scan, Copy (Enhanced Text), Language, Print Client Faxes, Fax to Preset Destination, Template Email, Standby Slide from Server, and Print File from Server.



APPLICATION LIBRARY

COLOR imageCLASS X MF1333C

## Main Unit

### Core Functions

Standard: Print, Copy, Scan, Fax

### Processor

Cortex-A9MPCore 1200 MHzx2

### Control Panel

5" Color Touch Panel

### Memory

1 GB RAM

### Standard Interface Connection

USB 2.0 x2 (Host), USB 2.0 x1 (Device) High-Speed, 10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet (Network), Wi-Fi 802.11b/g/n, Wi-Fi® Direct Connection

### Paper Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 300 Sheets  
Maximum: 850 Sheets

### Paper Sources (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 250-sheet Paper Cassette,  
50-sheet Stack Bypass  
Optional: 550-sheet Paper Cassette  
(Paper Feeder PF-K1)

### Paper Output Capacity (Letter, 20 lb. Bond)

Standard: 75 Sheets

### Supported Media Types

Cassettes: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled, Coated, Label, Pre-punched, Letterhead, PostCard, Envelope  
Stack Bypass: Thin, Plain, Thick, Color, Recycled, Coated, Label, Pre-punched, Letterhead, PostCard, Envelope

### Supported Media Sizes

Cassettes: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Index Card, Envelope: [No. 10 (COM10), Monarch, ISO-C5, DL], Custom (Min. 3.9" x 5.8" to Max. 8.5" x 14")  
Stack Bypass: Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Index Card, Envelope: [No. 10 (COM10), Monarch, ISO-C5, DL], Custom (Min. 3" x 5" to Max. 8.5" x 14")

### Supported Media Weights

Cassettes: 16 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover (60 to 200 g/m<sup>2</sup>)  
16 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover  
Stack Bypass: (60 to 200 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Warm-Up Time

From Power On: 14 Seconds or Less  
From Sleep Mode: 5.3 Seconds or Less

### Dimensions (W x D)

Standard: 16.7" x 18.1"  
(Desktop): (425 mm x 461 mm)

### Installation Space (W x D)

Fully Configured: 16.7" x 36.1"  
(425 mm x 917 mm)

### Weight<sup>4</sup>

Main Unit: Approx. 48.5 lb. (22 kg)  
(Standard):

### Supported OS

Windows® 8.1/10/11, Server 2012/Server 2012 R2/Server 2016/Server 2019/Server 2022, MAC OS (10.12 or later)

## Print Specifications

### Printing Method

Laser Beam Printing

### Print Speed (Color)<sup>5</sup>

Up to 35 ppm (1-Sided Letter); Up to 31 ppm (2-Sided Letter)

### First-Print-Out Time

Approx. 7 Seconds

### Recommended Monthly Page Volume

750 - 4,000 Pages

### Print Resolution (dpi)

1200 x 1200

### Standard Page Description Languages

UFR II, PCL®6, PCL®5, Adobe PostScript® 3™

### Double-Sided Printing

Automatic (Standard)

### Direct Print

Available from USB memory  
Supported file types: TIFF, JPEG, PDF and XPS

### Printing from Mobile and Cloud-based Services<sup>1</sup>

Apple® AirPrint® Canon PRINT Business, Mopria™ Print Service, Canon Print Service, uniFLOW Online

### Fonts

PCL: 93 Fonts  
PS: 136 Fonts

### Print Features

Secure Watermark, Header/Footer, Page Layout, Two-sided Printing, Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations, Toner Reduction, Poster Printing, Print Date

## Copy Specifications

### Copy Speed

Up to 35 ppm (1-Sided Letter); Up to 31 ppm (2-Sided Letter)

### First-Copy-Out Time (Letter)

Platen: 8.1 seconds/9.2 seconds (BW/Color)  
ADF: 7.4 seconds/8.6 seconds (BW/Color)

### Copy Resolution (dpi)

600 x 600

### Copy Size

Platen: Up to Letter  
ADF: Up to Legal

### Multiple Copies

Up to 999 Copies

### Magnification

25% - 400% (1% Increments)

### Preset Reductions

25%, 50%, 64%, 78%

### Preset Enlargements

129%, 200%, 400%

### Copy Features

Preset R/E Ratios by Area, Two-Sided, Density Adjustment, Original Type Selection, Two-sided Original, Sort, N-on-1, Different Size Originals, Sharpness, Erase Frame, Copy ID Card, Copy Passport, Color Mode, Reserved Copy

## Scan Specifications

### Type

Single-Pass Duplexing Automatic Document Feeder

### Document Feeder Paper Capacity

50 Sheets (20 lb. Bond)

### Document Feeder Supported Media Sizes

Legal, Letter, Statement

### Document Feeder Supported Media Weights

14-28 lb. Bond (50-105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### Platen Acceptable Originals

Sheet, Book

### Pull Scan

ScanGear MF for TWAIN, and WIA

### Scan Resolution (dpi)

Push Scan: Up to 300 x 600  
Pull Scan: Up to 600 x 600

### Scan Speed (Letter)

Single-sided: 20/40 ipm (300 x 600 dpi) (Color/BW)  
Double-sided: 40/80 ipm (300 x 600 dpi) (Color/BW)

### Memory Media

Standard USB Memory (JPEG, TIFF, PDF)

## Send Specifications

### Destination

Email/Internet FAX (SMTP), SMB, FTP

### Address Book

LDAP (50)/Local (300)/Speed Dial (281)

### Send Resolution (dpi)

Pull: Max. 9600 x 9600  
Push: 192 x 204 (iFax), 300 x 300 (email/SMB/FTP)

### Communication Protocol

File: FTP (TCP/IP), SMB3.0 (TCP/IP)  
Email/iFax: SMTP (Send), POP3 (Receive)

### File Format

Standard: TIFF, JPEG, PDF (Compact, Searchable)  
Optional: PDF (Encrypted, Digital Signature)

## Fax Specifications

### Modem Speed

Super G3: 33.6 Kbps  
G3: 14.4 Kbps

### Compression Method

MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

### Resolution (dpi)

Up to 400 x 400

### Sending/Recording Size

Statement to Legal

### Fax Memory

Up to 512 Pages

### Speed Dials

Max. 281

### Group Dials/Destinations

Max. 299 Dials

### Sequential Broadcast

Max. 310 Addresses

### Memory Backup

Yes

### Fax Features

Sender's Name (TTI), Direct Send, Preview, TX Report, Sequential Broadcasting

## Security Specifications

### Authentication

Standard: Department ID Authentication, Embedded Universal Login Manager  
Optional: uniFLOW, uniFLOW Online

### Data

Standard: Verify System at Startup

### Network

Standard: TLS 1.3, IPsec, IEEE802.1X authentication, SNMPv3, Firewall Functionality (IP/MAC Address Filtering), Enabling/Disabling (Network Applications, Remote UI, USB Interface), G3 FAX separation from LAN, USB Port separation from LAN

### Document

Standard: Print Security (Secure Print, Encrypted Secure Print, uniFLOW Secure Print<sup>6</sup>), Scan Security<sup>7</sup> (Encrypted PDF, Device Signature PDF/XPS), Send Data Security (Restricted E-mail/File send functions, Confirming FAX number, Allow/Restrict Fax Driver Transmissions, Allow/Restrict Sending from History)

### Wi-Fi Authentication Methods

Wi-Fi: 128(104)/64(40)bit WEP, WPA-PSK  
Infrastructure (TKIP/AES-CCMP), WPA2-PSK  
Mode: (TKIP/AES-CCMP), WPA-EAP (AES-CCMP), WPA2-EAP(AES-CCMP)

Wi-Fi Access Point: WPA2-PSK(AES-CCMP)

## Environmental Specifications

### Operating Environment

Temperature: 50 to 86 °F  
Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (No Condensation)

### Power Requirements

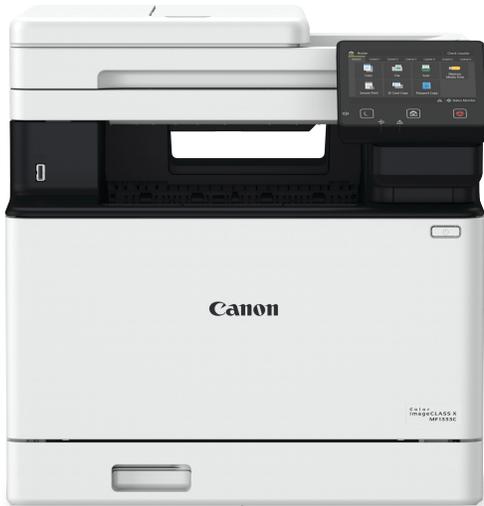
AC110-127V: 6.6A, 60Hz

### Power Consumption

Maximum: Approx. 1610 W or less  
Standby: Approx. 24.0 W  
Sleep Mode: Approx. 1.0 W  
Typical: 0.34 kWh  
Electricity Consumption (TEC) Rating:

### Standards

ENERGY STAR® Qualified, Currently Rated EPEAT Silver<sup>3</sup>



**PAPER FEEDER PF-K1**

- 550-Sheet Capacity
- 16 lb. Bond to 74 lb. Cover
- Supports Letter

**Accessories**

**Card Readers<sup>8</sup>**

**MiCard Attachment Kit-B1<sup>9</sup>**  
Proximity card reader designed to be used with uniFLOW for card authentication.

**Copy Card Reader-F1<sup>10</sup>**  
Department ID authentication with Canon magnetic stripe cards.

**Copy Control Interface Kit C-1**  
Connects third-party reader or coin operator system to device.

**Print/Scan Accessories**

**Barcode Print Kit-E1**  
Installs bar code fonts for bar code printing.

**Send PDF Security Feature Set-E1**  
Send encrypted PDFs and add digital device signatures.

**Extended Service Packs**

**Canon eCarePAK**  
Canon Extended Service Plans offer coverage beyond the standard one-year limited warranty<sup>11</sup> up to four years.

**GENUINE CONSUMABLES**

Always look for the Canon anti-counterfeiting hologram on your Canon GENUINE product packaging.



Toner T12 Black	Yields 1,600 Impressions
Toner T12 Cyan	Yields 1,600 Impressions
Toner T12 Magenta	Yields 1,600 Impressions
Toner T12 Yellow	Yields 1,600 Impressions

Use of Canon GENUINE toner cartridges helps provide longer equipment life, high yields, reliable performance, high-quality output, and minimal jamming or issues. Black Toner (yielding 1,600 pages) and C/M/Y Toners (yielding 1,600 pages each) are included in the box.

<sup>1</sup> Canon PRINT Business is a free app available on the App Store® and Google Play™ Store. For more information, including compatibility, please visit <https://www.usa.canon.com/mobile-app>. Please see the respective websites for Apple AirPrint and Mopria Print Service for compatibility and additional information.

<sup>2</sup> Please reference user manuals for details on settings available to export.

<sup>3</sup> For latest EPEAT ratings (Gold/Silver/Bronze), please visit [www.epeat.net](http://www.epeat.net).

<sup>4</sup> Includes consumables.

<sup>5</sup> Print speed is based on internal testing. Print speed may vary, depending on the number of copies selected as well as the settings for size, type, and orientation of paper.

<sup>6</sup> Requires optional uniFLOW Online / uniFLOW.

<sup>7</sup> Requires optional PDF SECURITY-E1.

<sup>8</sup> Attachment kit required.

<sup>9</sup> Contact your Canon representative for information on reader compatibility.

<sup>10</sup> Copy Card Reader Attachment-J1 Required.

<sup>11</sup> Limited warranty program is subject to certain conditions and restrictions. See warranty card for details.



usa.canon.com



As an ENERGY STAR partner, Canon U.S.A., Inc. has qualified this model as meeting the ENERGY STAR energy efficiency criteria through an EPA recognized certification body. ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks. Canon, imageCLASS, and the GENUINE logo are registered trademarks of Canon Inc. in the United States and may also be registered trademarks or trademarks in other countries. uniFLOW is a registered trademark of NT-ware Systemprogrammierung GmbH. Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Android and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc. iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, and the App Store are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc. Mopria and the Mopria logo are trademarks of the Mopria Alliance, Inc. Windows and Windows Server are trademarks of Microsoft Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. All other referenced product names and marks are trademarks of their respective owners. Canon products offer certain security features, yet many variables can impact the security of your devices and data. Canon does not warrant that use of these features will prevent security issues. Nothing herein should be construed as legal or regulatory advice concerning applicable laws; customers must have their own qualified counsel determine the feasibility of a solution as it relates to regulatory and statutory compliance. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. Not responsible for typographical errors.

©2023 Canon U.S.A., Inc. All rights reserved.

3/23-0486-7967





**HEMINGFORD ELEMENTARY**

**REFURBISHED CANON IR ADV DX6755**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>55 COPIES PER MIN</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>5 PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>STAPLER/SORTER FINISHING</i>

**HEMINGFORD SUPERINTENDENTS OFFICE**

**CANON**

**REFURBISHED imageRUNNER ADVANCE C3525I**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>25COPIES PER MIN B &amp; W</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>25 COPIES PER MIN COLOR</i>
<i>5- PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>SORTING/STAPELING</i>
<i>NETWORK SCAN EMAIL/FILE</i>	<i>FAX UNIT</i>

**HEMINGFORD SCHOOLS FRONT OFFICE**

**CANON imageRUNNER ADVANCE DX C5860**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>60 COPIES PER MIN B&amp;W</i>
<i>60 COPIES PER MIN COLOR</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>6- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>BOOKLET FINISHER WITH TRI-FOLD</i>	<i>2/3 HOLE PUNCH UNIT</i>



**HEMINGFORD HIGH SCHOOL**

**REFURBISHED CANON IR ADV DX6755**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>55 COPIES PER MIN</i>
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	<i>NETWORK SCANNER</i>
<i>NETWORK PRINTER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>5 PAPER SOURCES</i>	<i>STAPLER/SORTER FINISHING</i>

**THROUGHOUT THE DISTRICT**

**4 CANON imageCLASS X MF1333C**

**COPIER SPECIFICATIONS**

<i>SINGLE-PASS DUPLEXING AUTOMATIC DOCUMENT FEEDER</i>	<i>DUPLEXING</i>
<i>35 BLACK &amp; WHITE/COLOR COPIES PER MIN</i>	<i>2- PAPER SOURCES</i>
<i>NETWORK SCANNER/PRINTER</i>	
<i>REDUCE AND ENLARGE</i>	

48 MONTHS ..... \$891.04 PER MONTH  
This includes all 8 copiers, set up, delivery and training for the term of the contract.

**SERVICE AGREEMENT**

INCLUDES ALL PARTS, LABOR, DRUMS, AND TONER.  
\$235.00 per month plus \$.045 per copy for color copies. Black & white overages will be billed at \$.0047 per copy over 600,000 per year.

# 606.09 - USE OF ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE (AI) BY STUDENTS AND STAFF

## STUDENT USE:

The following resources were used when developing this document:

- *Chat GPT, 2024*
- <https://www.weareteachers.com/ai-policy-for-schools/>

## Introduction:

As artificial intelligence (AI) technologies become increasingly integrated into various aspects of society, including education, it is imperative to establish guidelines for its use within our school system. This AI policy is designed to ensure responsible and ethical utilization of AI tools by Hemingford Public Schools (HPS) students. By adhering to the guidelines outlined in this policy, students can identify how AI technologies can be used for educational purposes while upholding ethical principles and promoting responsible behavior within the school community.

## 1. Purpose:

The primary purpose of this policy is to outline the guidelines for the appropriate use of AI technologies by HPS students to enhance their learning experiences while promoting ethical and responsible behavior.

## 2. Guidelines for AI Use:

### a. Educational Purposes Only:

- AI tools should be used solely for educational purposes, including but not limited to research, learning assistance, and project development. Students may use AI as permitted and instructed by their teachers.

### b. Respect for Privacy:

- Students must respect the privacy of others when using AI tools. They should not collect, share, or use personal information of fellow students or school staff.

### c. Ethical Use:

- Students must use AI tools in an ethical manner, refraining from engaging in activities such as cheating, plagiarism, or manipulation of AI-generated content.
- Students must be transparent; citing AI text and images properly when they are used in any way.

### d. Accountability and Attribution:

- Students are accountable for the content generated or produced through the use of AI tools. Proper credit must be given to AI-generated content in accordance with academic integrity standards.
- When using AI, students must fact-check the content generated and explore potential plagiarism issues.

#### **e. Fairness and Bias Mitigation:**

- Students should be aware of biases that may exist within AI algorithms and strive to mitigate their impact. They should critically evaluate AI-generated results and seek diverse perspectives when necessary.

### **3. Supervision and Oversight:**

- Teachers will declare in their syllabus and/or classroom policies if AI is permitted, partially permitted, or not permitted. They should provide guidance and support to students to foster responsible AI usage. If students are unaware of a teacher's policy regarding AI, they should ask the teacher before using it.
  - permitted - AI technology's usage is allowed in most course assignments and tasks, with exceptions only for rare, explicitly announced contexts like in-class exams. This still does not mean that "anything goes" and that will be explained by the teacher.
  - partially permitted - AI technology's usage is allowed in some course assignments and tasks, but not others, and usage is carefully defined and the parameters are announced for use and non-use.
  - not permitted - AI technology's usage is not allowed in any course assignments and tasks, unless specifically and explicitly identified for a very limited context such as a particular in-class illustrative experiment.

### **4. Reporting Misuse:**

Students who observe or suspect misuse of AI tools by their peers should report such incidents to a teacher or school administrator promptly.

#### **STAFF USE:**

The following resources were used when developing this document:

- *This content was generated with the assistance of AI - Gemini, 2024*
- *An Initial Guide to Generative AI at WIU: The Fall 2023 AI Task Force's Final Report to Faculty Senate - Western Illinois University, 2023*

#### **Introduction:**

Artificial intelligence (AI) has the potential to be a valuable tool in enhancing the K-12 learning experience at Hemingford Public Schools (HPS). This policy outlines the responsible use of AI by staff at HPS to ensure student safety, academic integrity, and ethical implementation.

#### **1. Guidelines for AI Use:**

- a. **Student Learning:** AI tools should be used to supplement and support teachers, not replace them. The focus should remain on fostering critical thinking, creativity, and problem-solving skills in students. Staff should declare in their syllabus and/or classroom policies how students are allowed to use AI in their courses. We recommend staff use one of the following terms when doing so: permitted, partially permitted, not permitted.

- permitted - AI technology's usage is allowed in most course assignments and tasks, with exceptions only for rare, explicitly announced contexts like in-class exams. This still does not mean that "anything goes" and that will be explained by the teacher.
  - partially permitted - AI technology's usage is allowed in some course assignments and tasks, but not others, and usage is carefully defined and the parameters are announced for use and non-use.
  - not permitted - AI technology's usage is not allowed in any course assignments and tasks, unless specifically and explicitly identified for a very limited context such as a particular in-class illustrative experiment.
- b. **Academic Integrity:** AI tools should not be used for plagiarism or cheating. Students should be taught responsible use of AI and proper citation methods.
- c. **Data Privacy:** Any AI tool collecting student data must comply with all federal and state student data privacy laws (e.g., FERPA).
- d. **Bias Awareness:** AI tools can perpetuate biases. Staff must be aware of potential biases in AI tools and mitigate their impact on student learning and decision-making.
- e. **Transparency:** Staff using AI tools should be transparent with students about the purpose and limitations of the tool.

## 2. Guidelines for Staff

- a. **Staff Training:** AI training will be provided periodically by the HPS Technology Committee or Technology Coordinator. Staff intending to use AI should attend such training.
- b. **Pre-approval:** Staff planning to use new AI tools for instructional purposes must seek pre-approval from the designated HPS Technology Committee or Technology Coordinator. They will assess the tool's alignment with curriculum and data privacy practices.
- c. **Documentation:** Staff using AI tools should document their use, including the purpose and tool selection rationale.
- d. **Reporting Misuse:** Staff with concerns about AI use or potential misuse should report them to the school administration promptly.

Approved:

Reviewed:

Revised:





**Benefit Brokerage & Administration Proposal for:**

**Hemingford Public Schools**

Alliant Insurance Services is pleased to present Hemingford Public Schools with this proposal for Benefits Brokerage and Administration Services. This unique offering combines Alliant's unparalleled benefits consulting expertise with a robust suite of administrative tools.

### Consulting

### Expertise in a confusing market

- Brokerage
- Market Leverage
- Product Placement

### Communication

### Multiple Channels

- Custom Materials
- Branded Communications
- Benefit Booklets

### Enrollment

### Multiple Solutions

- One on One
- Call Center
- Self Serve

### System

### Flexible & Customizable

- Rules Based
- Cloud Based
- Syncs with Tyler

### Cost

### Paid by Current Carriers

- Keep Current Carriers
- Product Agnostic
- No Direct Cost to District

## Consulting

As one of the largest independent benefits consulting firms in the world Alliant has the resources and market leverage to ensure Hemingford Public Schools have benefit plans that meet employees needs. Alliant will provide the following services:

- RFP Support
  - Full marketing for all employee benefit products as directed by the District
  - Public bid support
  - Carrier advertising
  - Spreadsheets and analysis
  - Negotiation
- Placement
  - Implementation
  - Renewal
  - Negotiation
- Service
  - Contract management
  - Claims issue resolution
  - Billing & reconciliation
- Benchmarking
  - Local competitors for labor
  - State & national education trends

## Communication

The key to a successful employee benefit program is educating your employees about the valuable benefits provided by Hemingford Public Schools. The Alliant Communication Team will create custom communication material using Hemingford's unique brand, logo, and colors. These communication materials include:

- **Benefits Booklet**
  - Printed or electronic
  - Custom QR Links
  - All benefits in one place, crucial documents for recruiting
- **Text Messages**
  - Branded text alerts with product and open enrollment links
  - Key alerts throughout the year
  - Hyperlinks to service center
- **Emails**
  - Branded alerts with product and open enrollment links
  - Key alerts throughout the year
  - Hyperlinks to service center
- **Videos**
  - Custom videos explaining products
  - QR links in benefit booklet
  - Always available online
- **Open Enrollment Guides**
  - Updated every year
  - Summarizes products
  - Log in instructions

## Enrollment

Open Enrollment and new hire on-boarding are the most crucial times to educate employees about the valuable benefits provided by Hemingford Public Schools. Alliant's team of noncommissioned benefit experts will educate your employees in all aspects of their benefit plan. Alliant offers three different ways to enroll in your benefits:

- One on One
  - Noncommissioned benefits experts will come onsite to assist
    - Open Enrollment
    - Large new hire events
  - Bilingual
  - Educate and enroll all benefits including EHA
- Call Center
  - 7 am to 7 pm Central
  - Bilingual, US Based call center
  - Educate and enroll all benefits including EHA
- Self Service Online System
  - Web or phone
  - Bilingual
  - Built in videos for all products

## System

Alliant has partnered with Selerix, the largest benefit platform in the world, to offer Hemingford Public Schools a no cost complete end to end benefits administration platform. This rule based, highly configurable system will integrate with your payroll system to eliminate time consuming headaches and simplify benefits administration. Alliant will offer the following services:

- Integration
  - Receive and send secure files nightly to your payroll system
  - Transmit information via EDI to carriers
  - Rules based system of record for employee benefits
- All Inclusive
  - Set up and maintenance
  - 360 support
  - No fees
- Enrollment
  - Easy to use
  - Trackable
  - Videos on demand
- Administrative Access
  - Complete access to all data
  - Custom reports
  - Track OE status

## Cost to Hemingford Public Schools

Alliant is an independent, carrier agnostic, consulting firm. As such we will work with any carrier Hemingford Public Schools deems to be beneficial to the District. Alliant is paid from commissions that are already baked into the plans Hemingford offers the employees. Hemingford Public Schools must simply sign an Agent of Record Letter (Attached) naming Alliant the broker of record. With that letter Alliant will start receiving the commissions the first of the following month. Alliant's services can be terminated at any time with the same letter. Naming Alliant the broker of record does not impact the rates or plans being offered to the employees. Alliant will use the commissions generated from the products to pay for the systems and services described above and will disclose all commissions in writing once a year at renewal.

PLACE ON HEMINGFORD PUBLIC SCHOOLS LETTERHEAD.

DATE

RE: Broker of Record Authorization for Hemingford Public Schools

To Whom It May Concern:

This letter confirms that effective 6/01/2024, Hemingford Public Schools has appointed Alliant Insurance Services, Inc (EIN 33-0785439), as our insurance broker for the below captioned policies. This appointment of Alliant Insurance Services, Inc. rescinds all previous appointments on file, and shall remain in full effect until it is cancelled in writing.

Product	Carrier	Policy Number
Group Life and AD&D		
Disability		
Worksite		
Vision		

Alliant Insurance Services, Inc. is hereby authorized to negotiate directly with any interested company with respect to changes to existing insurance policies.

This letter also constitutes your authority to furnish Alliant Insurance Services, Inc. with all information it may request related to our insurance policies, contracts, rates, renewals, surveys, reserve studies, retention reports and any other financial or administrative information it may wish to obtain for its study of our present and future needs in connection with the insurance program to which this letter applies. We request that you do not communicate such information to anyone else.

This recognition of Alliant Insurance Services, Inc. as our broker entitles it to all commissions and service allowance paid by your company in conjunction with its placement, installation, and servicing of our insurance contracts.

If you have any questions regarding this authorization, please do not hesitate to contact me. Thank you for your cooperation and assistance with this matter.

Sincerely,

cc: Nick Long, Alliant Insurance Services, Inc.  
Ian Shada, Alliant Insurance Services, Inc.

*Morford's Decorating Center Inc.*

*1250 W. 6<sup>th</sup> Street*

*Chadron, Nebraska 69337*

*Phone: 308-432-3149*

*Fax: 308-432-3103*

*RE: Hemingford Schools*

*March 1, 2024*

This is a quote to provide and install the following:

Library \$11,550.00

- Tear out existing carpet
- Floor Prep as necessary
- Install new carpet tile (Design Medley II)
- Install new carpet base

Band Room \$12,500.00

- Tear out existing carpet
- Floor Prep as necessary
- Install new carpet tile (Design Medley II)
- Install new carpet base

We look forward to helping you with these projects. Please feel free to call at any time with any questions.

Thank You,  
John Morford

**AGREEMENT # LC-24-0058**

Date: April 26, 2024

Client: Hemingford Public Schools  
913 Niobrara Ave.  
Hemingford, NE, 69348  
Dr. Travis Miller, Superintendent  
308.487.3328  
[tmiller@gubn.org](mailto:tmiller@gubn.org)

McREL: McREL International  
4601 DTC Boulevard, Suite 500  
Denver, CO 80237-2596  
Kristin Rouleau  
303-632-5547  
[krouleau@mcrel.org](mailto:krouleau@mcrel.org)

This Agreement is between Hemingford Public Schools ("Client") and McREL International identified above ("McREL").

**ARTICLE I**

Purpose and Scope of Work

1.1 The purpose of this Agreement is to engage McREL to perform the services described in the Scope of Work attached hereto as Schedule A and made a part hereof.

1.2 McREL shall at all times act in good faith and use its best efforts to perform all of the work provided for in this Agreement.

**ARTICLE II**

Payments to McREL

2.1 Client shall pay, on a fixed-price basis, for all products and services provided by McREL under this Agreement, the sum of \$22,900 (Twenty-Two Thousand Nine Hundred Dollars).

2.2 Payments to McREL shall be made at the times, in the manner and upon the conditions set forth in the Payment Schedule attached hereto as Schedule B and made a part hereof.

ARTICLE III  
Term and Termination

3.1 The period of this Agreement shall be for August 12, 2024 to June 30, 2025.

3.2 This Agreement may be terminated in whole or in part, at any time, by either party at its discretion or for its convenience, upon at least 30 days' prior written notice to the other party. In the event of such termination, McREL shall be compensated under this Agreement through the effective date of termination, provided a final invoice is received by Client no later than 60 days after such date.

3.3 In the event of any breach of this Agreement by either party, or in the event either party is unable to perform any substantial part of this Agreement, this Agreement may be terminated immediately by either party by written notice to the other.

3.4 If this Agreement is terminated by reason of a breach by either party, the other party shall be entitled to all available legal, equitable and administrative remedies for such breach, including without limitation, the right to all damages resulting from such breach and the right to an injunction restraining or compelling action in accordance with this Agreement.

ARTICLE IV  
Reports and Audit

4.1 Client and any of its duly authorized representatives, shall have full and timely access to all books, documents, papers, records, and accounts of McREL that are pertinent to this Agreement for the purpose of conducting such audits and examinations, or of making such excerpts or copies, as the examining party deems appropriate. Each party shall bear all of its own expenses in connection with any such audit, examination or copying, unless any such audit or examination reveals any breach of this Agreement by McREL or negligence of McREL, in which event McREL shall bear all costs of such audit or examination in addition to any other damages or liabilities resulting from such breach or negligence.

ARTICLE V  
Ownership, Intellectual Property, and Pre-existing Works

5.1 In connection with the Scope of Work shown on Schedule A, McREL shall retain all right, title and interest to its intellectual property embodied in or by such work, and to its pre-existing works, technology and processes, consultations, trainings, analyses, theories, models, publications, research, evaluations, or assessments.

5.2 Right to Publish - Pursuant to the Scope of Work shown on Schedule A, McREL may publish scholarly work(s) derived from its work undertaken in connection with this Agreement, subject to the terms of paragraph 6.5.

ARTICLE VI  
General Provisions

6.1 McREL represents and warrants as follows:

(a) McREL is incorporated in and in good standing with the state of Colorado and is duly authorized to conduct business and is in good standing in each other state in which it shall conduct any activities under this Agreement.

(b) McREL has full power and authority to enter into this Agreement and carry out all of its terms and provisions.

(c) This Agreement has been duly authorized by all necessary institutional action and represents the legally binding and fully enforceable obligation of McREL, and the persons entering into and executing this Agreement on behalf of McREL are fully authorized to do so.

(d) No part of this Agreement or of any activity to be undertaken by McREL hereunder shall violate or otherwise be inconsistent with any provision of

- (i) any judicial or administrative order or ruling applicable to McREL, or
- (ii) any statute, rule, or regulation applicable to McREL or to McREL's activities under this Agreement.

6.2 In connection with its performance of this Agreement, McREL shall comply with all applicable Federal and state laws, regulations, standards, orders, and requirements.

6.3 All notices, reports and other written communications to either party under this Agreement shall be hand delivered or shall be mailed, postage prepaid, by first-class, registered or certified mail, or sent by private courier or express company, to the address noted for each party at the beginning of this Agreement or shall be transmitted by fax or email to the number/email address noted for each party. Delivery shall be deemed to have occurred on the earlier of actual receipt by the recipient or, in the case of mailing, three days after deposit with the United States Postal Service. Either party may change its address or fax number for purposes of this Agreement at any time by written notice to the other party.

6.4 Indemnification - McREL hereby agrees that it will release, hold harmless, indemnify, and defend Client from and against any and all loss, liability, claims, torts, legal action, costs, and legal fees arising from claims of third parties for infringement relating to the materials prepared by McREL under this Agreement. Client hereby agrees that it will release, hold harmless, indemnify, and defend McREL from and against any and all loss, liability, claims, torts, legal action, costs, and legal fees arising from claims of third parties, other than for infringement, relating to use of the materials and/or any products or services sold or offered by Client.

6.5 Confidentiality - Both parties agree to treat any information provided to each by the other in connection with this Agreement as confidential, except that either party may disclose the existence of the Agreement (excluding its terms and conditions) and specifically agrees that it shall not use such information other than in connection with this Agreement and shall not

disclose such information to any third party without the other party's consent. These limitations shall not apply to any information 1) which is rightfully disclosed to either party by a third party without obligation of confidentiality; 2) which was in the possession of either party prior to receipt thereof from the other party; 3) which is disclosed to such party's counsel or other confidential advisors or to a court, arbitration panel, administrative tribunal or other similar body; 4) which is compelled to be disclosed by a court, arbitration panel, administrative tribunal or other similar body; or by statute(s) or 5) which is within the public domain, or enters the public domain through no fault of the receiving party. Both parties further agree that all confidentiality commitments hereunder shall survive any termination or expiration of the Agreement.

6.6 In performing its services hereunder, McREL is an independent contractor. Nothing herein shall create any partnership or joint venture between the parties or be construed as establishing any employment relationship. McREL shall have no authority to speak for, act on behalf of or in any way bind or obligate Client, except as may be otherwise expressly provided herein.

6.7 This Agreement may not be amended, modified, or supplemented except by a written instrument signed by the party sought to be bound thereby.

6.8 McREL may not assign all or any portion of this Agreement, or any of its rights, powers, duties, or obligations hereunder, without the express written consent of Client.

6.9 This document, together with all schedules, contains the entire Agreement of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior communications, representations, and Agreements.

6.10 Neither party shall limit or exclude any person from participation in any activity under this Agreement on the basis of race, color, creed, national origin, sex, or disability.

6.11 This Agreement is made in Denver, Colorado and shall be governed by the laws of the State of Colorado. The parties consent to venue in the courts of either Arapahoe County, Colorado or Denver County, Colorado with respect to any dispute arising hereunder.

6.12 All notices shall be in writing and sent to the following addresses:

Hemingford Public Schools  
913 Niobrara Ave.  
Hemingford, NE, 69348  
Dr. Travis Miller, Superintendent  
308.487.3328  
[tmiller@gubn.org](mailto:tmiller@gubn.org)

McREL International (McREL)  
4601 DTC Boulevard, Suite 500  
Denver, CO 80237  
Sue Desch, Chief Financial Officer  
303.337.0990  
[sdesch@mcrel.org](mailto:sdesch@mcrel.org)

6.13 Presenter(s) may not be recorded in, with, or by any audio and/or video media without prior written consent from McREL. Such consent is in McREL's absolute discretion. Any consent, if granted, will be valid only for a specific, identified engagement and can be used only for Client's internal purposes unless explicitly indicated otherwise in writing.

6.14 Presenter(s) and/or dates may be subject to change; however, McREL will use its best efforts to schedule the staff as shown and hold to the dates as indicated herein.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF the parties have executed this Agreement on the dates set forth below to be effective as of the date first above written.

**Hemingford Public Schools**

**McREL International**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Susan Desch, Chief Financial Officer

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

**Schedule A  
Scope of Work**

**Professional Learning:**

<b>Item</b>	<b>Cost</b>
<p><b>August 12 and August 13, 2024 - Professional learning and support:</b></p> <p>A McREL consultant will provide two (2) consecutive days of on-site professional learning and support focused on the McREL Six-Phase Learning Model and best first instruction strategies from <i>The New Classroom Instruction That Works</i>.</p> <p>Professional learning sessions are capped at sixty-one (61) participants per consultant to provide an interactive learning experience. Larger audiences can be discussed and mutually agreed upon.</p> <p>Travel and expenses included.</p>	\$13,600
<p><b>Date to be determined - One day Professional learning and support:</b></p> <p>A McREL consultant will provide one (1) day on-site professional learning and support to extend and apply the learning from August 2024. The day will take place on a mutually agreed upon date prior to June 30, 2025.</p> <p>Travel and expenses included.</p>	\$9,300
<p><b>Total Contract</b></p>	<b>\$22,900</b>

## **Schedule B Payment Schedule**

Please remit payment via electronic funds deposit (ACH or EFT). A copy of our banking details typically required for direct deposit payments will be provided with the fully executed agreement.

Client shall pay, on a fixed-price basis, for all products and services provided by McREL under this Agreement, the sum of \$22,900 (Twenty-Two Thousand Nine Hundred Dollars), according to the following schedule:

- August 31, 2024 = \$13,600
- June 30, 2025 = \$9,300



**Protex Central, Inc.**

Phone: (402) 463-0666  
Fax: (402) 463-6057  
1239 North Minnesota Ave, PO Box 1467  
Hastings, NE 68901

**Quote**

No.: **40204**  
Date: **5/9/2024**

Prepared for:  
Eric Arneson (308) 487-3330  
Hemingford Public Schools  
911 Niobrara Ave  
Hemingford, NE 69348 USA

Prepared by: Ed Jarmer  
Account No.: 14180  
Phone: (308) 487-3328  
Fax: (308) 487-5215

**Your Price:** **\$2,448.00**

**Total:** **\$2,448.00**

For technical questions regarding this proposal please call Greg Behrends at 800/274-0888.

Prices are firm until 5/24/2024      Terms: NET30

**Prepared by:** Ed Jarmer, Ed.Jarmer@protexcentral.net

**Date:** 5/9/2024

**SCOPE OF WORK:**

Protex Central, Inc. (PCI) proposes the additional, annual Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) fees for the proposed installation of additions to the existing Brivo access control system at Hemingford Public Schools in Hemingford, NE.

This quote shall be accepted for PCI Quote #40203 (Brivo Access Control System Additions - Equipment & Installation Price) to be valid.

**Protex Central Inc. - Agreement Proposal Terms & Conditions**

This proposal when accepted, and any subsequent orders placed as a result of this proposal are not subject to cancellation, change, reduction in amount or suspension of performance by the customer except with Protex's written consent and upon terms which indemnify against loss. Any change order such as design, shipping or installation schedule or other instructions of any kind must be submitted in writing. Protex shall not be bound by any such change unless they first agree in writing, and then only upon such terms, as they shall make, to cover any additional cost caused by such changes.

When materials covered by this proposal are for the replacement of or additions to existing equipment, Protex shall in no way be responsible for the functioning of any part of the existing system on which changes are not made by Protex. The price of this proposal does not include duties, sales, use, excise, or other similar taxes, unless required by federal, state or local law. Purchaser shall pay, in addition to the stated price, all taxes not legally required to be paid by Protex, or alternatively, shall provide Protex with acceptable tax exception certificates. Protex shall provide Purchaser with any tax payment certificate upon request and after completion and acceptance of work. Protex shall not be responsible for any loss or damage occurring by reason of delay, or inability to perform caused by conditions beyond their control including but not limited to acts of God, act of government, fire, flood, war, riot, civil commotion, transportation embargoes or car shortages, malicious injury, inability to secure material or skilled labor, priority, allocations or other materials regulations, or any other cause, similar or dissimilar.

Should this proposal cover an item or items which are made to the customer's specifications, any warranty on the part of Protex shall be limited to cover latent defects in materials only and in no case shall be construed to warrant that said item or items shall provide satisfactory in type of length or service rendered. Acceptance by the customer shall be evidence that the customer's specifications have been compiled with and shall be conclusive that the terms of this proposal have

**Quote**

No.: **40204**

Date: 5/9/2024

been met. Claims for shortages or rejections must be made within ten days after receipt of goods. Claims for breakage, damaged, or loss should be presented directly to the transportation company upon receipt of merchandise. It is understood that the performance dates specified on this proposal are based upon conditions prevailing as of the date of this proposal and that Protex shall not be responsible for any delay in said performance dates, or any cancellation of this proposal which may be caused by conditions, either out of their control or by them at the time this proposal is made. Protex shall have the right to furnish substitutes for material which cannot be obtained due to existing shortages.

Protex reserves the right to restrict the terms of payment or to require payment prior to time of performance if in Protex's opinion the customer's financial condition or other circumstances do not warrant shipment or installation on the terms originally specified in this proposal. Interest will be added on overdue accounts at 1 1/2% per month. This proposal supersedes all previous proposals, negotiations, statements, representations and promises. The Parties hereto agree to indemnify each other from any and all liabilities, claims, expenses, losses or damages, including attorney's fees, which may arise in connection with the execution of the work herein specified and which caused, in whole or in part, by the negligent act or omission of the indemnifying party. Purchaser agrees that he will pay and reimburse Protex for any and all reasonable attorney's fees which are incurred by Protex Central in the collection of amounts due and payable hereunder.

Protex shall not be liable for any special, indirect or consequential damages arising in any manner from the equipment or material furnished or the work performed pursuant to this agreement. Protex warrants that the equipment manufactured by it shall be free from defects in material and workmanship arising from normal usage for a period of one (1) year from delivery of said equipment. Work performed by Protex shall warranted for a period of ninety (90) days. Protex warrants that for equipment furnished and/or installed but not manufactured by Protex. Protex will extend the same warranty terms and conditions, which Protex receives, from the manufacturer of said equipment. All transportation charges incurred in connection with the warranty for equipment not installed by Protex shall be borne by Purchaser. These warranties do not extend to any equipment which has been repaired by others, abused, altered or misused, or which has not been properly and reasonably maintained. THESE WARRANTIES ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THOSE OR MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A SPECIFIC PURPOSE.

**BILLINGS, TERMS & DEPOSIT REQUIREMENTS**

CUSTOMER shall pay or cause to be paid to PCI the full price for the Services as specified in this Agreement. PCI shall submit periodic invoices unless otherwise specified to CUSTOMER in advance for Services to be performed during the subsequent billing period, and payment shall be due within thirty (30) days of the Invoice Date. Payments for Services past due more than ten (10) days shall accrue interest from the due date to the date of payment at the rate of one and one-half percent (1.5%) per month, compounded monthly, or the highest legal rate then allowed. CUSTOMER shall pay all attorney and/or collection fees incurred by PCI in collecting any past due amounts.

Credit card payments may be subject to additional fees.

Customer Acknowledgement Initial: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
50% Deposit with order unless otherwise negotiated with Protex Central Inc. Finance Department.

Customer Acknowledgement Initial: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

SPECIAL NOTICE conditions have been reviewed and are understood per "Scope of Work" for this document.

Customer Acknowledgement Initial: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

© COPYRIGHT, PROTEX CENTRAL INC, 2024 ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

**Accepted by:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Date:** \_\_\_\_\_



**Protex Central, Inc.**

Phone: (402) 463-0666  
Fax: (402) 463-6057  
1239 North Minnesota Ave, PO Box 1467  
Hastings, NE 68901

**Quote**

No.: **40203**  
Date: **5/9/2024**

Prepared for:  
Eric Arneson (308) 487-3330  
Hemingford Public Schools  
911 Niobrara Ave  
Hemingford, NE 69348 USA

Prepared by: Ed Jarmer  
Account No.: 14180  
Phone: (308) 487-3328  
Fax: (308) 487-5215

**Your Price:** \$54,434.18

**Total:** \$54,434.18

For technical questions regarding this proposal please call Greg Behrends at 800/274-0888.

Prices are firm until 5/24/2024      Terms: NET30

**Prepared by:** Ed Jarmer, Ed.Jarmer@protexcentral.net

**Date:** 5/9/2024

SCOPE OF WORK:

**\*\*SPECIAL NOTICE\*\***

- 1) PCI cannot be held liable for manufacturing delays for equipment listed on this proposal.
- 2) PCI reserves the right to substitute alternative equipment as needed to meet project and customer deadlines as required.
- 3) Any additional costs associated with manufacturer increases after date of order will be negotiated with end user.

Protex Central, Inc. (PCI) proposes the installation of additions to the existing Brivo access control system at Hemingford Public Schools in Hemingford, NE.

BRIVO ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM:

For the Brivo access control system, PCI provides "Software-as-a-Service (SaaS)" for an annual fee. The web-hosted access control panel(s) are connected to Brivo's Data Center via a secured Internet connection. There is no software to be installed or dedicated PC servers to maintain. Database maintenance tasks, such as backup/restore and panel firmware upgrades, are performed automatically. System management, such as cardholder entry, is performed by the end user via a web browser interface with a valid username and password. PCI recommends Google Chrome for the web browser interface. End user connection to the access control system is available anywhere there is an Internet connection.

A separate quote will be provided for the annual SaaS fees.

INCLUSIONS - MAIN BUILDING:

- 1) PCI will provide and install new access control system equipment at the following locations:

Tech Office:

- (1) Brivo B-ACS6100R-EXP expansion enclosure.
- (3) Brivo B-ACS6100-DB 2-reader expansion boards.
- (1) Altronix AL600ULACM lock power supply.

The new B-ACS6100R-EXP expansion enclosure will require (1) power outlet. This unit will be battery backed with (1) new 12V, 14AH battery included in the enclosure kit.

The new B-ACS6100-DB 2-reader expansion boards will be connected to an existing B-ACS6100-DB 2-reader expansion board in the Tech Office.

The new AL600ULACM lock power supply will require (1) hardwired power connection. This unit will be battery backed with (2) new 12V, 7AH batteries.

Entrance "H":

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

Entrance "I":

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

North Science Room Door:

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

Entrance "A":

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).
- The existing electric strike lock will be reused. This unit will be connected to the new AL600ULACM lock power supply.

Old High School Entrance Doors (right leaf only):

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) Securitron M62GD conduit, magnetic lock, with on-board door position switch.
- (1) Securitron CWB-62CL magnetic lock mounting bracket.
- (1) Securitron EEB2 exit button.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

Entrance "D":

- (1) Farpointe P-620-H mullion mount, keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

New Interior Main Entrance Door:

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.

- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

**Reception Desk:**

- (1) Doormakaba 909S-MO under desk, door release button.

- 2) PCI will provide and install all necessary access control system cabling.
- 3) PCI will provide and install conduit/raceway and back boxes as required.
- 4) PCI will provide programming.

**INCLUSIONS: GYM BUILDING:**

- 1) PCI will provide and install new access control system equipment at the following locations:

**East Gym Fire Escape Door:**

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9500-630 fire-rated, surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) Bosch ISN-CMET-200AR armor cable, surface mount, door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

The door equipment above will be connected to an existing Brivo B-ACS6100-DB 2-reader expansion board and an existing Altronix AL600ULACM lock power supply in the Gym IT Room.

- 2) PCI will provide and install all necessary access control system cabling.
- 3) PCI will provide and install conduit/raceway and back boxes as required.
- 4) PCI will provide programming.

**INCLUSIONS - MODULAR BUILDINGS:**

- 1) PCI will provide and install new access control system equipment at the following locations:

**West Modular:**

- (1) Brivo B-ACS300-E 2-reader/door controller.
- (1) Altronix NETWAY1XP POE/POE+ midspan.
- (1) Altronix AL600ULACM lock power supply.

**East Modular:**

- (1) Brivo B-ACS300-E 2-reader/door controller.
- (1) Altronix NETWAY1XP POE/POE+ midspan.
- (1) Altronix AL600ULACM lock power supply.

Each new B-ACS300-E 2-reader/door controller will require (1) Local Area Network (LAN) connection, with outbound Internet access.

Each new NETWAY1XP POE/POE+ midspan will be installed at their designated B-ACS300-E 2-reader/door controller LAN connection. These units provide data pass-through from the Owner provided network switch and power to the B-ACS300-E devices. Each NETWAY1XP POE/POE+ midspan will require (1) power outlet.

Each new AL600ULACM lock power supply will require (1) hardwired power connection. Each unit will be battery backed with (2) new 12V, 7AH batteries.

**West Modular Entrance Door:**

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.

- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

West Modular, 2nd Door:

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

East Modular Entrance Door:

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

East Modular, 2nd Door:

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

- 2) PCI will provide and install new Category-6 cabling from the access control system head-end equipment to the Owner's LAN connections.
- 3) PCI will provide and install all necessary access control system cabling.
- 4) PCI will provide and install conduit/raceway and back boxes as required.
- 5) PCI will provide programming.

INCLUSIONS - AG SHOP:

- 1) PCI will provide and install new access control system equipment at the following locations:

At the existing access control system head-end equipment location:

- (1) Altronix AL125ULX lock power supply.

The new AL125ULX lock power supply will require (1) hardwired power connection. This unit will be battery backed with (2) new 12V, 7AH batteries.

West Ag Shop Door:

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) HES 9400-630 surface mount, electric strike lock.
- (1) HES 2005M3 lock power conditioner.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

The door equipment above will be connected to an existing Brivo B-ACS300-E 2-reader/door controller and the new AL125ULX lock power supply.

- 2) PCI will provide and install all necessary access control system cabling.
- 3) PCI will provide and install conduit/raceway and back boxes as required.
- 4) PCI will provide programming.

INCLUSIONS - JIM'S SHOP:

**Quote**

No.: **40203**

Date: 5/9/2024

1) PCI will provide and install new access control system equipment at the following locations:

At an Owner designated location:

- (1) Brivo B-ACS300-E 2-reader/door controller.
- (1) Altronix AL400ULX device power supply.
- (1) Altronix AL125ULX lock power supply.

The new B-ACS300-E 2-reader/door controller will require (1) WiFi Local Area Network (LAN) connection, with outbound Internet access.

The new AL400ULX device power supply will provide 12VDC power to the B-ACS300-E 2-reader/door controller. This unit will require (1) hardwired power connection. The new AL400ULX device power supply will be battery backed with (1) 12V, 7AH battery.

The new AL125ULX lock power supply will require (1) hardwired power connection. This unit will be battery backed with (2) new 12V, 7AH batteries.

Jim's Shop Door:

- (1) Farpointe P-640-H keypad/card reader.
- (1) Alarm Controls AES-30024KIT electric strike lock.
- (1) DMP SD-70 recessed door position switch.
- (1) Bosch DS160 exit motion detector (PIR).

- 2) PCI will provide and install all necessary access control system cabling.
- 3) PCI will provide and install conduit/raceway and back boxes as required.
- 4) PCI will provide programming.

**EXCLUSIONS:**

- \* All necessary hardwired power connections and power outlets shall be provided and installed by the Owner.
- \* All necessary network connections, cabling, or Internet access shall be provided and installed by the Owner.
- \* All necessary racking, shelving, and cable management equipment shall be provided and installed by the Owner.
- \* If existing or new doors and door frames do not allow for proper locking hardware installation and functionality – Owner to correct.
- \* Cardholder programming shall be performed by the Owner's System Administrator.
- \* PCI cannot guarantee the condition or functionality of existing equipment or cabling. Items can be replaced at an additional cost.
- \* Patching, painting, or repair/replacement of ceiling tiles are excluded.

**CLARIFICATIONS:**

- \* All work to be performed during normal business hours 8:00AM – 5:00PM, Monday through Friday.
- \* Price does not include freight.
- \* Fifty (50)% deposit with order. Balance due within 30 days upon invoice. See additional information included on "Terms and Conditions" page.
- \* Includes all equipment listed above. Cost for any additional equipment that is used shall be negotiated with the Owner.
- \* All devices will be installed per locations noted on drawings via site survey and as defined in the scope of work.

---

Protex Central Inc. - Agreement Proposal Terms & Conditions

This proposal when accepted, and any subsequent orders placed as a result of this proposal are not subject to cancellation, change, reduction in amount or suspension of performance by the customer except with Protex's written consent and upon terms which indemnify against loss. Any change order such as design, shipping or installation schedule

or other instructions of any kind must be submitted in writing. Protex shall not be bound by any such change unless they first agree in writing, and then only upon such terms, as they shall make, to cover any additional cost caused by such changes.

When materials covered by this proposal are for the replacement of or additions to existing equipment, Protex shall in no way be responsible for the functioning of any part of the existing system on which changes are not made by Protex. The price of this proposal does not include duties, sales, use, excise, or other similar taxes, unless required by federal, state or local law. Purchaser shall pay, in addition to the stated price, all taxes not legally required to be paid by Protex, or alternatively, shall provide Protex with acceptable tax exception certificates. Protex shall provide Purchaser with any tax payment certificate upon request and after completion and acceptance of work. Protex shall not be responsible for any loss or damage occurring by reason of delay, or inability to perform caused by conditions beyond their control including but not limited to acts of God, act of government, fire, flood, war, riot, civil commotion, transportation embargoes or car shortages, malicious injury, inability to secure material or skilled labor, priority, allocations or other materials regulations, or any other cause, similar or dissimilar.

Should this proposal cover an item or items which are made to the customer's specifications, any warranty on the part of Protex shall be limited to cover latent defects in materials only and in no case shall be construed to warrant that said item or items shall provide satisfactory in type of length or service rendered. Acceptance by the customer shall be evidence that the customer's specifications have been compiled with and shall be conclusive that the terms of this proposal have been met. Claims for shortages or rejections must be made within ten days after receipt of goods. Claims for breakage, damaged, or loss should be presented directly to the transportation company upon receipt of merchandise. It is understood that the performance dates specified on this proposal are based upon conditions prevailing as of the date of this proposal and that Protex shall not be responsible for any delay in said performance dates, or any cancellation of this proposal which may be caused by conditions, either out of their control or by them at the time this proposal is made. Protex shall have the right to furnish substitutes for material which cannot be obtained due to existing shortages.

Protex reserves the right to restrict the terms of payment or to require payment prior to time of performance if in Protex's opinion the customer's financial condition or other circumstances do not warrant shipment or installation on the terms originally specified in this proposal. Interest will be added on overdue accounts at 1 1/2% per month. This proposal supersedes all previous proposals, negotiations, statements, representations and promises. The Parties hereto agree to indemnify each other from any and all liabilities, claims, expenses, losses or damages, including attorney's fees, which may arise in connection with the execution of the work herein specified and which caused, in whole or in part, by the negligent act or omission of the indemnifying party. Purchaser agrees that he will pay and reimburse Protex for any and all reasonable attorney's fees which are incurred by Protex Central in the collection of amounts due and payable hereunder.

Protex shall not be liable for any special, indirect or consequential damages arising in any manner from the equipment or material furnished or the work performed pursuant to this agreement. Protex warrants that the equipment manufactured by it shall be free from defects in material and workmanship arising from normal usage for a period of one (1) year from delivery of said equipment. Work performed by Protex shall warranted for a period of ninety (90) days. Protex warrants that for equipment furnished and/or installed but not manufactured by Protex. Protex will extend the same warranty terms and conditions, which Protex receives, from the manufacturer of said equipment. All transportation charges incurred in connection with the warranty for equipment not installed by Protex shall be borne by Purchaser. These warranties do not extend to any equipment which has been repaired by others, abused, altered or misused, or which has not been properly and reasonably maintained. THESE WARRANTIES ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THOSE OR MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A SPECIFIC PURPOSE.

**BILLINGS, TERMS & DEPOSIT REQUIREMENTS**

CUSTOMER shall pay or cause to be paid to PCI the full price for the Services as specified in this Agreement. PCI shall submit periodic invoices unless otherwise specified to CUSTOMER in advance for Services to be performed during the subsequent billing period, and payment shall be due within thirty (30) days of the Invoice Date. Payments for Services past due more than ten (10) days shall accrue interest from the due date to the date of payment at the rate of one and one-half percent (1.5%) per month, compounded monthly, or the highest legal rate then allowed. CUSTOMER shall pay all attorney and/or collection fees incurred by PCI in collecting any past due amounts.

**Quote**

No.: **40203**

Date: 5/9/2024

Credit card payments may be subject to additional fees.

Customer Acknowledgement Initial: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

50% Deposit with order unless otherwise negotiated with Protex Central Inc. Finance Department.

Customer Acknowledgement Initial: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

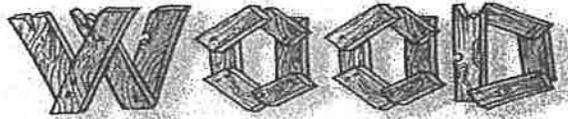
SPECIAL NOTICE conditions have been reviewed and are understood per "Scope of Work" for this document.

Customer Acknowledgement Initial: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

© COPYRIGHT, PROTEX CENTRAL INC, 2024 ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

**Accepted by:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Date:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Thinking of Building? Then you'll need...**



P.O. Box 275 1021 Miles Hemingford, NE 69348  
Randy Wood 308-760-1346 Ron Wood 308-760-7155  
Email: [dalewoodconst@gmail.com](mailto:dalewoodconst@gmail.com)

March 5, 2024

Hemingford Public Schools  
913 Niobrara Ave  
Hemingford, NE 69348

High School Red Zone Security Doors

Estimate to build an interior wall and prep for security doors in the Red Zone entrance, installation of two 36" x 84" doors with side lites and transom glass. Does not include electrical or painting.

Material	\$ 1,593.33
Labor	\$ 3,453.93
Doors, side lites and transoms	<u>\$ 16,330.00</u>
Total	\$ 21,377.86

**Thank You**  
*Dale wood Construction Inc.*

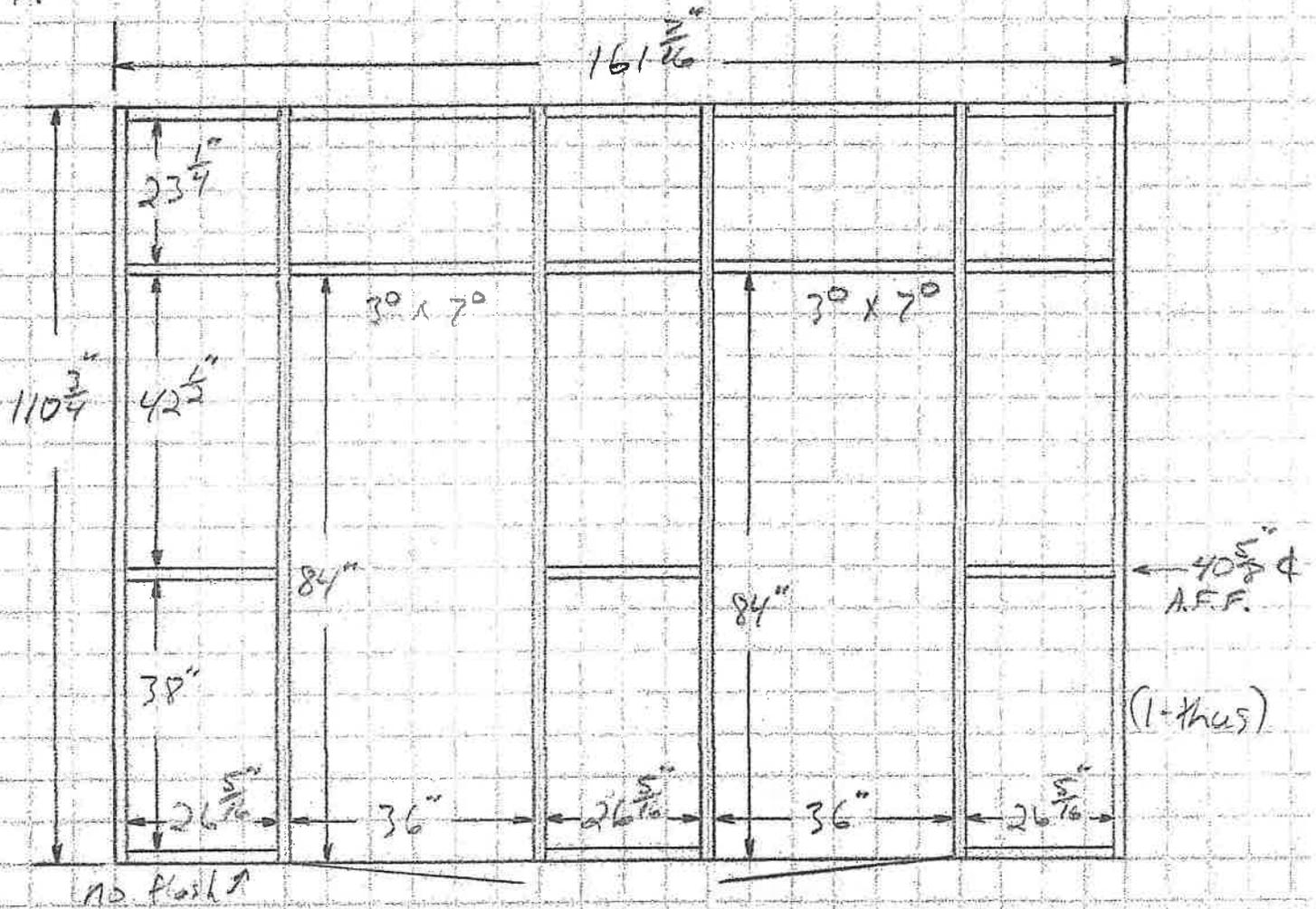
R.O. = 162" x 111"

Hemingford Schools

(Randy W.)

Approx. Size

Interior Part



1. Doors to be Kawneer 350, 1/2 O/P, rimpinels, 10" B.R., 450" O.B. transition frames (clear).

2. Side lites to be Kawneer 450 1 1/4 x 4 1/2 (clear).

3. Glass to be 1/4" (clear) tempered.

4. DC4000 closers with PA plates (clear).

3-5-24

Scale: 1/2" = 1'-0" Greg T.

**SUPERIOR COURT OF THE STATE OF CALIFORNIA  
COUNTY OF LOS ANGELES, CENTRAL DISTRICT**

COORDINATION PROCEEDING SPECIAL  
TITLE [RULE 3.400] SOCIAL MEDIA  
CASES

JUDICIAL COUNCIL COORDINATION  
PROCEEDING NO. 5255

Lead Case No. For Filing Purposes:  
22STCV21355

Judge: Hon. Carolyn B. Kuhl SSC-12

---

This document relates to:

ALL ACTIONS

---

**Plaintiff Fact Sheet – School Districts**

**Instructions**

Use of this fact sheet. Each school-district plaintiff that has filed a complaint in this action must complete this Plaintiff Fact Sheet. If more than one school district is a plaintiff on a single complaint, each individual school district must submit its own individual Plaintiff Fact Sheet. This Plaintiff Fact Sheet constitutes discovery responses subject to the California Code of Civil Procedure. The information provided will only be used for purposes related to this litigation and may be disclosed only as permitted by the Protective Order entered in this litigation.

Terms used. “You,” “your,” “Plaintiff,” and “School District” as used throughout this fact sheet refers to the school district completing this form. “Social media” refers to Defendants’ social media platforms as described in your complaint.

Certification. In completing this Plaintiff Fact Sheet, you are representing that you are an authorized representative of the school district bringing the lawsuit. You must certify under oath that the information is true and correct to the best of your knowledge, information, and belief.

Instructions regarding requests for information. Do not leave any questions unanswered or blank; if you cannot recall all of the information requested, provide as much information as you can. You should insert additional space where necessary to answer the questions completely. You should consult with your attorney about completing this form. None of the requests are designed to require an expert evaluation or limit expert testimony. None of the requests are designed to require review of individual student records.

Instructions regarding document requests. For each question calling for the production of documents, indicate whether you possess any existing documents responsive to the request. A request will indicate where it only requires that you produce information that has already been compiled and/or exists in report, survey, analysis, study, or other document that provides an overview of or describes the indicated topic. If information has not been compiled or summarized on these topics, it does not need to be located, described, or produced for the purposes of this Plaintiff Fact Sheet. For example, you are not required to locate, compile, sort, describe or produce underlying records that might show, for example, the prevalence of student use of social media or expenses incurred to address problems arising from student use of social media; however, you are required to produce existing reports, surveys, analyses, studies, or other overviews on that topic.

To determine whether you have any responsive documents, you are required to investigate whether you have the information sought. This investigation might involve a district employee asking the appropriate person at each school to provide the district with documents or reports responsive to the requests. You do not need to create any new documents.

If you do possess any such documents, reports, surveys, analyses, studies, or other overview documents, then provide copies as they are kept in the ordinary course of business, without identifying any student-specific data.

**I. CASE INFORMATION**

1. Plaintiff: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Name of the court in which the complaint was initially filed:  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Case number in court in which complaint was originally filed:  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Filing date of the complaint: \_\_\_\_\_

5. Named defendants in the complaint: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Name, firm, and e-mail address of the principal attorney(s) representing Plaintiff:  
\_\_\_\_\_

**II. REPRESENTATIVE CAPACITY**

*For purposes of Section II (Representative Capacity) “you” refers to the person filling out this form. When you complete the rest of this form “you,” “your,” “Plaintiff,” and “School District”*

refers to the School District Plaintiff named in this action, including any departments, divisions, agents, and/or employees.

7. Name of individual(s) completing this Fact Sheet: \_\_\_\_\_

8. Role within Plaintiff's organization: \_\_\_\_\_

**III. SCHOOL DISTRICT DATA**

9. Provide the total number of schools in your district at each level (i.e. elementary school, middle school, high school, and other) from the 2017-2018 school year to present or the year for which data is most currently available:

Year	Level	Number of Schools
2023-2024	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2022-2023	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2021-2022	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2020-2021	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2019-2020	Elementary School	

	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2018-2019	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2017-2018	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	

10. Provide the total number of students enrolled in your district, and the student population at each level (i.e., elementary, middle, high school, or other) from 2017-2018 to present or to the year for which data is most currently available:

Year	Level	Number of Schools
2023-2024	District-Wide	
	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2022-2023	District-Wide	
	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	

2021-2022	District-Wide	
	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2020-2021	District-Wide	
	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2019-2020	District-Wide	
	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2018-2019	District-Wide	
	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	
	Other	
2017-2018	District-Wide	
	Elementary School	
	Middle School	
	High School	

	Other	
--	-------	--

11. Provide the total number of district employees from 2017-2018 to present or to the year for which data is most currently available (specified as Full Time Equivalent (“FTE”) if available):

Year	Number of Employees
2023-2024	
2022-2023	
2021-2022	
2020-2021	
2019-2020	
2018-2019	
2017-2018	

12. Provide the total number of teachers employed by your district from 2017-2018 to present or to the year for which data is most currently available (specified as FTE if available):

Year	Number of Teachers
2023-2024	
2022-2023	
2021-2022	
2020-2021	
2019-2020	
2018-2019	
2017-2018	

13. Provide the total number of on-campus health care workers (e.g., social workers, nurses, psychologists, psychiatrists, counselors, etc.) employed by the district from 2017-2018 to present or to the year for which data is most currently available (specified as FTE if available):

Year	Number of On-Campus Health Care Workers
2023-2024	
2022-2023	
2021-2022	
2020-2021	
2019-2020	
2018-2019	
2017-2018	

14. Provide the total number of off-campus health care workers (e.g., social workers, nurses, psychologists, psychiatrists, counselors, etc.) employed by the district from 2017-2018 to present or to the year for which data is most currently available (specified as FTE if available):

Year	Number of Off-Campus Health Care Workers
2023-2024	
2022-2023	
2021-2022	
2020-2021	
2019-2020	
2018-2019	
2017-2018	

15. Other than health care workers identified above, does the district have other employees who provide mental health services? **If yes**, provide the total number of such employees from 2017-2018 to present or to the year for which data is most currently available and their positions (specified as FTE if available):

Year	Number of Employees	Positions

2023-2024		
2022-2023		
2021-2022		
2020-2021		
2019-2020		
2018-2019		
2017-2018		

16. Provide the total number of health care workers (e.g., social workers, nurses, psychologists, psychiatrists, counselors) employed by the district whose primary responsibilities include addressing student mental health issues from 2017-2018 to present or to the year for which data is most currently available and their positions (specified as FTE if available):

Year	Number of Employees	Positions
2023-2024		
2022-2023		
2021-2022		
2020-2021		
2019-2020		
2018-2019		
2017-2018		

17. Does your district maintain organizational charts depicting the district’s general organizational structure?

\_\_\_ Yes \_\_\_ No

**If yes,** please provide a copy of the organizational chart(s) for the most recent year it is available.

**IV. PEOPLE WITH KNOWLEDGE**

18. Identify the superintendent(s), vice/assistant superintendent(s), director of student and family services, director of school health and/or safety, director of technology, and chief financial officer/head of finance, or the individuals in equivalent positions, in your district from 2017-2018 school year to the present:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

19. To the extent not listed above, identify the person(s), including their title/position, at the district level whose primary responsibility was the district's budget, funding, or grant procurement efforts from the 2017-2018 school year to the present:

---

---

---

20. Identify the person(s), including their title/position, in your district most knowledgeable about student use of social media on school property and the impact of such use on your district from the 2017-2018 school year to the present:

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

24. Are you seeking injunctive relief other than abatement?

Yes  No

**If yes, provide a general description of the injunctive relief sought.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

25. Are you seeking abatement (e.g. forward looking relief to address the problem, including continuation of existing programs, expansion of some or all of those programs, and/or creation of new programs)?

Yes  No

**If yes, provide a general description of the abatement sought.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

- 
- 
26. Identify, if separately itemized/tracked, and describe known expenditures and anticipated future expenditures made by your district, related to mental health and indicate whether you are seeking to recover the expense. Note: This question is not designed to require an expert evaluation or limit expert testimony. **NOTE: MDL Plaintiffs do not need to answer this request by 4/1.**

- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
27. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes known expenditures and anticipated future expenditures made by your District, related to youth mental health?

Yes  No

If yes, provide a copy and identify the documents(s) responsive to this question.

28. Identify, if separately itemized/tracked, and describe known costs incurred or damages sought as a result of any harms to your district which you attribute to social media. Note: This question is not designed to require an expert evaluation or limit expert testimony. **NOTE: MDL Plaintiffs do not need to answer this request by 4/1.**
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
-

29. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes known costs incurred or damages sought as a result of any harms to your district which you attribute to social media?

Yes  No

**If yes, provide a copy and identify document(s) responsive to this question.**

**VI. INTERACTIONS WITH DEFENDANTS**

30. Have you, any schools in your district, or any affiliated organization (i.e., a parent-teacher association) communicated with any of the Defendants regarding students' use of social media? Note: This question is limited to individuals authorized to speak on behalf of the district or school and is not meant to include marketing or routine customer service correspondence, e.g., account registration, password resets, help desk questions, or the district's use of Defendants' platforms for communicating with third parties.

Yes  No

**If yes, please describe the timeframe and general nature of the communications.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

31. Have you been involved in any other litigation against any social media company? For purposes of this question, "social media company" refers to any Defendant in this litigation and/or any other social media company not named in the Complaint.

Yes  No

**If yes, for each lawsuit, state (1) the court in which the lawsuit was filed; (2) the case name; (3) the civil action or docket number assigned to the lawsuit; and (4) your involvement or claims in the lawsuit.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

32. Has your district incorporated the use of any of Defendants' platforms in its curriculum since the 2017-2018 school year?

Yes  No

**If yes, please generally describe and identify which platform(s).**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

33. Have you received any grant, donation, or other funding from any of the Defendants?

Yes  No

**If yes, describe generally the grant/donation/funding, state the approximate date of receipt, and identify which Defendant it came from.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**VII. SCHOOL POLICIES FOR ELECTRONIC DEVICES, INTERNET, AND SOCIAL MEDIA USE**

34. Has the district drafted or implemented any disciplinary codes, policies, or codes of conduct that address students' use of the internet or social media on school property from the 2017-2018 school year to present?

Yes  No

**If yes,** attach copies of the relevant codes or policies.

35. Has the district drafted or implemented any disciplinary codes, policies, or codes of conduct that address students' use of the internet or social media off school property from the 2017-2018 school year to present?

Yes  No

**If yes,** attach copies of the relevant codes or policies.

36. Has the district drafted or implemented any disciplinary codes, policies, or codes of conduct that address teachers' use of the internet or social media on school property from the 2017-2018 school year to present?

Yes  No

**If yes,** attach copies of the relevant codes or policies.

37. Has the district drafted or implemented any disciplinary codes, policies, or codes of conduct that address teachers' use of the internet or social media off school property from the 2017-2018 school year to present?

Yes  No

**If yes,** attach copies of the relevant codes or policies.

38. Has the district drafted or implemented any disciplinary codes, policies, or codes of conduct that address students' use of electronic devices, e.g., cell phones, on school property from the 2017-2018 school year to present?

Yes  No

**If yes,** attach copies of the relevant codes or policies.

39. Has your district ever had a policy and/or program whereby students are issued tablets, laptops, or similar devices for students' use in the course of the school year for educational purposes?

\_\_\_ Yes \_\_\_ No

If yes, please provide the policy since the 2017-2018 school year or generally describe the policy and/or program, including material changes since the 2017-2018 school year.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**VIII. SOCIAL-MEDIA AND MENTAL HEALTH SERVICES AND PROGRAMS**

40. Describe the portion of your student body receiving mental health services in your district and how it has changed over time since the 2017-2018 school year, including approximate numbers and percentages if available in any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes student mental health services. Note: This question is not designed to require review of underlying individual student records.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

41. Provide the number of students in your district referred for mental health services, if such referrals are tracked. Note: This question is not designed to require review of underlying individual student records. **NOTE: MDL Plaintiffs do not need to answer this request by 4/1.**

Year	Number of Students
2023-2024	

2022-2023	
2021-2022	
2020-2021	
2019-2020	
2018-2019	
2017-2018	

42. Have you formally proposed, formed, or participated in any district-wide task force, other program, or group to address issues related to social media use or youth mental health among students?

Yes  No

**If yes,** identify the name of any such program(s), what aspects of student social media use and/or mental health were addressed, and the approximate dates of the district’s participation in the task force, group, or program.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---

43. Have you formally proposed, formed, or participated in any district-wide task force, other program, or group to address behavioral issues, bullying, absences, substance abuse, mobile device use, addiction, and/or vaping?

Yes  No

**If yes,** identify the name of any such program(s), what student issues were addressed, and the approximate dates of the district’s participation in the task force, group, or program.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

44. Has your district provided trainings for employees on how to address student mental health issues relating to social media?

Yes  No

**If yes,** please generally describe what types of trainings were offered by your district, when they were offered, whether attendance at the trainings was mandatory or optional, and the categories of employees at the district that were required to attend.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

45. Does your district use or provide any materials to students, parents, teachers, or staff regarding the potential risks or adverse effects of using electronic devices, the internet and/or social media?

Yes  No

If yes, provide a copy and identify the document(s) responsive to this question.

**IX. INCIDENCE OF OTHER TRAUMATIC EVENTS**

46. Was your district ever closed to in-person learning during the COVID-19 pandemic?

\_\_\_ Yes \_\_\_ No

**If yes**, please generally describe when schools were closed, when remote learning was offered, and when students came back to in-person learning.

Please also provide any written district-wide policies implementing remote learning.

47.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

Identify the number of and location of any school shooting, whether you attribute any such incident to social media use, and if so, which social media platform(s). **NOTE: MDL Plaintiffs do not need to answer this request by 4/1.**

---

---

---

---

---

48. Identify the number of and location of any other violence perpetrated by an outsider (i.e. non-student and non-staff member) which required a cessation of school activities for the entire district or an entire school campus, whether you attribute any such incident to social media use, and if so, which social media platform(s). **NOTE: MDL Plaintiffs do not need to answer this request by 4/1.**

---

---

---

---

---

49. Describe the frequency of threats of violence to any of your schools (e.g. threat of school shooting or bomb scare) which required a cessation of school activities for the entire district or an entire school campus and were known to students, whether you attribute any such incident to social media use, and if so, which social media platform(s). **NOTE: MDL Plaintiffs do not need to answer this request by 4/1.**

---

---

---

---

50. Identify the number of staff or student suicides which your district reported to an outside entity and which were known to the student body, whether you attribute any such incident to social media use, and if so, which social media platform(s). **NOTE: MDL Plaintiffs do not need to answer this request by 4/1.**

---

---

---

---

51. Identify the number of staff or student attempted suicides which your district reported to an outside entity and which were known to the student body, whether you attribute any such incident to social media use, and if so, which social media platform. **NOTE: MDL Plaintiffs do not need to answer this request by 4/1.**

---

---

---

---

**X. FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

52. Provide the district's overall budget for each year from the 2017-2018 school year to the present.

<b>Year</b>	<b>Overall Budget</b>
2023-2024	
2022-2023	

2021-2022	
2020-2021	
2019-2020	
2018-2019	
2017-2018	

53. What is the approximate annual amount budgeted for health services in the district, if separately budgeted/itemized? Has that amount increased or decreased by more than 20% since the 2017-2018 school year?

Yes  No

**If yes, please describe.**

---



---



---



---



---



---

54. What is the approximate annual amount budgeted for mental health services in the district, if separately budgeted/itemized? Has that amount increased or decreased by more than 20% since the 2017-2018 school year?

Yes  No

**If yes, please describe.**

---



---



---



---

---

---

**XI. DOCUMENTS RELATING TO MENTAL HEALTH, SOCIAL MEDIA USE, OTHER EVENTS, AND EXPENDITURES**

**A. Prevalence**

55. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes the prevalence of or number of students with reported mental health issues in your district and the possible causes of those issue?

Yes  No

**If yes, provide a copy and identify the document(s) responsive to this question.**

56. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes the prevalence of the harms associated with student social media use in your district, including associated mental health issues and classroom disruption?

Yes  No

**If yes, provide a copy and identify the document(s) responsive to this question.**

57. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes the prevalence of students in the district receiving mental health services through the district?

Yes  No

**If yes, provide a copy (should include students at each level if part of the document(s)) and identify the document(s) responsive to this question.**

58. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes the prevalence of social media use in your district and/or the impact of social media use in your district?

Yes  No

**If yes, provide a copy and identify the document(s) responsive to this question.**

59. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes traumatic events, i.e. school shooting, violence at school by a non-student or non-staff members, or threats of violence?

Yes  No

**If yes,** provide a copy and identify the document(s) responsive to this question.

60. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes attempted or completed suicides among staff or students?

Yes  No

**If yes,** provide a copy and identify the document(s) responsive to this question

### **B. Discipline measures**

61. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes interventions, discipline, or other consequences imposed on students for using social media on school premises?

Yes  No

**If yes,** provide a copy and identify the document(s) responsive to this question.

62. Do you possess any existing report, survey, analysis, study or other document that provides an overview of or describes disciplinary issues among students in your district, possible causes of those issues, and any interventions and/or consequences imposed?

Yes  No

**If yes,** provide a copy and identify the document(s) responsive to this question.

**Certification**

I have made reasonable inquiries to answer the foregoing questions. Based on my personal knowledge and the information provided by other district employees, I declare under penalty of perjury that the information provided in this Plaintiff Fact Sheet is complete, true, and correct to the best of my knowledge and information, and that I have provided all of the requested documents that are reasonably accessible to me and/or my attorneys, to the best of my knowledge.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name (Printed)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title



**Frantz Law Group**  
A Professional Law Corporation

## Social Media Litigation

### *Client Contact Information*

**Public Entity Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Public Entity Address:** \_\_\_\_\_

#### **Preferred Contact Information:**

Primary Contact Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Role: \_\_\_\_\_

Preferred email address: \_\_\_\_\_

Preferred phone number: \_\_\_\_\_

Secondary Contact Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Role: \_\_\_\_\_

Preferred email address: \_\_\_\_\_

Preferred phone number: \_\_\_\_\_

**ATTORNEY-CLIENT CONTINGENCY FEE CONTRACT**

Social Media Litigation

This ATTORNEY-CLIENT CONTINGENCY FEE CONTRACT (“Agreement”) is entered into by and between \_\_\_\_\_ (“Client” or “District”) and Frantz Law Group, APLC (“Attorneys” or “We”) and encompasses the following provisions:

1. **CONDITIONS.** This Agreement will not take effect, and Attorneys will have no obligation to provide legal services, until Client returns a signed copy of this Agreement.
  
2. **AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVES**
  - A. **CLIENT REPRESENTATIVES.** Client designates \_\_\_\_\_, or his/her designee, as the authorized representatives to direct Attorneys and to be the primary individuals to communicate with Attorneys regarding the subject matter of Attorneys’ representation of Client under this Agreement. The designation is intended to establish a clear line of authority and to minimize potential uncertainty but not to preclude communication between Attorneys and other representatives of Client.
  
  - B. **ATTORNEY REPRESENTATIVES.** James Frantz, William Shinoff, Jade Koller and Regina Bagdasarian of Frantz Law Group, APLC will be primarily responsible for the work, either performing it himself/herself or delegating it to others as may be appropriate. This is not intended to limit Attorneys’ option of delegating work to others as Attorneys deem appropriate.
  
3. **SCOPE AND DUTIES.** Client hires Attorneys to provide legal services in connection with pursuing claims for damages arising from District’s students’ use of social media. The litigation will involve, among other steps, the preparation and filing of the District’s action, i.e., the lawsuit ("Action"). Attorneys shall provide those legal services reasonably required to represent Client and shall take reasonable steps to keep Client informed of progress and to respond to Client’s inquiries. Client shall be truthful with Attorneys, cooperate with Attorneys, and keep Attorneys informed of developments.
  
4. **LEGAL SERVICES SPECIFICALLY EXCLUDED.** Unless otherwise agreed in writing by Client and Attorneys, Attorneys will not provide legal services with respect to (a) defending any legal proceeding or claim against the Client commenced by any person unless such proceeding or claim is filed against the Client in the Action, (b) proceedings before any federal or state administrative or governmental agency, department, or board, or (c) any other matter not expressly covered by this Agreement. With Client’s permission, however, Attorneys may elect to appear at administrative proceedings to protect Client’s rights. If Client wishes to retain Attorneys to provide any legal services not provided under this Agreement for additional compensation, a separate written agreement between Attorneys and Client will be required.

5. FEES. Client will pay attorneys' fees of:

Twenty five percent (25%) of any monetary settlement or recovery that Attorneys obtain for Client. Client is not responsible for paying Attorneys any money other than what has been recovered from Defendants.

Fees shall be calculated on the basis of any settlement or recovery prior to the deduction of any expense or cost, that is, the "Gross Recovery." Contingency fee rates are not set by law but have been negotiated. If no recovery is made, no fees will be charged.

The term "Gross Recovery" shall include, without limitation, the then present value of any monetary payments agreed or ordered to be made by the adverse parties or their insurance carriers, whether by settlement, arbitration award, court judgment (after all appeals exhausted), or otherwise. Any statutory Attorneys' fee paid by Defendants shall be included in calculating the Gross Recovery.

- A. "Gross Recovery," if by settlement, also includes (1) the then-present value of any monetary payments to be made to the District; and (2) any Attorneys' fees and costs recovered by the District as part of any cause of action that provides a basis for such an award. "Recovery" may come from any source, including, but not limited to, the parties adverse to the District and/or their insurance carriers and/or any third party, whether or not a party to formal litigation. The contingent fee is calculated by multiplying the recovery by the fee percentage. This calculation is performed on the gross recovery amount before the deduction of expenses as discussed above.

Gross Recovery, except in the case of a settlement, does not contemplate nor include any amount or value for injunctive relief or for the value of an abatement remedy which may be obtained in a final arbitration award or court judgment. It is possible that payment to the Client by the adverse parties or their insurance carrier(s) or any third-party may be deferred, as in the case of an annuity, a structured settlement, or periodic payments. The contingent fee is calculated, as described above, by multiplying the Gross Recovery by the fee percentage. The reimbursement of costs will be paid out of the initial payments, and the Attorneys' fees will be paid on a pro-rata basis as settlements are paid.

- B. Reasonable Fee if Contingent Fee is Unenforceable or if Attorney is Discharged Before Any Recovery. In the event that the contingent fee portion of this Agreement is determined to be unenforceable for any reason, Attorneys are prevented from representing Client on a contingent fee basis, or Client discharges Attorneys before a recovery is obtained, Client agrees to pay the reasonable value of the services rendered. If the parties are unable to agree on the reasonable value of services rendered, Attorneys and Client agree that the fee will be determined via the procedures set forth in paragraph 9 below. In any event, the fee determined by arbitration shall not exceed twenty five percent (25%) of the Gross Recovery as defined in paragraph 5.

C. No General Fund Payments. Notwithstanding any other provision in this Agreement, in no event will the Client be required to pay legal fees out of any fund other than the monies recovered from defendants in this litigation. Under no circumstances shall District general funds be obligated to satisfy the contingent Attorneys' fees.

6. COSTS AND EXPENSES. In addition to paying legal fees, Client shall reimburse Attorneys for all "costs/expenses", which includes but is not limited to the following: process servers' fee, common benefit fees, fees fixed by law or assessed by courts or other agencies, court reporters' fees, long distance telephone calls, messenger and other delivery fees, parking, investigation expenses, consultants' fees, expert witness fees, and other similar items, incurred by Attorneys. Other costs and expenses include case management computer services, document management services, case administration/accounting fees and costs, and other similar items. ATTORNEYS may find it necessary to obtain the services of legal, clerical, and/or other personnel who are not ATTORNEYS regular employees but outside independent contractors (e.g. JND, Archer, KCC). The costs/expenses incurred that Attorneys advance will be owed in addition to Attorneys' fees, and Client will reimburse those costs/expenses after Attorneys' fees have been deducted from any award/recovery. **If there is no award/recovery, Client will not be required to reimburse Attorneys for costs and fees. In the event a recovery is insufficient to reimburse Attorneys for all costs/expenses after the Attorney's fee has been deducted, Client will not be required to reimburse Attorneys for the shortfall.**

SHARED EXPENSES: Client understands that Attorneys may incur certain costs/expenses that jointly benefit multiple clients, including, for example, expenses for travel, experts, and copying. Client agrees that Attorneys shall divide such expenses equally, or pro rata, among such clients, and deduct Client's portion of those expenses from Client's share of any recovery. The division of expenses shall apply regardless of when Client retained Attorney such that costs/expenses incurred prior to Client joining the lawsuit will still be divided and a portion allocated to Client.

FEDERAL MDL AND STATE COORDINATION COMMON BENEFIT FEES AND COMMON BENEFIT COSTS:

Various Attorneys, including Frantz Law Group, frequently serve on plaintiffs' steering or executive committees in Multi-District Litigations (MDLs) and/or in California state court coordinated proceedings (JCCP's) or other state court proceedings, and perform work which benefits the various law firms as well as clients of other law firms involved in the same or related litigation. As a result, the court(s) where the cases are pending may order that Attorneys are to receive compensation for Attorneys' time and effort which has benefitted all claimants. This compensation is known as "Common Benefit Fees," and they are paid by the law firms directly and not from the clients' recovery. If Attorneys are awarded such fees, they will be credited against the contingency fee to be

paid by each Client on an equal basis.

In contrast to Common Benefit Fees, “Common Benefit Costs” are litigation costs to which all Clients contribute a limited portion of their recovery to reimburse expenses incurred to prosecute the lawsuits collectively.

7. LIEN. In the event any third-party attempts to lien any anticipated award/recovery or proceeds already recovered, Client hereby grants, and agrees, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, that Attorneys hold, a first priority and superior lien in the amount of the Attorneys’ fees (or reasonable value of services) and costs that Attorneys are entitled to, and that such lien applies to any and all proceeds recovered or to be recovered. More generally, Attorneys shall have a lien against any anticipated recovery and/or actual recovery for Attorneys’ fees (or reasonable value of services) and costs

8. DISCHARGE AND WITHDRAWAL.

A. Client may discharge Attorneys at any time. After receiving notice of discharge, Attorneys shall stop services on the date and to the extent specified by the notice of discharge, and deliver to Client or Client’s designee all evidence, files, and attorney work product for the Action. This includes any computerized indices, programs and document retrieval systems created or used for the Action.

B. Attorneys may withdraw with Client’s consent or for good cause. Good cause includes Client’s breach of this Agreement, Client’s refusal to cooperate with Attorneys, or any other fact or circumstance that would render Attorneys continuing representation unlawful or unethical. Attorneys may also discharge Client if Client at any time is dishonest with Attorneys or fails to provide relevant information to Attorneys.

9. ARBITRATION OF DISPUTES: ATTORNEY and CLIENT agree that should any dispute arise between them, it must be mediated first, before any claims are filed. Specifically, any and all disputes, controversies or claims arising out of, or related to this Agreement and/or Attorneys’ representation of Client, including, but not limited to, claims of malpractice (collectively referred to herein as “Dispute” or “Disputes”), shall be submitted to mediation at the offices of Judicate West, San Diego, or Signature Resolution, in Los Angeles, California before a retired judge or other mediator affiliated with the selected organization, agreed to between the parties, and, if the parties cannot agree, before a retired judge selected by the organization who is hosting the mediation. No petition for arbitration can be filed until after this agreed-upon mediation has occurred, and any petition for arbitration (or litigation) filed prior to conclusion of this mediation shall be subject to dismissal, pursuant to this Agreement. Client and Attorneys will each pay one-half of the actual cost of the mediation, but each party will be

responsible for his or her own attorneys' fees and preparation costs. The parties agree that any Dispute, whether submitted to mediation or not, will not be litigated in court. Rather, any Dispute, which is specifically defined above to include claims of malpractice, fee disputes, among others, will be submitted to mandatory binding arbitration before Judicate West or Signature Resolution. By signing this Agreement, Client and Attorneys agree to arbitration and waive the right to a court or jury trial and the right to appeal. Any Disputes shall be heard in San Diego or Los Angeles, applying California law. Client is not waiving rights to arbitration for fee disputes before the San Diego County Bar Association.

10. **AUTHORITY OF ATTORNEY.** Attorneys may, with prior Client approval, associate co-counsel if the Attorneys believe it advisable for the proper handling of Client's claim, and Client expressly authorizes Attorneys to divide any Attorneys' fees that may eventually be earned with associated co-counsel.
  
11. **DISCLAIMER OF GUARANTEE.** Nothing in this Contract and nothing in Attorneys' statements to Client will be construed as a promise or guarantee about the outcome of Client's matter. Attorneys make no such promises or guarantees. Attorneys' comments about the outcome of Client's matter are expressions of Attorneys' professional opinion.

**MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS:** Client understands that Attorneys do or will likely represent many other individuals/entities/school districts with claims that are similar or the same as Client's. Attorneys' representation of multiple Clients at the same time may create certain actual or potential conflicts of interest in that the interests and objectives of one or more Clients may become inconsistent with the interests and objectives of other Clients. Attorneys are governed by specific rules of legal ethics regarding conflicts of interest that might arise from Attorneys simultaneous representation of multiple clients against the same or similar Defendants. Attorneys are required to advise Clients of any actual or potential conflicts of interest and obtain their informed written consent to Attorneys' representation of multiple Clients at the same time. It is difficult to foresee all possible circumstances in which Clients' interests might conflict. Nonetheless, by way of example only, one or more Clients might wish to settle the case under certain terms while others disagree, and such disagreement makes it difficult or impossible to settle the case. By signing this Agreement, Client acknowledges that it has been advised of the potential conflicts of interest which may be or are associated with Attorneys' representation of Client and other and that The District Clients, and that, nevertheless Client consents to such simultaneous representation. Attorneys strongly advise Client to seek independent legal advice before signing this Agreement.

**WAIVER OF DISQUALIFICATION:** Under certain circumstances, including among others, when there is an irreconcilable conflict of interest among various Clients, Attorneys must, or it is prudent to, terminate the representation of one or more Clients. Should this occur for any reason, Client agrees that it will not seek to disqualify Attorneys from continuing to represent other Clients and/or from seeking new Clients about the same subject matter of the Action. Attorneys strongly advise Client to seek independent legal advice before signing this Agreement.

12. AGGREGATE SETTLEMENTS: Often times in cases where Attorneys represent multiple clients in similar litigation, the opposing parties or Defendants attempt to settle or otherwise resolve the cases in a group or groups, by making a single settlement offer to settle a number of cases or all cases simultaneously. There exists a potential conflict of interest whenever a lawyer represents multiple clients in a settlement of this type because it necessitates choices concerning the allocation of limited settlement amounts among the multiple clients. However, if all clients consent, a group settlement can be accomplished and a single offer can be fairly distributed among the clients by assigning settlement amounts based upon the relative strengths and weaknesses of each case, the severity and extent of injuries/losses, and individual case evaluations. In the event of a group or aggregate settlement proposal, Attorneys may implement a settlement program, overseen by a referee or special master, who may be appointed by a court, designed to ensure consistency and fairness for all claimants, and which will assign various settlement values and amounts to each client's case depending upon the facts and circumstances of each individual case. Client authorizes Attorneys to enter into and engage in group settlement discussions which may include Client's individual claim. Nonetheless, Client retains the right to approve, and Attorneys are required to obtain Client's approval of, any settlement of Client's case.

13. EFFECTIVE DATE AND TERM. This Agreement will take effect upon execution by Client and Attorneys.

14. COUNTERPARTS. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, and all of which, taken together, shall constitute one and the same instrument. Facsimile or pdf versions of this Agreement shall have the same force and effect as signature of the original.

The above is approved and agreed upon by all parties.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Frantz Law Group, APLC

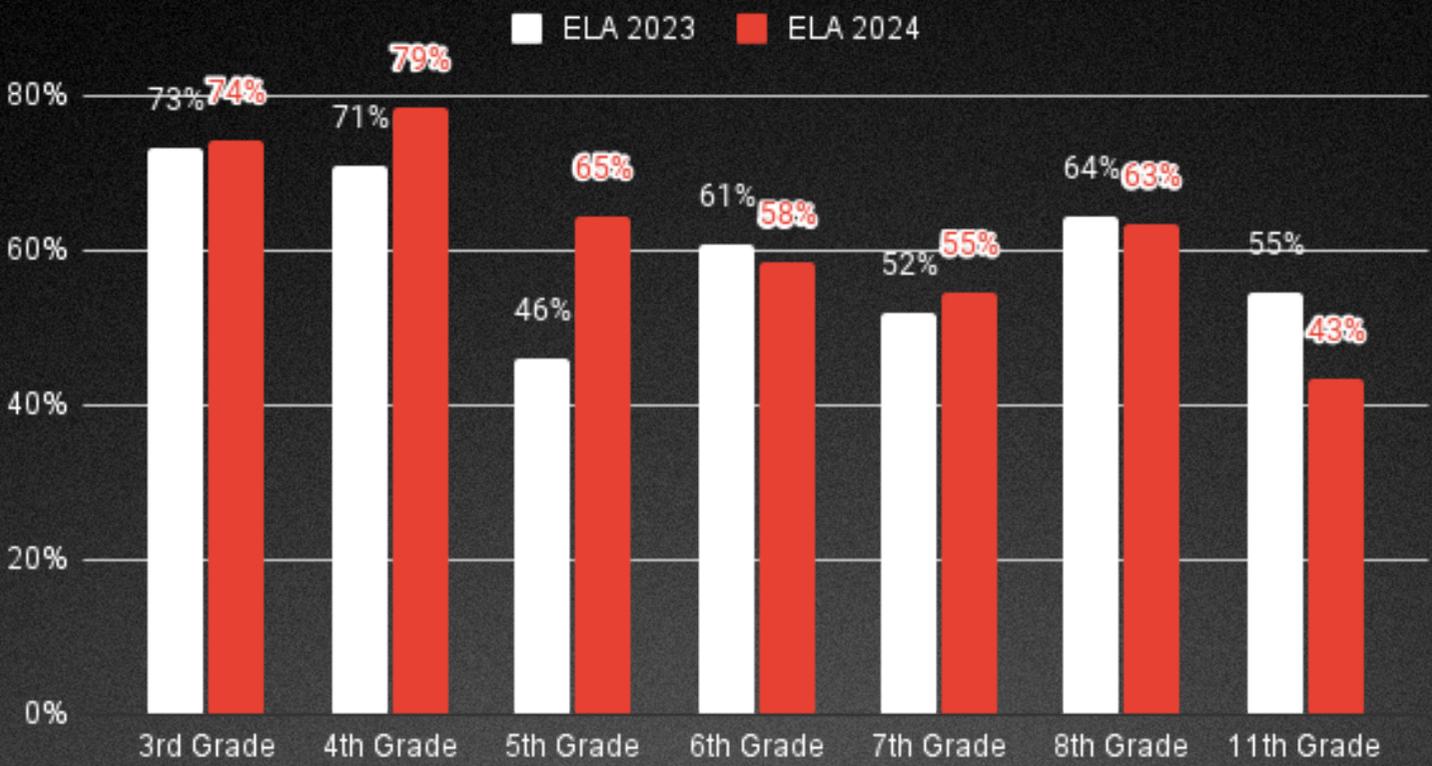
Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
District Representative

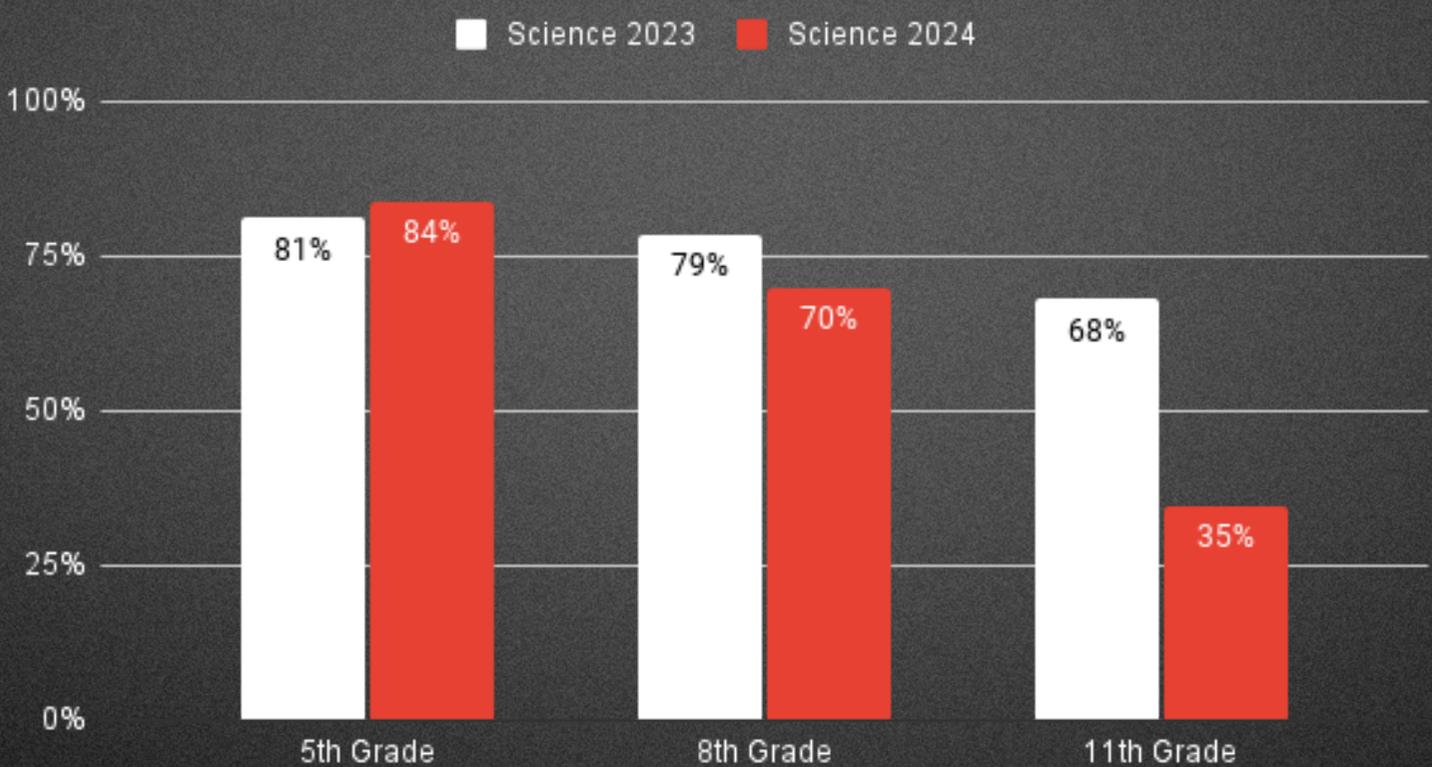
# NSCAS GROWTH

## Percent of Students Proficient

### ELA 2023 and ELA 2024



### Science 2023 and Science 2024



MATH SCORES FOR 3RD THROUGH 8TH GRADE  
WILL BE AVAILABLE THIS SUMMER

## AVERAGE ACT SCALE SCORES

	COMPOSITE	MATH	SCIENCE	STEM	ENGLISH	READING
2024 JUNIOR CLASS AVERAGE	17	17	16	17	17	16
2023 JUNIOR CLASS AVERAGE	21	20	21	21	20	22

# Hemingford Public Schools

## Administrative Reports to Board of Education

May 13, 2024

**Mr. Arneson**  
**HES Enrollment**

Preschool	Kindergarten	1st Grade	2nd Grade	3rd Grade	4th Grade	5th Grade	6th Grade	Total
25	24	22	24	39	28	31	36	229

**Strategic Plan:**

- Working on end of the year wrap up
- I was accepted into the NAESP PK-3 Leadership Academy. The kick-off for that will be May 30th in Grand Island. There are other dates throughout the first semester of next school year.
- I attended the NAESP board meeting on May 1st.
- Kindergarten round-up was a success. We talked about the new law that allows students to attend a second year of preschool. This does impact a few students, and we've talked to those parents.
- 

**Assessment:**

- See attached infographic

**Personnel:**

- I want to wish Deb a wonderful retirement. Molly will be starting with us tomorrow.

**Upcoming Events:**

- Wednesday is 3rd through 6th Grade track and field day.
- Friday is the elementary talent show
- May 21st is elementary field day.

**Mrs. Curtis****HHS Enrollment**

7th Grade	8th Grade	9th Grade	10th Grade	11th Grade	12th Grade	Total
22	30	29	33	23	24	161

**Strategic Plan Update**

- The MTSS Admin team was accepted to be a part of the initial MTSS - Foundational Restorative Practices Cohort Training Series. We will go to Kearney in June for our first training and then have a couple of training throughout next year.
- The students and staff gave great insight during the meetings with the architects.

**Policy/Procedures**

- Mrs. Gilkerson and I are working on finalizing the student schedules.
- Mrs. Davies will teach 6th grade math next year. I have them scheduled to come over to the HS building following the 4th period bell with a 60 minute class period. They will switch classes during the middle of the 7-12 Bobcat Time in order to get them a longer class period and to avoid passing through the halls during HS passing time. Per Dr. Miller's request, we are looking at moving classrooms to get Mrs. Talkington a sink in her Science classroom and get Mrs. Davies into the main hallway to create less travel time for our 6th graders.
- We are also moving Mr. McClintock to Mr. Redden's room to have access to the eSports equipment and Mrs. Raben is moving back to her original classroom.
- NSCAS and ACT testing is complete.
  - The Math data is embargoed as they are reevaluating the cut scores this summer.
  - Our 7th and 8th graders' median score in ELA was above both the state and regional scores along with our 8th grade science median score.

**Culture/Community**

- Our first Annual Senior Signing Day was a success.
- Thank you for your attendance at Graduation.
- I will not be at the June board meeting as I am taking my kids to Charleston, SC for a week. This will be Rylan's first airplane ride!
- HS Summer School will run from June 3-7 and June 10-14. Mr. Westover will run our summer school program at South Campus.
- The coaches have worked out a summer lifting schedule open to all 7-12 graders. I am thankful for their teamwork in creating opportunities for our students.
- Many coaches and activity sponsors have already communicated summer clinics and opportunities to their teams.

Mrs. Plog

Special Education Numbers - From SRS (Student Records System) Current as of 5/12/24

<b>Birth-3</b>
1

Preschool	Kindergarten	1st Grade	2nd Grade	3rd Grade	4th Grade	5th Grade	6th Grade	(B-6th) Total
7 (+1)	3	9	6	6	3 (-1)	4	7	46

7th Grade	8th Grade	9th Grade	10th Grade	11th Grade	12th Grade	12+ (To age 21)	(7-12+) Total
2	8	7	4	6	0 (-4)	0 (-1)	27 (-5)

**Total Enrollment in PowerSchool - 396**

**Total Special Education Students - 73**

**Special Education Percentage - 18.4%**

**State Average- 16% (NDE State Education Profile as of 2022-2023, the most recent data year available)**

- What a busy month it has been since I was with you last! I attended the Autism Connecting Families Summit in Omaha, the Special Education Advisory Council (SEAC) meeting in Lincoln, the Region V Nebraska Association of Special Education Supervisors (NASSES) meeting in Scottsbluff, submitted the Targeted Improvement Plan (TIP), submitted the Maintenance of Effort (MOE) Compliance Report, held a zoom meeting with Megan Kassing from NDE to work on the MOE and the federal special education IDEA Consolidated application, completed the Information Related to Learning Disabilities including Dyslexia Report on the NDE Portal, received word that our CSI-Additional Targeted Support and Improvement Grant was approved, applied for and been accepted for a team of Hemingford teachers to participate in the Cohort 1 of the Foundational Restorative Practices Training Series and the Autism Spectrum Disorder Network STEPS program, and survived the graduation of my 3rd son! No wonder I feel tired!!!!
- I would like to thank Kristy Hanks and Dr. Miller for also participating in the zoom session with Megan Kassing and all the help they give me while I work through the financial side of being a special education director. This is not my favorite task, and they are always right there with me, rooting me on and keeping me sane!!

- During the 2024-2025 school year, Hemingford will be a part of the ASD Network Strategies & Techniques for Effective Practice (STEPS) program. Janelle Huss, 9th-12th grade resource teacher, and Erica Bruns, 5th-8th grade resource teacher, will take part in various training and support with an ASD Network team member through UNL serving as a mentor. This ASD mentor will provide ongoing feedback and support on how to best serve our junior high and high school students in the areas of transition, executive functioning, and social skills. This will be for all students, not just those students with Autism. I am really excited to be a part of this program and Janelle and Erica have said they are excited as well at the opportunity!
- As part of our CSI-ATSI work next year, we are planning to have a consultant provide two days of on-site professional development focused on the McREL Six-Phase Learning Model/Best First Instruction strategies to all our K-12 certified staff. Each teacher will receive the book *The New Classroom Instruction That Works*. This will be paid for through the CSI-ATSI grant funding that was approved by NDE. This will occur during our August before-school teacher inservice days. The consultant will then provide one day of on-site professional learning and support later in the school year after the teachers have had a chance to practice the skills and strategies and ask any follow-up questions they might have after putting the learning into practice. I am excited to see how this will impact our students and lead to improved learning and test scores!
- I plan to be at both the June and July summer school board meetings, however, I am only at school off-and-on throughout the summer. Even though I am not physically at the school, please feel free to contact me anytime with additional questions or concerns. My email is [mplog@gubn.org](mailto:mplog@gubn.org) and my cell phone is 308-760-5958. Have a great summer!

# Superintendent's Report

May 13, 2024

## **Mission/Vision/Goals**

- Pending board approval, we plan to use of grant funds to pay for McREL training on evidence-based instructional practices (in alignment with our school improvement goal regarding the use of evidence-based practices). This training would be scheduled for the first 2 teacher in-service days, with another day of follow-up on-site training and/or support later in the year.

## **Policy**

- I appreciate the efforts of the technology committee in preparing the proposed policy for use of artificial intelligence (AI) by students and staff.
- 

## **Budget Planning and Management**

- The legislature passed a change in statute allowing the use of QCPUF funds for school safety projects. When we adopt the budget for next year, we may want to consider starting a QCPUF Fund for the purpose of Safety Infrastructure Projects.
- We did not receive any applicants that we are comfortable hiring for the position formerly held by Mrs. Johnston. I appreciate Mr. Arneson and Mrs. Curtis working together to come up with a plan for Mrs. Johnston to teach 2 sections of 5th grade math and Ms. Jackie Davies to teach 2 sections of 6th grade math. With these adjustments, we believe we can keep the 5th and 6th graders receiving a very similar educational experience without incurring the cost of an additional staff member.
- I had shared some information with the board regarding handling support staff pay compliance with minimum wage. If there are no major concerns, we will plan to get work agreements out to our support staff prior to summer.
- I would like to commend Mr. Arneson and Jim Miles for their work on the Safety and Security grant. I appreciate their efforts to secure some resources to help improve our security profile.
- We are planning on Mobius working with the Bogen (intercom) installer in June to complete the phone/internet system.

## **Educational Leadership**

- We are still awaiting review and feedback from the Public Policy Center at UNL regarding our EOP submission to NDE.

## Organizational and Cultural Leadership

- Our team will work to refine/clarify expectations for conflict resolution over the next few months. We plan to align the expectations with board policies. As a result of this effort, we may have some policy proposals for the board's consideration.

## Professional Leadership

- Thank you for considering the class action lawsuit being developed against social media companies on behalf of school districts.

## Community Relations

- Jack Baker is planning to be here tomorrow night for a follow-up session for the facilities assessment process.

## Board-Superintendent Relations

- NASB will be sending a link to board members for the superintendent evaluation. We will have that on the June board agenda.
- We believe we are in compliance with the LB 304 requirement for school districts to post payments for memberships and lobbying on our school website. (We do not currently pay for any direct lobbying). We will plan to begin posting the annual amounts paid for school district membership with NRCSA and NASB in compliance with the new statute.
- It seems like a long time from now, but mark your calendars if you would like to attend the state school board conference. The Conference will be held November 20-22, 2024 at the CHI Health Center in Omaha, Nebraska.

## Strategic Plan (Highlights)

- Reporting order on these Principles is based on the Prioritization Summary:
  - **Guiding Principle III: Student and Staff Well-Being**
    - I anticipate our school district will be selected to be part of an ESU#13 grant-funded program around school mental health. If funded, Mrs. Gilkerson, Mrs. Johnston, Mrs. Plog, and I will be working together alongside the ESU#13 representatives.
    - I would like to commend Mrs. Gilkerson and Mrs. Johnston for their ongoing preparation for a quality K-12 Counseling program.
  - **Guiding Principle I: Student-Centered Learning**
    - I appreciate the ongoing work of the MTSS team and their efforts to continue to improve instruction and opportunities for students.
  - **Guiding Principle IV: Communication and Engagement**
    - We had good attendance at Graduation. I would like to commend Mrs. Curtis and the high school faculty on graduating the class of 2024.
    - This past month 42,740 messages were sent using the Remind system.
  - **Guiding Principal II: Personnel Effectiveness**
    - I met recently with the teacher committee to receive some feedback from them regarding teacher evaluation. I anticipate presenting the board with a proposed revised evaluation form in with June or July.

- **Guiding Principal V: District Resources**
  - We will be closely watching any developments around the possibility of any special legislative sessions and the impact that might have on our school district.

### **Planned Professional Travel**

- State Track - Omaha (May 16-18)
- ESU#13 Mental Health Team Meeting - Scottsbluff (June 10-11)
- Region V NASA/WNA Retreat - Ogallala (June 18-19)
- ALICAP Summer Safety and Insurance Workshop - Gering (July 10)
- Administrators' Days - Kearney (July 23-26)
- I plan to attend student activities as my schedule allows.

### **Board Reminders (from the Contract with the Superintendent)**

- **Evaluation.** The Board shall evaluate the Superintendent twice during the Superintendent's first year of employment and at least once each year thereafter. The first evaluation during the first year of employment and the yearly evaluations after the first year of employment shall occur no later than the regular November meeting. The Superintendent shall: remind the Board members in writing of this provision no later than its regular October meeting; make the Superintendent evaluation an agenda item for the regular November Board meeting during each year of this contract; and provide the Board members with the written evaluation instrument that is on file with the Nebraska Department of Education.
- **Renewal of Contract.** If a Board representative does not inform the Superintendent in writing on or before the seventh day after the regular December 2022 board meeting (and each December thereafter) of the Board's intention to consider the nonrenewal or amendment of this contract, the contract will automatically renew for a period of one year from and after the expiration date provided in Section 1 of this contract. The Superintendent shall remind the Board in writing of this provision no later than its regular November meeting of each year of this contract and shall make the renewal of the Superintendent's employment contract an agenda item for the regular December board meeting during each year of this contract. At the time of each contract renewal and/or amendment, the Superintendent shall be responsible for taking all necessary steps to ensure that the District has complied with the Superintendent Pay Transparency Act.

### **Leave Log**

- I have used 12 ½ days of PTO leave (August 11 and 18, October 30 and 31, and November 3, and December 4th, December 13, December 15th, February 7th, and March 13th ½, April 8th and 9th, May 13th ). I have 17 ½ PTO Days Remaining in the contract year ending June 30th. I plan to take some PTO time in late May, some in June, and some again in July.

Hemingford Public School District # 10 Policy review schedule : Adopted January 2024

January 2024	section 100 : 0100 - 0104.01 end	8 policies total
February 2024	section 200 : 0200.00 - 0204.01	25 policies total
March 2024	section 200 : 0204.02 - 0206.05 end	25 policies total
April 2024	section 300 : In full	27 policies total
May 2024	section 400 : 0400 - 0403.07	27 policies total
June 2024	section 400 : 0403.08 - 0406.09	27 policies total
July 2024	section 400 : 0406.50 - 0411.53	27 policies total
August 2024	section 400 : 0412.01 - 014305_end	28 policies total
September 2024	section 500 : 0500 - 0504.04	26 policies total
October 2024	section 500 : 0504.04R1 - 0504.23	26 policies total
November 2024	section 500 : 0504.24 - 0508.01	26 policies total
December 2024	section 500 : 0508.01E1 - 050801E4_end	25 policies total
January 2025	section 600 : 0600 - 0605.06	27 policies total
February 2025	section 600 : 0605.07 - 0610.02	26 policies total
March 2025	section 600 : 0611.01 - 0612.17 end	26 policies total
April 2025	section 700 : 0700 - 0705.02	18 policies total
May 2025	section 700 : 0705.03 - 0716.00 end	18 policies total
June 2025	section 800 : In full	27 policies total
July 2025	section 900 : In full	26 policies total
August 2025	section 1000 : In full	23 policies total